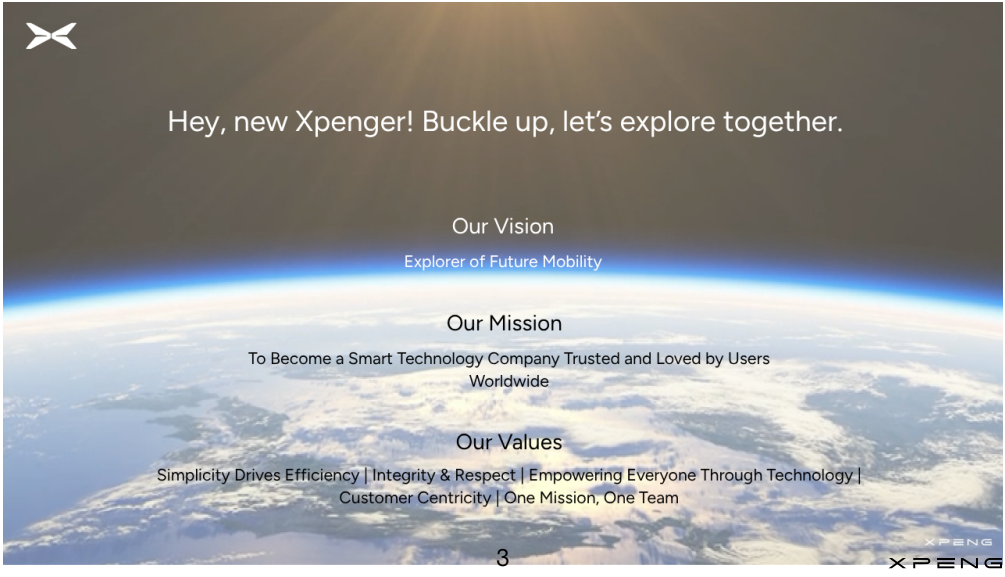
Welcome

Welcome



Manual Description

- The current user manual corresponds to vehicle system version V6.3.2. Tap the center display. “ →**Settings**→**General**”You can view the current system version. If the system version is not the latest, please update it promptly.
- Marked in this manual “*”The descriptions apply only to vehicle models with certain configurations; your vehicle may not be equipped with these functions.
- The vehicle is equipped with remote upgrade (OTA) capability, and vehicle functions are often optimized/updated. The content of this manual will be updated from time to time.
- This manual provides information on all configurations of the vehicle model. Due to differences in vehicle configuration, software version, etc., it may differ from the vehicle at the time of purchase. In such cases, please refer to the actual vehicle.
- Please carefully read the warnings and precautions in the manual:

  ⚠Warning information: Be sure to comply, otherwise it may result in personal injury or death, or traffic accidents!

  ⚠For information marked as attention, be sure to follow it; otherwise, vehicle damage or malfunction may occur!

  ℹ Informational messages can help you use the vehicle better.
- The illustrations in this manual are only used to explain functional operations, and the content is for reference only.

- The illustrations in this manual are labeled:

  Indicates the object being described.

  Indicates the direction of the translation operation.

  Indicates the direction of the rotation operation.

  Indicates the direction of the flipping operation.
- Unless otherwise specified, all descriptions in this manual regarding vehicle orientation (front, rear, left, and right) are based on the vehicle's forward direction of travel.

Without authorization from XPENG Vehicle, no person may reproduce or modify all or part of the contents of this manual. XPENG Vehicle always reserves the right to change, supplement, or terminate the contents and technical specifications of this manual.

Important Notice

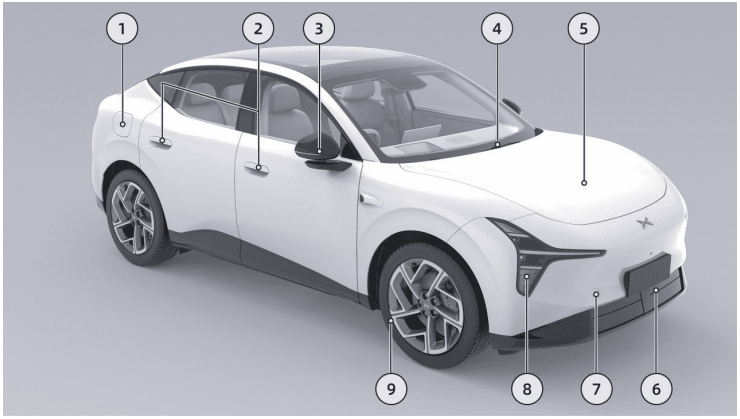
For your safety, please observe local laws and regulations when driving the vehicle, and use the vehicle in accordance with the following important instructions:

- While driving the vehicle, the driver shall comply with traffic regulations, control vehicle speed, and avoid overspeeding or overloading.
- While the vehicle is in motion, all occupants must keep their seat belts fastened at all times.

- Before driving the vehicle, be sure to confirm that the four doors and the two lids are all in the closed state, and confirm that the vehicle performance is good and that all functions can be used normally and safely.
- Please remain alert while driving. Do not drive the vehicle after drinking alcohol or when fatigued, otherwise your control of the vehicle may be affected, which may cause an accident resulting in personal injury or death.
- Please be sure to drive carefully, determine whether the weather and road conditions are suitable for travel, and pay attention at all times to the movements of other vehicles or pedestrians on the road surface, so that you can make timely judgments and prevent accidents.
- Do not use handheld devices to make or answer calls, view information, etc. while driving, as this will distract your attention and affect your control of the vehicle.

Exterior Overview

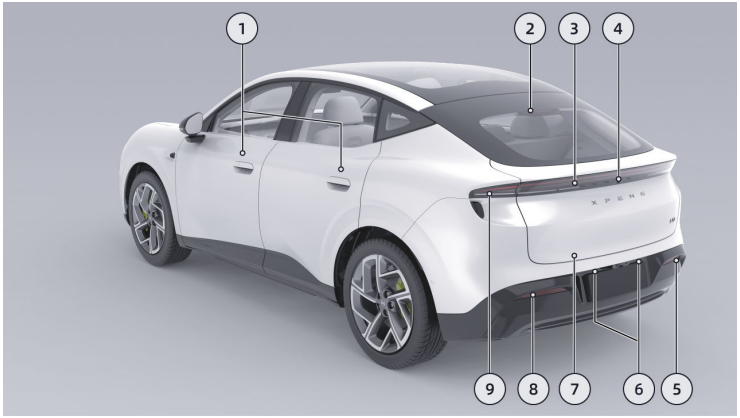
Front Side Overview



1. Charging Port Cover
2. Exterior Door Handle
3. Side Mirrors
4. Front Wiper
5. Front Hood
6. Active Air Intake Grille
7. Tow Hook Cover Plate

8. Headlamp (including position lamp, turn signal lamp, low beam, and high beam)
9. Wheel

Rear Side Overview

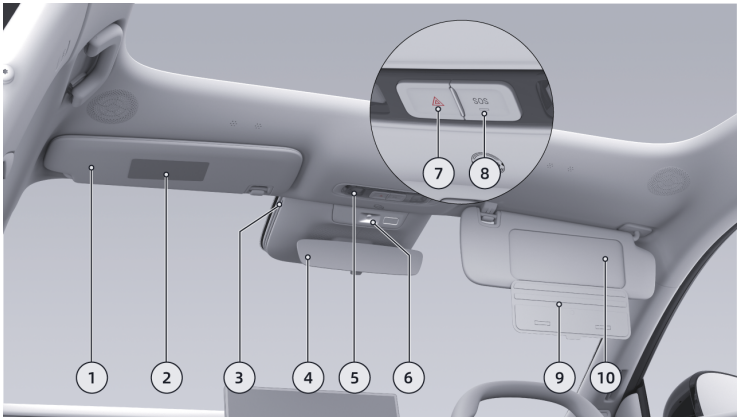


1. Door
2. High-mounted Brake Light
3. Rear Through Lamp (including position lamp, brake lamp, and turn signal lamp)
4. trunk exterior switch
5. Rear Reflex Reflector and Reversing Lamp
6. License Plate Lamp
7. Tailgate
8. Reflector and rear fog light

9. Rear Combination Lamp (including position lamp, brake lamp, and turn signal lamp)

Interior Overview

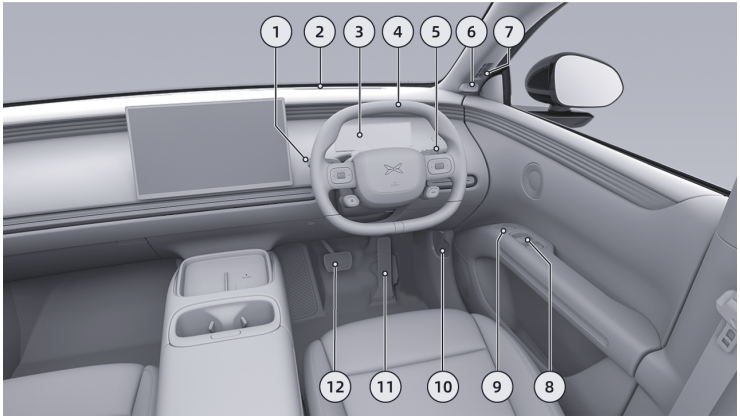
Front Row Roof Overview



1. Sun Visor
2. front row airbag warning label
3. Rearview Mirror Type-C Power Port
4. Manual Anti-Glare Rearview Mirror
5. front row reading light
6. OMS Cabin Camera*
7. Hazard Warning Light Button
8. SOS Button

9. Vanity Mirror Cover Panel
10. Vanity Mirror

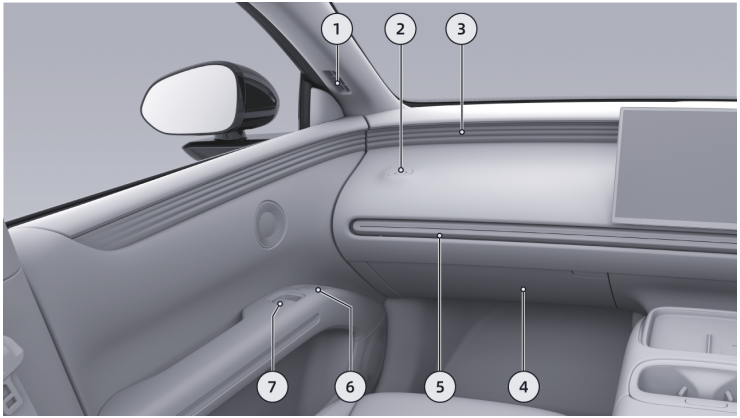
Driver Side Overview



1. Lighting & Wiper Stalk
2. HUD HUD
3. instrument screen
4. steering wheel
5. Shift Lever
6. DMS Camera
7. Door Side Defrosting Air Vent
8. Window Switch Panel
9. Door Opening Handle
10. Front Hood Release Handle

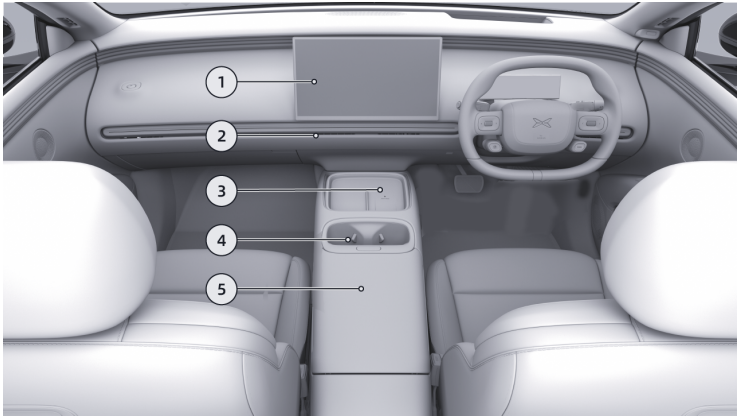
11. Accelerator Pedal
12. Brake Pedal

Overview of the front-row occupant side



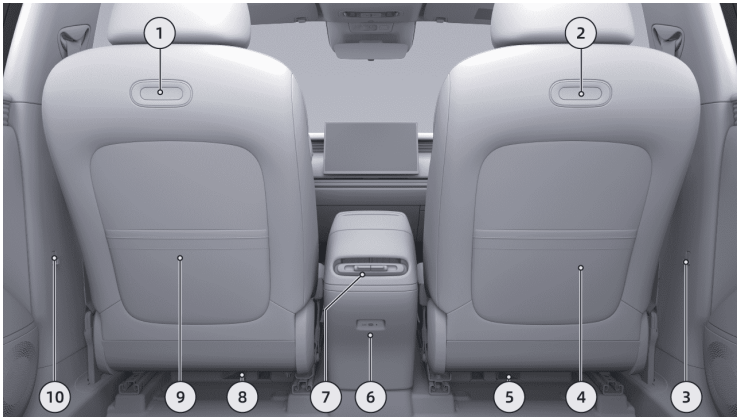
1. Door Side Defrosting Air Vent
2. 1/4-inch threaded interface (passenger side)
3. Ambient Lights
4. Glove Box
5. Air Conditionerair vent
6. Door Opening Handle
7. Window Switch Panel (passenger Side)

Overview of the Front of the Center Console



1. Central Control Screen
2. Air Conditioner air vent
3. wireless charging
4. Cup Holder
5. Center Armrest Box

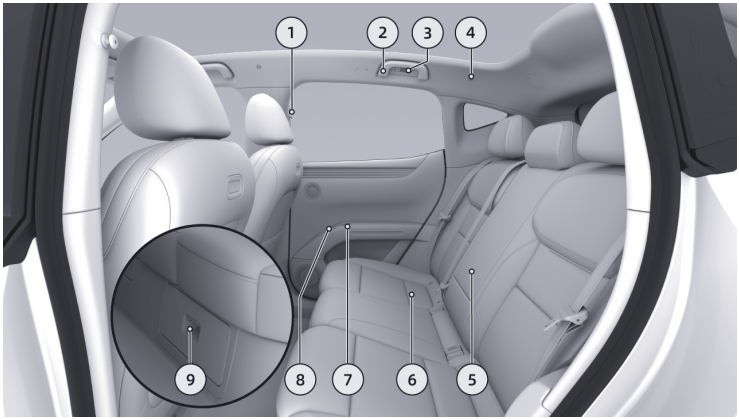
Rear Center Console Overview



1. Left Front Seat seatback Multifunction Interface
2. Right Front Seat seatback Multifunction Interface
3. B-pillar Hook
4. Right Front Seatback Pocket
5. Right rear foot air vent
6. Type-C Power Port
7. Rear air vent
8. Left Rear Foot Air Vent
9. Left Front Seatback Pocket

10. B-pillar Hook

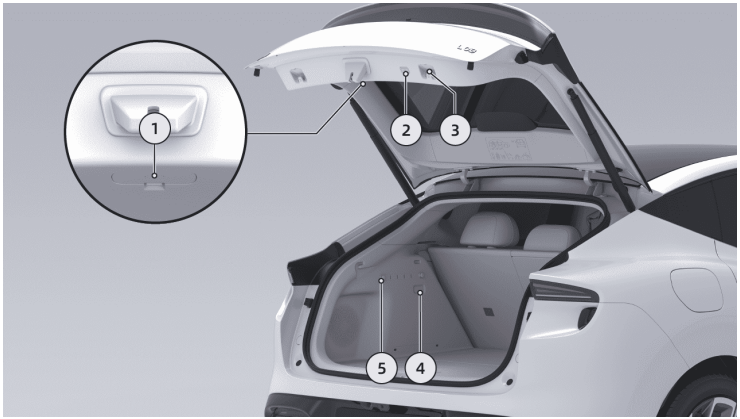
Second-row occupant side overview



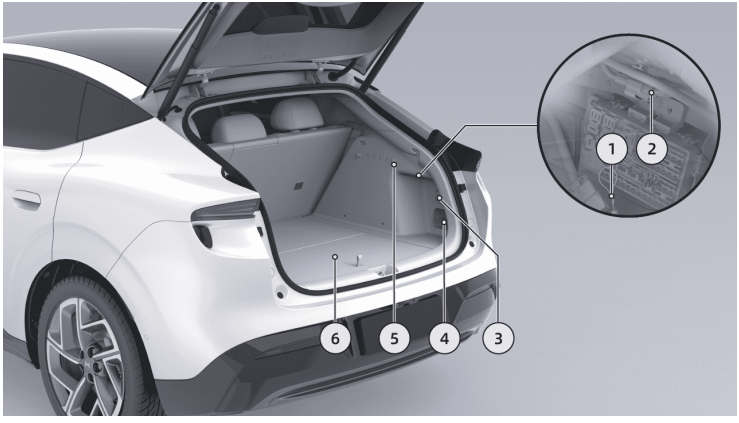
1. B-pillar Coat Hook (1/4-inch Threaded Interface)
2. Roof Grab Handle
3. Rear reading light
4. Headliner Magnetic Interface
5. Rear Seat Armrest
6. Rear Seats
7. Window Switch Panel
8. Door Opening Handle
9. Rear Drawer

trunk

Trunk Overview



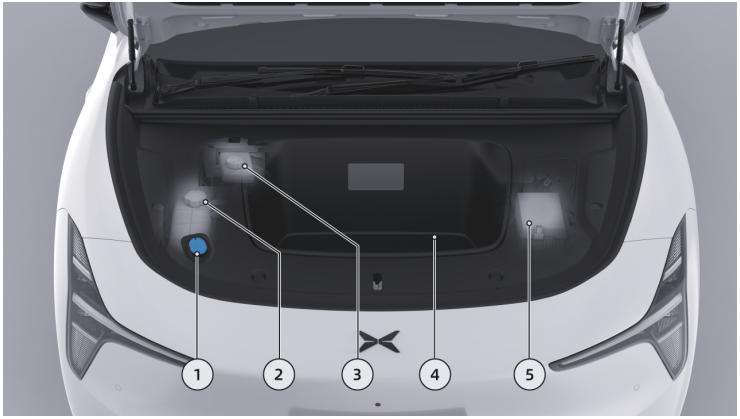
1. Trunk Emergency Unlock Switch
2. trunk interior switch
3. trunk hook
4. trunk light
5. trunk hook



1. Emergency Release Pull Tab for Slow Charging Port
2. Low-Voltage Maintenance Switch
3. 12V Power Outlet
4. Smart Expansion Interface
5. trunk hook
6. trunk cover panel

Front Compartment

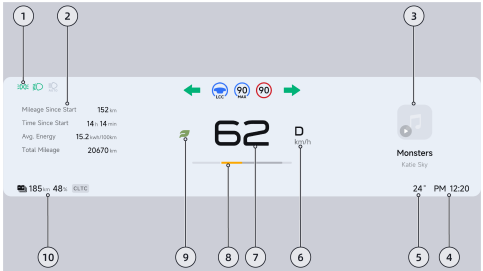
Front Compartment Overview



1. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
2. High-Voltage System Coolant Reservoir
3. Brake Fluid Reservoir
4. Frunk*
5. Front Compartment Fuse Box

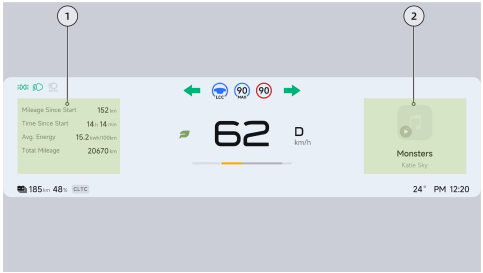
Instrument Screen

Page display



1. Indicator Light
   - The indicator lights are distributed in different positions on the instrument cluster and reflect the status of vehicle functions.
2. Left Information Display Area
   - You can switch the displayed information using the steering wheel scroll wheel, and select vehicle status, energy consumption, mileage, Music, navigation, etc.
3. Right-side Information Display Area
   - You can switch the displayed information using the steering wheel scroll wheel, and select vehicle status, energy consumption, mileage, Music, navigation, etc.
4. Time
5. Outside Ambient Temperature
6. Gear Information
7. Vehicle Speed/P Gear Display
8. Power Meter
9. driving mode
10. Range and Battery Gauge
    - On the center control screen “ →**Settings→Charging and Discharging→Charging**”Interface, can switch to display WLTP/Dynamic/NEDC*.

Combination Instrument Cluster Settings

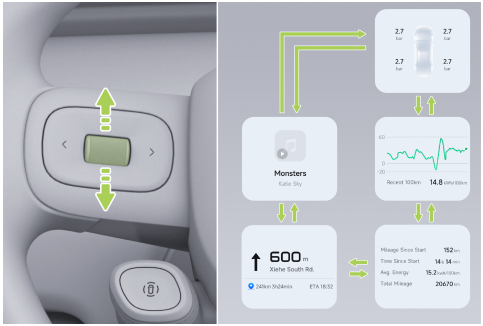


1. Left Information Display Area
2. Right-side Information Display Area

Set the Left Information Display Area

1. Press and hold the right-side scroll wheel on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster card selection state.

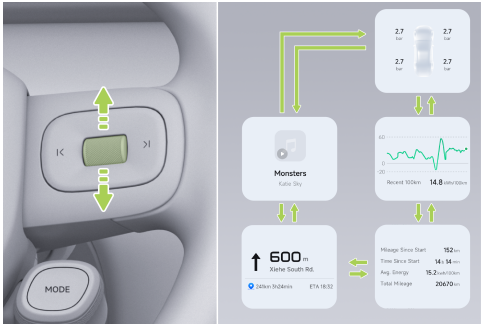
2. Scroll the left roller on the left side of the steering wheel up or down to select the left information card. Available cards include music, navigation, mileage, energy consumption, and vehicle status. Briefly press the left or right roller on the steering wheel to confirm the selection.



Set the Right-Side Information Display Area

1. Press and hold the right-side scroll wheel on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster card selection state.

2. Scroll the right roller on the right side of the steering wheel up or down to select the right-side information card. Music, navigation, mileage, energy consumption, and vehicle status cards can be selected. Briefly press the left or right roller on the steering wheel to confirm the selection.

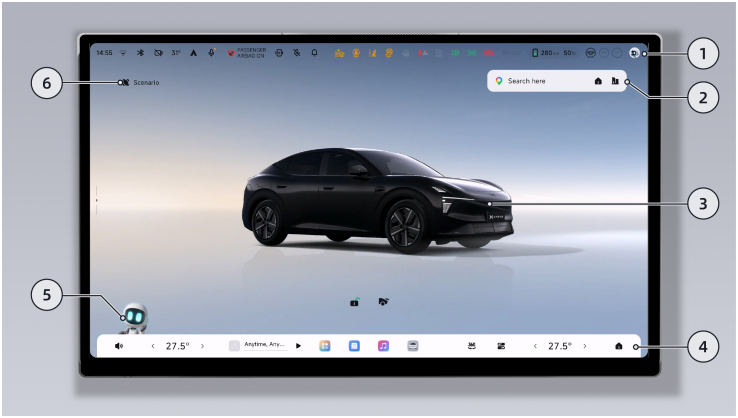


Tips

The left and right information display areas cannot show the same information card at the same time.

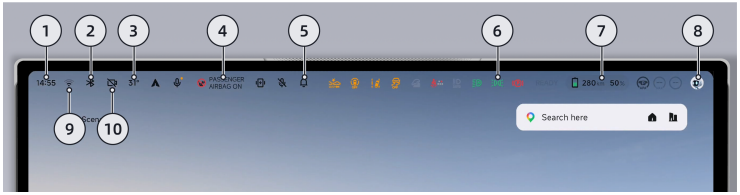
Central Control Screen

Page display



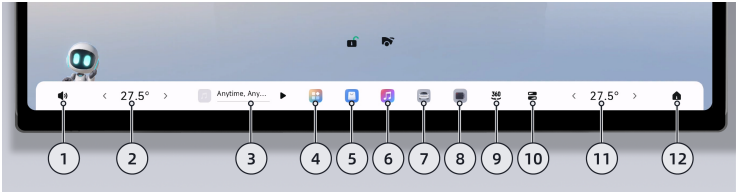
1. Status Bar
2. Navigation Shortcut Bar
3. SR Interface
4. Bottom Taskbar
5. XPENG Assistant Interactive Avatar (if enabled)
6. Combo Mode Entry

Status Bar



1. Time
2. Bluetooth
3. Outside Ambient Temperature
4. Occupant Airbag Status*
5. Message Center
6. Indicator Light
7. Displays the remaining driving range and remaining battery level
8. Account and Habits
9. Network
10. Driving Recorder Status*

Bottom Taskbar

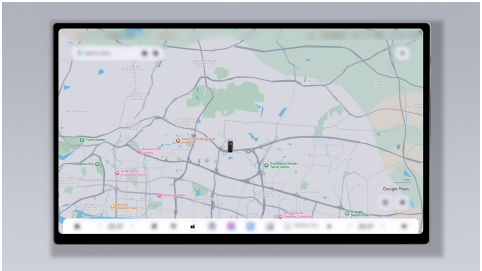


1. Volume Adjustment
2. Passenger Air Conditioner Assembly
3. Music widget
4. App Center
5. App Store
6. Music
7. Settings
8. Driving Recorder
9. 360 Camera
10. Control Center
11. driver Air Conditioner assembly
12. Home page

Split-Screen Multitasking

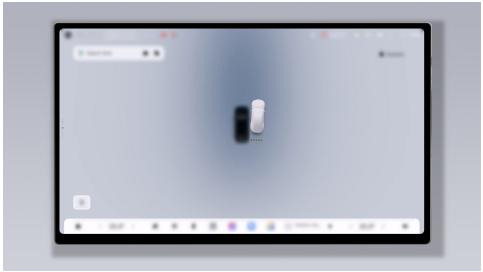
Desktop Mode

The desktop supports the following three display modes:



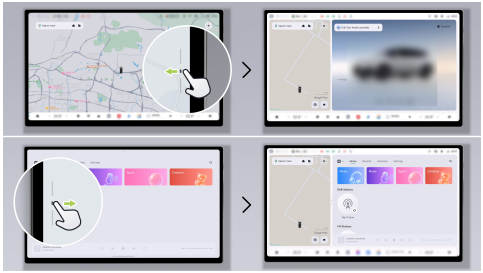
- Full-screen map mode.

- Split-screen desktop mode.

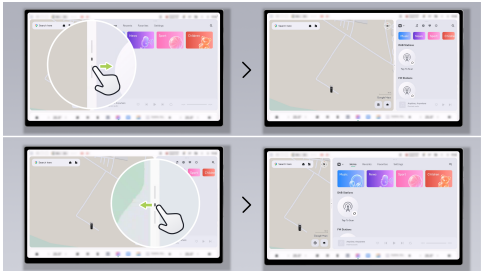


- Full-screen SR mode.

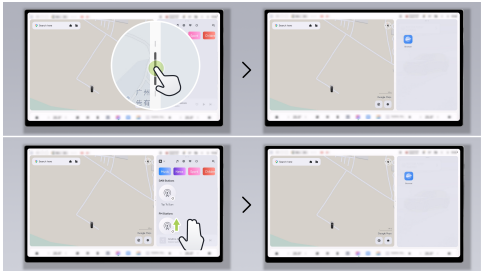
Full-Screen/Split-Screen Switching



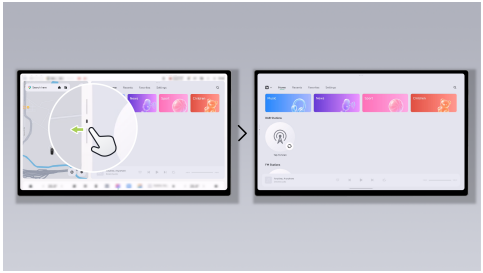
- In full-screen mode, drag the split-screen slider to adjust the application window to split-screen mode.



- In split-screen mode, drag the split-screen divider to change the display size of the app window.



Tap the split-screen swipe line or use the three-finger upward swipe gesture to open a small window app, which supports displaying the browser.



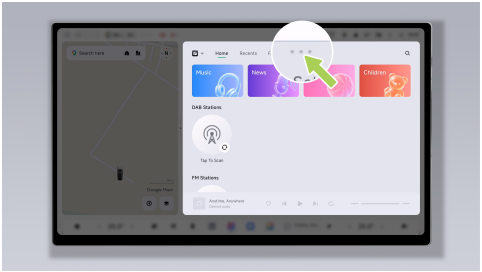
- In split-screen mode, drag the split-screen slider to adjust the app window to full-screen display. When split-screen is switched to full-screen, the last opened split-screen app is remembered.

Application Window Display

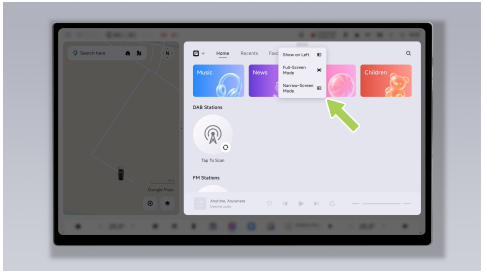
When you select and tap any app icon on the central control screen home page or in the app list, the system will open and display the corresponding app window on the screen.

Window Toolbar

The window toolbar is displayed in the centered area at the top of the application window.



- **Default state:**Usually displayed as "**...**"Icon.



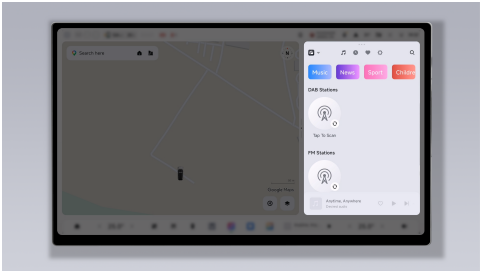
- **Expanded state:**Tap "**...**"Tap the icon to expand the toolbar.

Tips

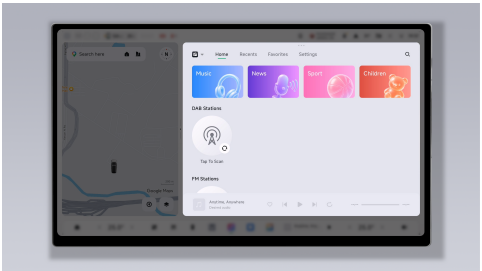
The specific functions of the toolbar may vary depending on the application. Please refer to what is actually displayed.

Window Display Mode

The application window supports display in the following three sizes:



- Narrow screen display mode.



- Split-screen display mode.

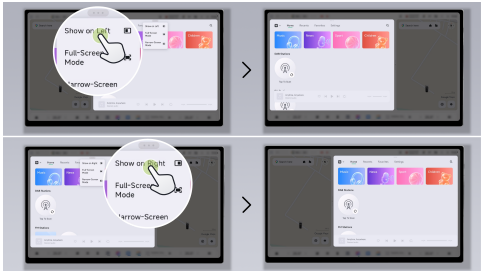
- Full-screen display mode.

Tips

Supported window sizes may vary between different applications. Some applications do not support window size adjustments. Please refer to the actual application window.

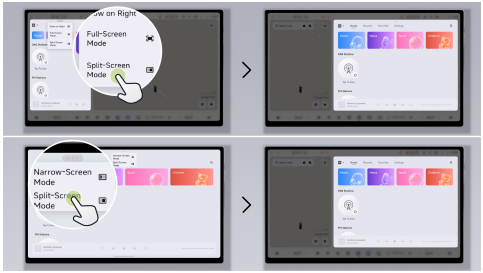
Window Adjustment

Adjust via the window toolbar:



- In narrow screen/split-screen mode, tap on the toolbar. “**Left Display**”or “**Right-side display**”Adjust the window to display on the left side or the right side.

- In full-screen/split-screen mode, tap on the toolbar. “**Narrow Screen Display**”, adjust the window to narrow-screen display.



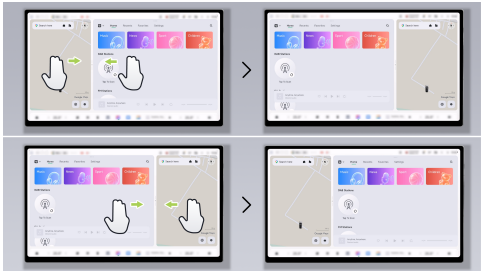
- In narrow-screen/full-screen mode, tap on the toolbar. “**Split-Screen Display**”, adjust the window to split-screen display.

- In narrow-screen/split-screen mode, tap on the toolbar. “**Full-screen Display**”, adjust the window to full-screen display.

Gesture Interaction

Switch window display position

- Press and hold the top of the window. **Toolbar Area**Drag it to the other side of the screen and release it to switch the window between the left and right sides.



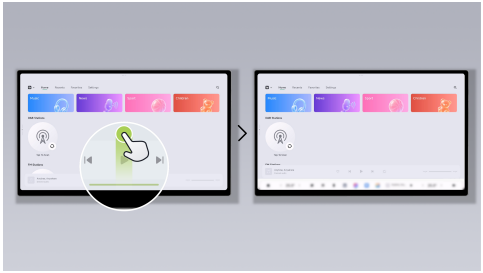
- When the application window is on the right side, use three fingers to swipe left to move it to the left side for display. Conversely, when the window is on the left side, use three fingers to swipe right to move it to the right side for display.

Tips

- Apps in full-screen mode do not support gesture operations for switching the window display position.
- The bottom taskbar area does not support gesture operations. During the switching

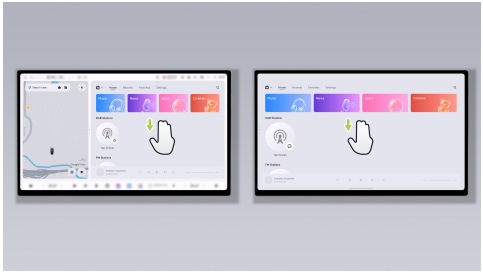
process, the status bar and the bottom taskbar are not hidden.

Full-screen mode displays the bottom taskbar and status bar



In full-screen mode, both the bottom taskbar and the status bar are hidden. Swipe upward with one finger from the bottom edge of the screen to bring up the bottom taskbar and the status bar.

Close App

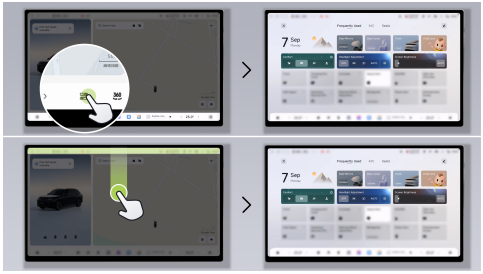


A three-finger swipe-down gesture can close the app.

Control Center

Opening Method

The Control Center is an interactive panel for convenient operation of the vehicle's core functions, and can be opened in the following ways:



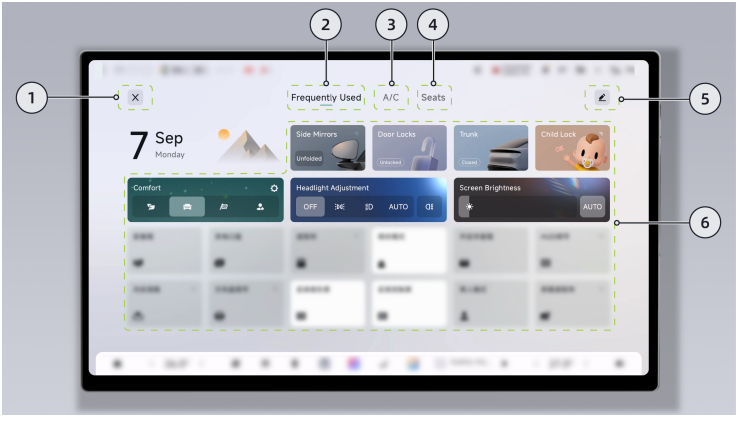
- Tap the bottom taskbar " " Control center icon.
- Open with gesture control: swipe down from the upper edge of the screen with one finger.

- Tap the Air Conditioner widget on the bottom taskbar.
- Tap the bottom taskbar " " Seat icon.

Tips

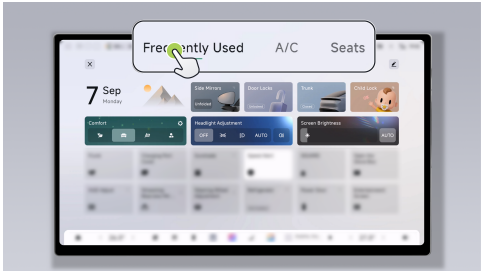
For information about the custom bottom taskbar, please refer to the custom bottom taskbar section.

Interface Layout



1. Close
2. Common Interface
3. Air Conditioner Interface
4. Seat Interface
5. Edit custom
6. Vehicle Quick Functions

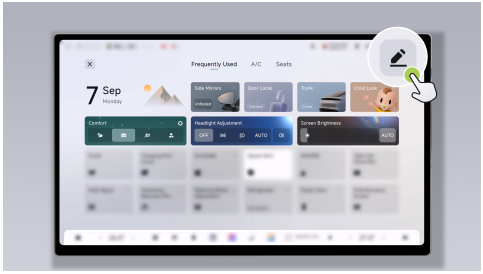
Interface Switching



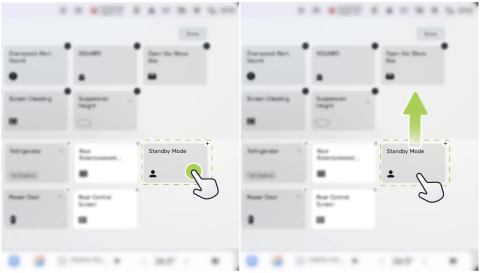
The Control Center contains three interfaces: Common, Air Conditioner, and seat. Tap the Common, Air Conditioner, and seat icons at the top of the Control Center to switch to the corresponding interface.

custom function card

You can add or delete function cards in the Favorites screen by following the steps below:

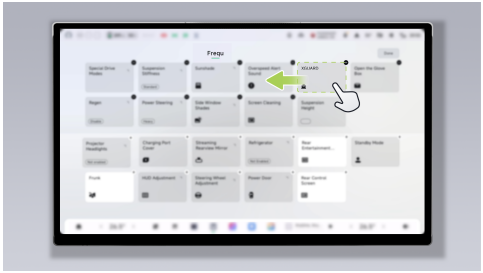


1. Tap the upper right of the frequently used interface. “ ” Press the button to enter the custom card state.

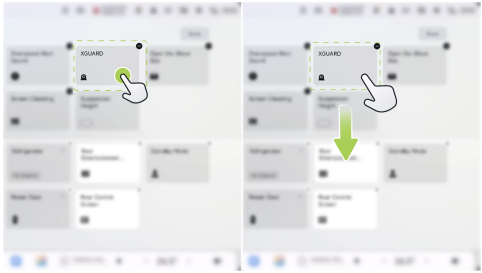


2. To add a card: tap the card in the available function area, or press and hold the card and drag it to the selected function area.

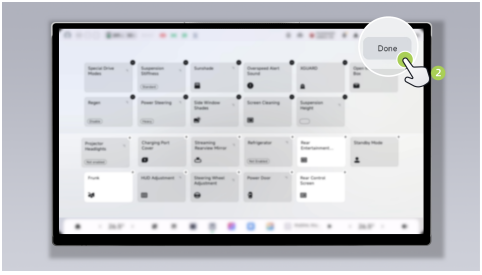
> **Tips**
>
> When the selected function area is full, delete a card from the selected function area before adding a new function card.



3. Press and hold and drag the card to adjust its position.



4. To delete a card: tap the card in the selected function area, or press and hold the card and drag it to the function area to be selected.



5. Tap “**Done**”Tap **or a blank area** to exit custom mode.

Exit Method

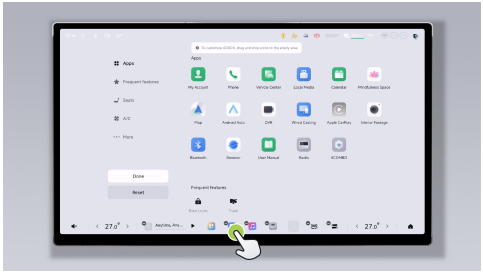
In any of the following cases, the control center will collapse and close:

- Tap the close button on the Control Center panel.
- Tap a blank area of the control center (the left and right sides and the bottom).
- Open other apps.
- No operation for more than 30 seconds.
- Tap the bottom taskbar “ ”App Center icon.
- Tap the bottom taskbar “ ”Home page icon.

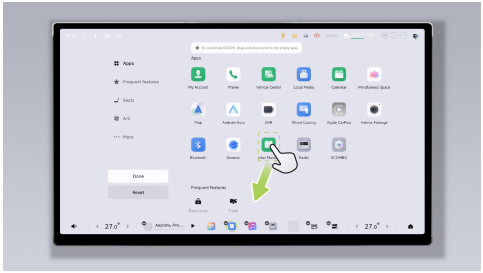
Custom bottom taskbar

You can conveniently adjust the air conditioning temperature, volume, etc. in the bottom taskbar of the central control screen.

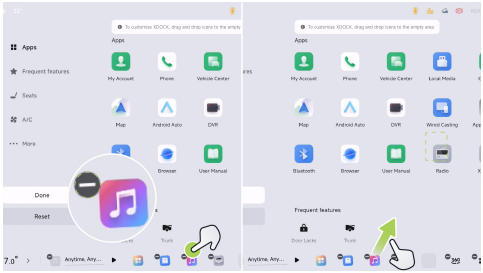
You can custom the frequently used apps in the bottom taskbar in the following ways:



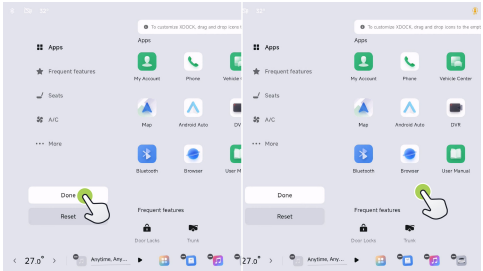
1. Press and hold the bottom taskbar icon to customize the bottom taskbar.



2. You can drag app icons and function control and shortcut widget icons for doors and windows, seats, and the Air Conditioner to the empty spaces in the bottom taskbar.

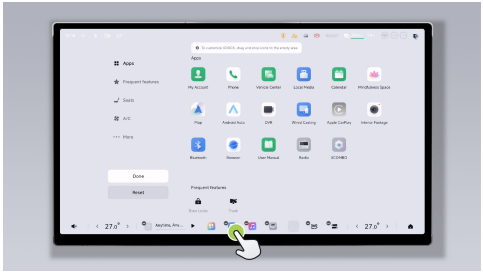


3. Tap the upper-right corner of the icon in the custom state. ⊖, or drag the icon to the app center and release it to remove this icon from the bottom taskbar.



4. Tap “**Done**”Tap elsewhere or a blank area to exit custom mode.

You can reset the overall layout of the bottom taskbar in the following ways:



1. Press and hold any area of the bottom taskbar icon to customize the bottom taskbar.

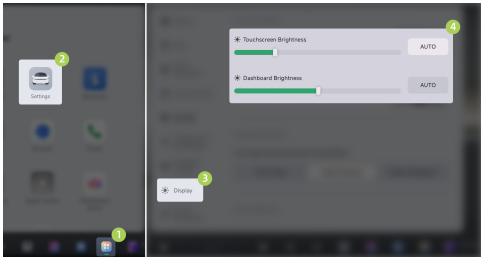
2. Tap “**Reset**”Can reset the overall layout of the bottom taskbar.

Brightness Adjustment

You can adjust the center display brightness in the following ways:

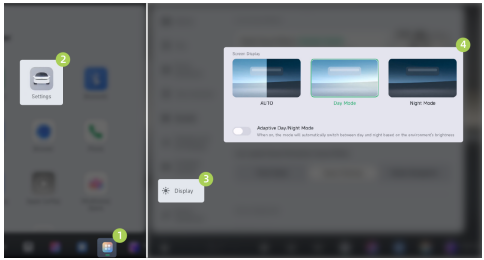
- On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**Display**”On the interface, you can drag the progress bar to adjust the brightness of the driver display and the instrument display. After Auto Brightness is enabled, the

system will automatically adjust the screen brightness.



- After waking up XPENG, say your command, for example: "Make the screen a little brighter."

Day Night Mode



On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**Display**”Interface,

- You can select Auto, Day Mode, or Night Mode.
- Open/Close “**Smart Light Sensing***”Function. After it is turned on, the system will automatically switch to Day Mode/Night Mode according to the ambient light.

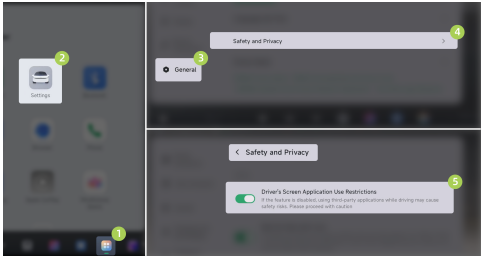
App Center

1. Tap the bottom taskbar , you can open the App Center.
2. Tap an app icon to open the app. Apps that are being downloaded and installed also have corresponding status indications.
3. Press and hold an app icon or a blank area to enter the custom app center mode. In this mode, you can drag icons to reorder them in the app list.

Driver Screen Application Usage Restrictions

To ensure driving safety, while the vehicle is in motion, the system is set by default to restrict the activation or use of some in-vehicle entertainment functions, unless you manually remove the system restrictions. After you have read and agreed to this statement and manually removed the system restrictions, passengers in the vehicle may continue to experience some in-vehicle entertainment content during driving.

On the central control screen “ →**Settings**→**General**→**Safety and Privacy**”Interface, where you can enable/disable usage restrictions for applications on the driver screen.



warning

- When the vehicle is in motion, in-car entertainment is only available to the vehicle occupants and should not be used by the driver.
- When the vehicle is in motion, if the driver believes that the use of some of the in-car entertainment content by the occupants of the vehicle may affect the safety of the vehicle, ask the driver to immediately request the occupants to stop using the entertainment feature and turn the entertainment feature off or to re-switch the system restrictions on.
- When the system limits are manually removed, the driver shall ensure that safe driving practices are followed, such as violations of laws and regulations or safe driving practices by the driver for his own reasons (e.g. the use of in-car entertainment functions by the driver), resulting in his or her own or any third party being physically present. Any property or other loss shall be solely liable for all legal liabilities arising therefrom.

Restarting the Center Display

If the instrument screen, HUD, and center display screen show abnormalities, suddenly freeze, or encounter similar conditions, you may try restarting them. If the fault is still not corrected after restarting, promptly contact a XPENG service center for inspection and repair.

Center Display Restart Method:

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place and shift the gear to P.
2. Press and hold the left button on the left side of the steering wheel and the right button on the right side of the steering wheel at the same time. Release them after the screen turns black to restart the instrument cluster screen, HUD, and central control screen.

warning

Do not restart the vehicle while it is in motion, otherwise a traffic accident may occur.

Status Indicator Light

After the vehicle is powered on, some indicator lights will illuminate. After the system completes the self-check, if the system is normal, the indicator lights will turn off. Some indicator lights illuminate to display the current status of vehicle system functions and do not indicate a system malfunction. If anything is unclear during daily vehicle use, consult a XPENG service center.

	high beam on		Airbag malfunction
	intelligent high beam is on and high beam illuminates		Right Front Seat Belt Unfastened
	intelligent high beam malfunction		Left Front Seat Belt Unfastened
	intelligent high beam is on and the high beam is not illuminated		Left Rear Occupant Seat Belt Unfastened
	Left turn signal illuminates		Rear center occupant seat belt unfastened
	Right turn signal illuminates		Right rear occupant seat belt not fastened

	Low beam on		Speed limit indicated by speed limit sign
	rear fog light on		Speed Camera Speed Limit
	Position lights on		High-voltage system ready, vehicle in drivable state
	Auto headlight control enabled and low beam headlights on		Battery fault exists
	Lane Departure Assist Fault		Drive Power Limitation
	The charging/discharging cable is connected.		Power system fault exists
	Scheduled charging enabled		Motor and Controller Overheating
	Steering System Fault		Motor and controller fault exists

Severe fault in the steering system	Power Battery Temperature Too Low
Steady on: Parking function activated Flashing: Incorrect caliper status	Power Battery Temperature Too High
Steady on: Parking brake malfunction Flashing: The parking system is in maintenance mode	Low traction battery charge
Auto Hold activated	Power battery fault exists
Auto Hold Malfunction	Power battery disconnected
Brake system malfunction	Forward Collision Warning malfunction
Flashing: Electronic Stability Program activated Steady on: Electronic Stability Program malfunction	Forward Collision Warning Off

	Electronic Stability Program is off		Driving Assistance Fault
	Anti-lock Braking System malfunction		Abnormal tire pressure or tire pressure monitoring system malfunction
	Reduced Braking Performance		Doors, front hood, and trunk are not all closed
	Hill Descent Control Activated		Lane Centering Control activated
	Hill Descent Control Fault		Lane Centering Control can be activated
	The maximum speed limit value of ACC/LCC, and any function is activated		Parking Assist Activated
	Maximum speed limit value of ACC/ LCC, and both are not activated		Parking assist unavailable
	Forward Collision Warning initializing		Speed Assistance Activation

Adaptive Cruise Control ACC can be activated	SAS Fault Present
Adaptive Cruise Control ACC is activated	No Speed Limit Sign Speed Limit
Adaptive Cruise Control ACC unavailable	Exceeding the speed indicated by the speed limit sign
Lane Centering Control unavailable	front row occupant status indicator*
Parking Assist Available	Low washer fluid level indicator*
Startup Safety Assist Fault	Startup Safety Assist Off
Driver Monitoring System Malfunction	Driver Seat Belt Misbuckled/Worn Incorrectly
Trailer Mode Fault*	The map has not entered Cruise mode.

Tow Mode Ready*

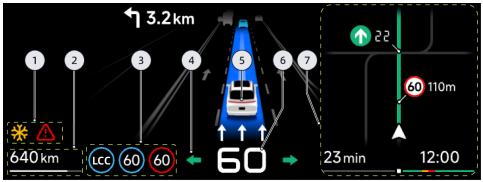
Tow Mode Temporarily Unavailable*

HUD

Function Overview

HUD System Interface Overview

The HUD system projects the information required by the driver onto the front windshield, allowing the driver to view information such as navigation, speed limit signs, and vehicle speed without taking their eyes off the road.



1. Snow Mode, Safety Warning Indicator Light
2. Battery level and driving range, Air Conditioner fan speed and temperature adjustment, volume adjustment, switching driving mode, and other vehicle information
3. Driving Assistance Function Indicator Light (such as the speed limit sign indicator light)
4. Turn Signal
5. Environmental perception information (displays the external road environment and the vehicle's current status, and provides real-time information on perceived road information, other traffic participants, and other content)
6. Vehicle Speed or Gear Position
7. Navigation Information

Tips

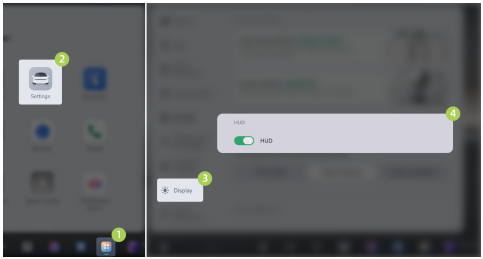
- When the battery is low, the HUD will issue a low-battery alert to remind the driver to charge the vehicle in a timely manner.
  - When the remaining range corresponding to the state of charge is less than 60 km, the range bar will turn yellow and display a warning message.
  - When the remaining range corresponding to the state of charge is less than 30 km,

the range bar will turn red and display a warning message.

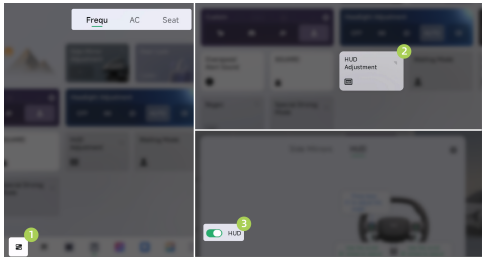
- When the vehicle is charging, the range bar will be displayed in green.
- When the vehicle is in Park (P), you can check the open/closed status of the four doors and two lids.

Turn HUD on off

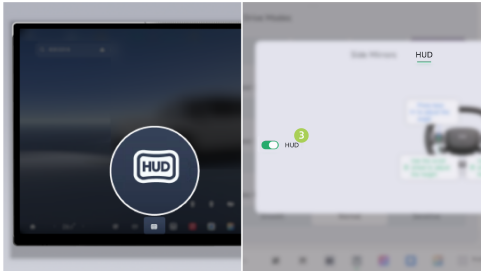
You can turn the HUD Head-Up Display on/off in the following ways:



- On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**Display**”Interface, where you can turn the HUD on/off. After the function is turned off, the HUD does not project any content.



- Tap on the center display. “ →**HUD**”, enter the HUD screen, where you can turn the HUD on/off. After the function is turned off, the HUD does not project any content.



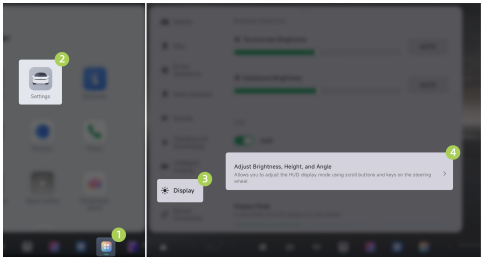
- Customize the bottom taskbar through the central control screen, which will The HUD adjustment icon is added to the bottom taskbar. Tap in the bottom taskbar. Tap the HUD adjustment icon to enter the HUD adjustment interface, where you can turn the HUD on/off. After the function is turned off, the HUD does not project any content (for information about the custom bottom taskbar, please refer to the custom bottom taskbar section).
- After waking up XPENG, say your command, for example: “Turn on the HUD”.

Tips

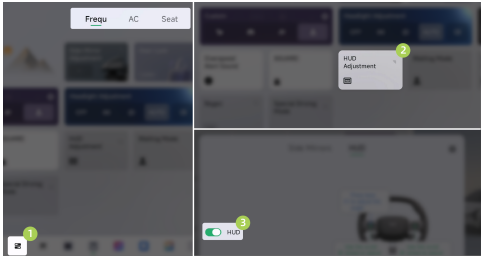
- After the driver’s seat Meditation Mode, Sleep Mode, Standby Mode, or Rescue Mode is enabled, the HUD function will automatically turn off. After exiting this function, the system will return to the state before activation.
- After enabling passenger meditation mode, screen cleaning, or triggering the SOS function, the HUD function will remain on or off.

Adjust the HUD height, brightness, and angle

You can enter the HUD adjustment interface in the following ways:



- On the central control screen “ →**Settings**→**Display**”Interface, enter the brightness, height, and angle adjustment interface.

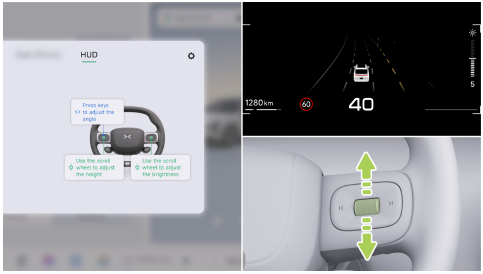


- Tap on the center control screen. “ →**HUD Adjustment**”, enter the HUD adjustment screen.
- After waking up XPENG, say your command, for example: “Adjust HUD”.

Tips

After manually adjusting the HUD height and angle, the relevant settings will be recorded in the driving habits of the currently logged-in account. If Guest Mode is enabled, the relevant settings will be saved locally.

Brightness Adjustment



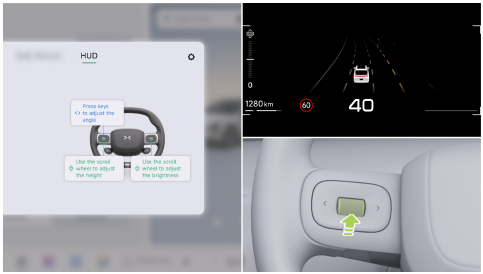
When the central control screen displays the HUD adjustment interface, scroll the right-side wheel on the steering wheel to adjust the brightness of the HUD interface.

- **Brighten:**Scroll the right-side steering wheel roller upward.
- **Dim:** Scroll down the roller on the right side of the steering wheel.

Tips

The HUD brightness is set to automatic adjustment by default.

Height Adjustment

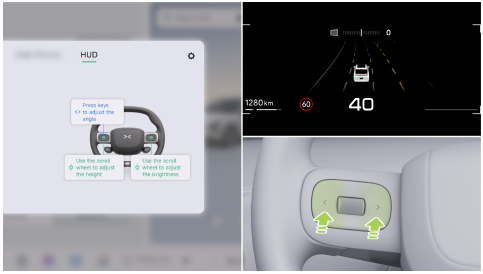


When the center display shows the HUD adjustment interface, scroll the left roller on the steering wheel to adjust the height of the HUD interface.

- **Raise:** Scroll the roller on the left side of the steering wheel upward.

- **Decrease:** Scroll down the left-side steering wheel roller.

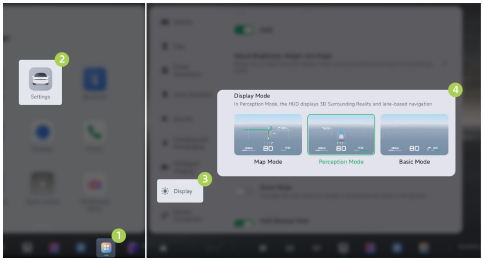
Angle Adjustment



When the central control screen displays the HUD adjustment interface, press the left/right buttons on the left side of the steering wheel to manually adjust the left/right rotation angle of the HUD interface.

- **Turn counterclockwise:** Press the left button on the left side of the steering wheel.
- **Turn clockwise:**Press the right button on the left side of the steering wheel.

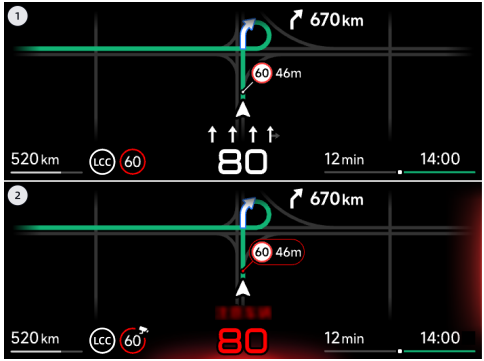
Set the HUD display mode



On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**Display**"Interface, switch the HUD display mode. You can select **Map Mode**、**Perception Mode**and **Concise Mode**Three display modes.

Map Mode

After map mode is selected, full map information, safety assistance function prompt information, etc. will be displayed.

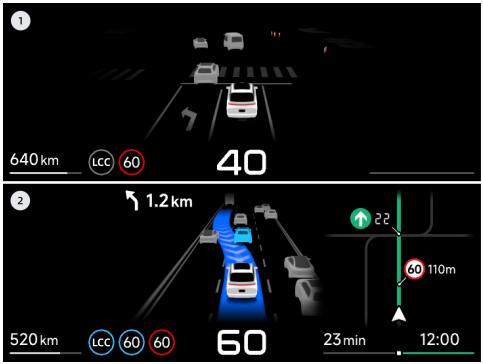


1. Full-screen map display mode.
2. Safety assistance function prompt information (e.g., overspeed reminder, adjacent vehicle cut-in reminder, etc.).

Perception Mode

After selecting the perception mode, SR environment simulation, safety assistance

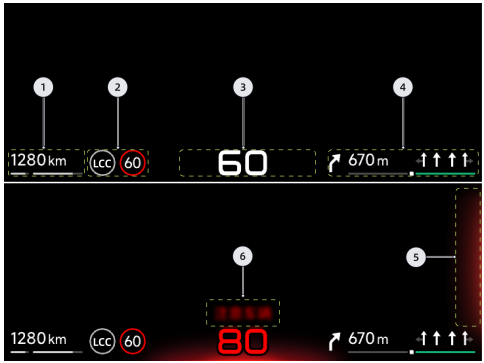
function prompt information, etc. will be displayed.



1. Manual driving mode and turn on navigation.
2. The assisted driving function has been enabled.

Concise Mode

After Concise mode is selected, only basic information, driving assistance function indicator lights, brief navigation information, and other content are displayed.

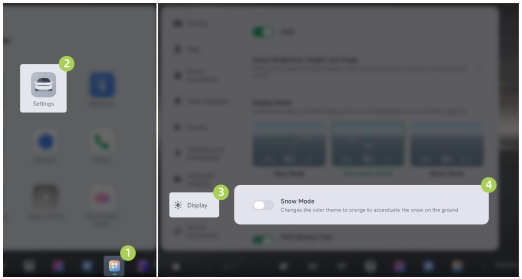


1. Information such as driving range, Air Conditioner fan speed and temperature

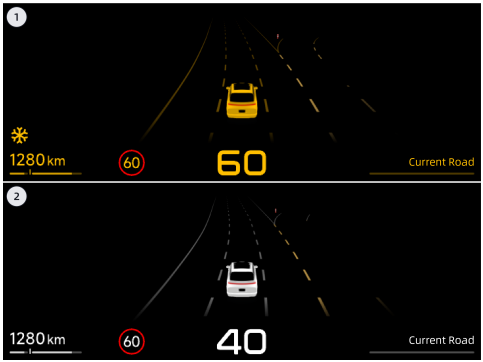
adjustment, volume adjustment, and switching driving mode.

2. Driving assistance function indicator light (such as the speed limit sign indicator light).
3. Vehicle speed, turn signal, gear position, and other information.
4. Brief navigation information.
5. Safety assistance function prompt information (such as: overspeed reminder, adjacent vehicle cut-in reminder, etc.).

Snow Mode

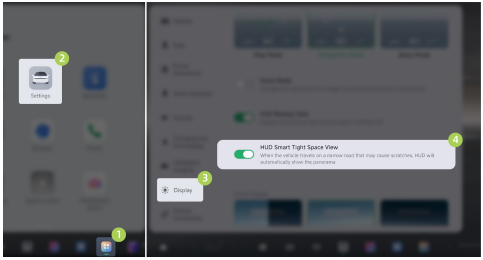


On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**Display**"Interface, you can turn Snow Mode on/off. After Snow Mode is turned on, the HUD switches to orange, and the snow display becomes clearer.

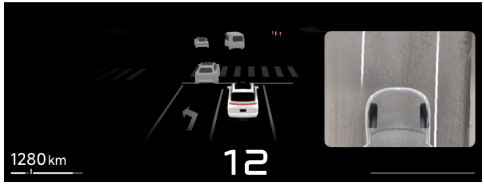


1. Turn on Snow Mode, and the main color switches to orange.
2. Turn off Snow Mode.

HUD Intelligent Narrow Road Imaging



On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**Intelligent Imaging**”On the interface, you can turn HUD Intelligent Narrow Road Imaging on/off.



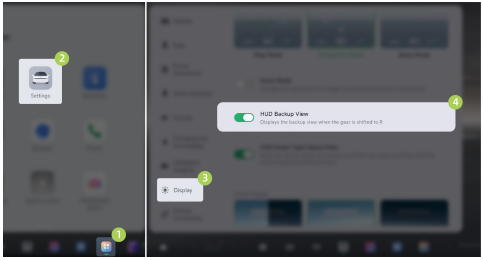
After the function is enabled, when the vehicle is in D gear and there is a risk of scraping while the vehicle is passing through a narrow road section, the HUD will automatically display the panoramic image.

warning

- The HUD intelligent narrow road image is an auxiliary function and is for reference only; it cannot replace the driver's observation of the surrounding environment.
- HUD intelligent narrow-road imaging cannot handle all traffic, weather, and road conditions. As the driver of the vehicle, you are responsible for driving safety. Do not

rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury may result.

HUD Reversing Image



On the center display screen " →**Settings**→**Display**"Interface, where you can turn the HUD reversing image on/off.

On: When shifting the vehicle into reverse gear (R gear), the HUD will automatically display the rear view image.

Close: When the vehicle gear is shifted to another gear, the HUD will automatically exit the reversing image display and return to the state before activation.

warning

- When reversing, make full use of the Rearview Mirror, Side Mirrors, 360 Camera, and HUD reversing image to observe the

surroundings of the vehicle and prevent accidents.

- The HUD reversing image is an assistive function and can only be used for reference. It cannot replace the driver's observation of the surrounding environment. The HUD reversing image cannot respond to all traffic, weather, and road conditions. As the driver of the vehicle, you are responsible for driving safety. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury may result.

warning

Objects in the HUD reversing image screen may be distorted to a certain extent compared with the actual objects. In the following scenarios, the HUD reversing image may not function properly:

- Camera limited.
- The camera is obstructed (by dust, coverings, etc.), or weather conditions are poor (such as heavy rain, heavy snow, or dense fog).

Clean the HUD

To ensure the HUD display effect, regularly use a clean, dry microfiber cloth to gently wipe away dust or dirt from the inner and outer sides of the windshield glass and the HUD system area. If there are stains that are difficult to wipe clean, slightly dampen the microfiber cloth before wiping.

HUD Usage Precautions

- Check and confirm that the position and brightness of the HUD system will not interfere with safe driving.
- While driving, do not continuously stare at the head-up display system; otherwise, you may fail to see pedestrians, objects, etc. on the road ahead of the vehicle.
- Do not place any liquid near the HUD system. If the HUD system becomes wet, it may cause an electrical malfunction.
- Do not place any objects or stickers on the HUD system or the projection area of the front windshield, otherwise the HUD display may be interrupted.
- Do not touch the HUD system or throw sharp-edged objects into the HUD system. Otherwise, mechanical failure may result.
- Do not use a front windshield film with poor light transmittance or a dark color, otherwise it may affect the display effect of the HUD system.
- Poor installation workmanship of the front windshield film, resulting in bubbles or wrinkles, will also affect the display effect. It is recommended that you go to an XPENG service center or an XPENG-designated partner store for installation by professionally trained service technicians.

caution

Some sunglasses may affect the reading of the Head Up Display (HUD) information, please remove the sunglasses when adjusting the Head Up Display.

caution

If the windshield needs to be replaced, please visit an XPENG service center to have the special windshield installed, in order to avoid affecting the Head-Up Display system imaging.

XPENG App

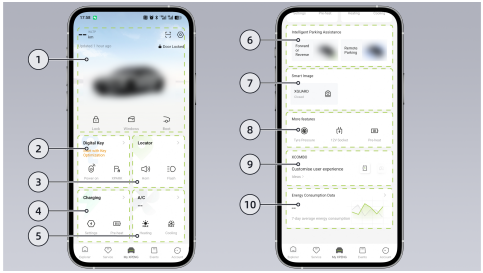
Download XPENG APP

The download methods for the XPENG App are as follows:

- Android/iPhone users can directly search for "XPENG" in the app store preinstalled on their phone to download and install it.

Vehicle Control Function

On the XPENG page in the XPENG App, perform the following controls on the vehicle:



1. Vehicle status and shortcut bar: View vehicle status information such as vehicle range and door status. Quickly enable the required functions in the shortcut bar.
2. Digital Key: View the connection status between the Bluetooth key and the vehicle. Enter the Digital Key interface to perform settings such as creating or deregistering the mobile app key.
3. Find Vehicle: View the vehicle's real-time location (owner account only). The vehicle

flashes its lights and honks, which helps you find the vehicle.

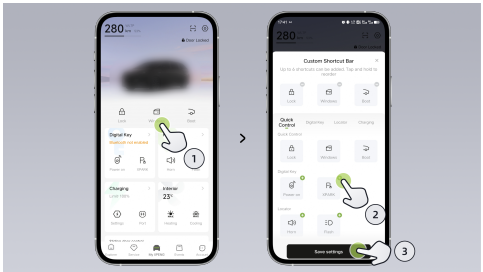
4. Charging Center: Enter the Charging Center interface to view information such as the locations of charging stations near the vehicle and charging records.
5. Smart Air Conditioner: View the temperature inside the vehicle. Enter the Air Conditioner interface to remotely turn the Air Conditioner on or off and set Air Conditioner functions.
6. Intelligent Parking: Use parking functions such as Remote Vehicle Summons and remote parking. For details, please refer to the introduction in the parking chapter.
7. Intelligent Imaging: Turn XGUARD on/off, view desensitized real-time images around the vehicle (owner account only), and desensitized high-risk XGUARD recordings from the past 7 days.
8. More functions: view tire pressure, set the activation duration of the in-vehicle power supply, turn on/off low-temperature battery preheating, and other functions.
9. XCOMBO: You can add, delete, or create Combos.
10. Vehicle data: View average energy consumption and recent trip records (owner account only).

Tips

- The XPENG interface defaults to the standard style. You can adjust the XPENG interface style in Settings and choose either "standard style" or "traditional style".
- When the phone key is connected to the vehicle via bluetooth connection, it can also be used in environments without network signal, such as garages.
- The vehicle is equipped with both media Bluetooth and key Bluetooth at the same time. The phone key will automatically connect via Bluetooth without needing to be paired on the central control screen.
- Usually, the bluetooth connection range in an open area is about 20 m, and there may be differences due to factors such

as the mobile phone's Bluetooth hardware, environmental obstruction, and interference.

custom shortcut bar



1. Press and hold the function icon in the shortcut bar to customize the shortcut bar.
2. In the custom state, tap the + in the upper right corner of the function icon to add functions such as quick Vehicle Control, digital key, and Find My Car to the custom shortcut bar. Press and hold the function icon in the custom shortcut bar, then drag the function icon to adjust the order.
3. Tap “Save Settings” to exit custom status.

i Tips

The shortcut bar can contain up to 6 functions, and at least 1 function must be retained.

Combo Mode

Rest Mode

After Nap Mode is enabled, some functions such as lights, window, and Power Off Automatically will be temporarily disabled to create an immersive nap environment for you.

Enable Nap Mode

Before enabling Nap Mode, ensure that the vehicle meets the following conditions:

- The gear is in P.
- Battery level is greater than 10%.

- Pet Mode, Rescue Mode, Car Wash Mode, Leave-Vehicle Comfort, Camping Mode, Meditation Mode, Sleep Mode, or other scenario modes are not enabled.
- The vehicle is not in the system update state.

When the conditions for enabling Nap Mode are met, you can enable Nap Mode in the following ways:

- Tap the central control screen in sequence. “ →**Combo Mode**→**Rest Mode**”, enable Nap Mode.
- Tap on the home page of the central control screen. “ **Scenario** ”Enter the Combo mode screen, tap “**Rest Mode**”Can be enabled and enter the nap mode settings screen.
- Directly use a voice command (for example, say “Hey XPENG, turn on Nap Mode”).

Set Nap Mode

After Nap Mode is enabled, you can perform the following settings on the Nap Mode screen:

1. Self-check item list: Tap to expand/collapse the self-check item list.

> **Tips**
>
> After Nap Mode is enabled, the vehicle will automatically detect the closed status of each component and display a self-check item list on the mode interface. When a component has an abnormal closing status,

a red warning symbol will be displayed in front of the corresponding self-check item to prompt you to inspect the condition of the vehicle components.

2. Air Conditioner status: Tap to enter the Air Conditioner interface, where you can set the Air Conditioner according to your personal needs.
3. Alarm: Set the alarm and countdown; if the countdown is not set, it defaults to 30 minutes.
4. seat: Tap to set the seat linkage function. After the linkage function is enabled, the corresponding seat enters the comfortable position.

i Tips

When Nap mode is activated, if the seat linkage function is enabled and a person is detected on the seat, the system will automatically return to the set comfort position.

⚠ warning

Make sure hands, bodies or objects are not on the seat path during seat adjustment to avoid the risk of pinching.

5. Ambient sound: Tap to turn ambient sound on or off.
6. Screen off: Tap to turn off all screens in the vehicle. Tap the corresponding screen or exit Nap Mode to turn the screen back on.

Exit Nap Mode

After Nap Mode is enabled, you can exit Nap Mode by any of the following methods:

- Directly use a voice command (for example, say “Hey XPENG, exit Nap Mode”).
- Tap on the Nap Mode screen. “ ✕ ”, exit Nap Mode.

When the vehicle triggers any of the following conditions, Nap Mode will automatically exit:

- Battery level is below 10%.

- The gear position switches to a non-P gear.
- Power Off in an emergency via the central control screen.
- Use the remote key or mobile APP to lock the vehicle.

Car Wash Mode

Before a regular car wash or conveyor car wash, please enable car wash mode. The vehicle will automatically detect the closed status of all components. At the same time, some functions such as the windows, lights, and air conditioner Fresh Air will be temporarily disabled to prevent water from entering the vehicle and to ensure vehicle safety during the car wash process.

Enable Car Wash Mode

Before enabling Car Wash Mode, ensure that the vehicle meets the following conditions:

- The gear is in P.
- The battery level is greater than 10%.
- Pet Mode, Rescue Mode, Camping Mode, Leave-Car Comfort, Nap Mode, Meditation Mode, Sleep Mode, and other scenario modes are not enabled.
- The vehicle is not in the system update state.

When the conditions for activating Car Wash Mode are met, Car Wash Mode can be activated by any of the following methods:

- Tap the central control screen in sequence. “ →**Combo Mode**→**Car Wash Mode**”, enable Car Wash Mode.
- Tap on the central control screen home page “ **Scenario** ”Enter the Combo mode screen and tap “**Car Wash Mode**”, enable Car Wash Mode.
- Directly use a voice command (for example, say: “Hey XPENG, turn on Car Wash Mode”).

If needed, you can also perform the following operations on the Car Wash Mode screen:

1. Self-check item list: Tap to expand/collapse the self-check item list.

> **i Tips**
>
> After Car Wash Mode is enabled, the vehicle will automatically detect the closed status of each component and display a self-check item list on the mode interface. When a component is abnormally closed, a red warning symbol will be displayed in front of the corresponding self-check item to prompt you to inspect the condition of the vehicle components.

2. Conveyor belt: Enable conveyor belt car wash mode.
3. Clean screen: Enter screen cleaning mode.
4. Side Mirrors: Fold/unfold the side mirrors.

Conveyor Car Wash

If a conveyor car wash is required, tap on the Car Wash Mode screen. “**Conveyor Belt**”, a confirmation window will pop up on the central control screen. Please press and hold the brake pedal as prompted, and tap “**Confirm**”Enter conveyor car wash mode.

After entering conveyor car wash mode, the vehicle will automatically perform the following operations: shift to N, release the Electronic Parking Brake, and fold the rearview mirrors. After releasing the brake, the vehicle can enter the automatic car wash.

To exit conveyor car wash mode, tap on the center display. “**Exit Conveyor Car Wash**”, and the Conveyor Belt Car Wash Mode will exit.

Tips

After exiting conveyor car wash mode, the gear automatically switches to P gear.

Exit Car Wash Mode

After Car Wash Mode is enabled, you can exit Car Wash Mode by any of the following methods:

- Directly use a voice command (for example, say: “Hey XPENG, exit Car Wash Mode”).
- Tap on the Car Wash Mode screen. “ ✕ ”, exit Car Wash Mode.

The car wash mode will automatically exit when any of the following situations occurs:

- Battery level is below 10%.
- The vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h continuously for 5 seconds.
- Car Wash Mode has been enabled for more than 2 hours.
- Connect the charging gun.

Camping Mode

When you go out for activities such as outings, you can enable Camping Mode. After it is enabled, some functions such as lights, Power Off Automatically, or automatic lock/unlock will be temporarily disabled to provide a more comfortable and convenient outdoor vehicle use experience.

Enable Camping Mode

Before enabling Camping Mode, ensure that the vehicle meets the following conditions:

- The gear is in P.
- The battery level is greater than 10%.
- Pet Mode, Rescue Mode, Camping Mode, Leave Vehicle Comfort, Nap Mode, Meditation Mode, Sleep Mode, and other scenario modes are not enabled.
- The vehicle is not in the system update state.

When the conditions for enabling Camping Mode are met, Camping Mode can be enabled in any of the following ways:

- Tap the central control screen in sequence. " →**Combo Mode**→**Camping Mode**", turn on Camping Mode.
- Tap on the central control screen home page. " **Scenario** "Enter the Combo mode screen and tap "**Camping Mode**", enable Camping Mode.
- Directly use a voice command (for example, say "Hey XPENG, turn on Camping Mode").

After Camp Mode is enabled, the central control screen and the instrument cluster will simultaneously display the Camp Mode interface. You can also perform the following operations on the Camp Mode interface according to your personal needs:

1. Self-check item list: Tap to expand/collapse the self-check item list.

Tips

After Camp Mode is enabled, the vehicle will automatically detect the closed status of each component and display a self-check item list on the mode interface. When a component has an abnormal closing status, a red warning symbol will be displayed in front of the corresponding self-check item to prompt you to inspect the condition of the vehicle components.

2. Air Conditioner status: Tap to enter the Air Conditioner interface, where you can set the Air Conditioner according to your personal needs.
3. Screen Off: Tap to turn off all screens in the vehicle, including the instrument screen and the center display. Tap the center display or exit Camping Mode to turn the screens back on.
4. seat: Tap to set the seat linkage function. After the linkage function is enabled, the corresponding seat enters the rest position.

Tips

When Camp Mode is enabled, if the seat linkage function is enabled and the system detects that someone is on the seat, the system will automatically return to the set rest position.

warning

Make sure hands, bodies or objects are not on the seat path during seat adjustment to avoid the risk of pinching.

5. Power supply: Tap to open the power supply settings screen, where you can open/close the charging port cover and set the power supply limit.

Tips

After the power supply gun is connected for power supply, the Camping Mode interface will display the corresponding power supply information.

Exit Camping Mode

After Camp Mode is enabled, you can exit Camp Mode in any of the following ways. After exiting, some functions such as Power Off Automatically and automatic lock/unlock will be restored:

- Directly use a voice command (for example, say “你好 XPENG, exit Camping Mode”).
- Tap on the Camping Mode screen on the center display. “ ✕ ”, exit Camping Mode.

When the vehicle triggers any of the following conditions, Camping Mode will automatically exit:

- Battery level is below 5%.
- The gear is shifted to a non-P gear.
- Power Off in an emergency through the central control screen.
- Use the remote key or mobile APP to lock the vehicle.

Comfort After Leaving Vehicle

When you need to leave the vehicle temporarily, you can enable Leave-Vehicle Comfort Mode. When enabled, after the vehicle is locked, the system will continue to maintain a comfortable interior environment and will not Power Off Automatically.

Enable Leave-Vehicle Comfort Mode

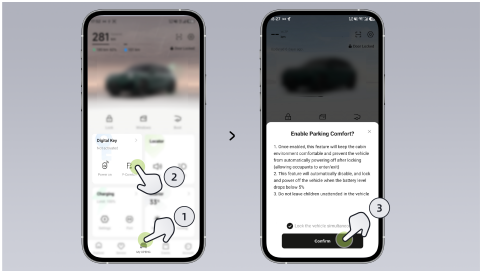
Before enabling Leave Vehicle Comfort Mode, ensure that the vehicle meets the following conditions:

- The vehicle is powered on.
- The gear is in P.
- The battery level is greater than 10%.
- Pet Mode, Rescue Mode, Car Wash Mode, Camping Mode, Nap Mode, and other scenario modes are not enabled.

When the activation conditions for Leave-vehicle Comfort Mode are met, you can enable Leave-

vehicle Comfort Mode in any of the following ways:

- Tap on the center control screen in sequence. “ →**Combo Mode→Leave-Vehicle Comfort**”, enable Leave Vehicle Comfort Mode.
- Tap on the home page of the central control screen. “ **Scenario** ”Enter the Combo mode screen and tap “**Comfort After Exit**”, enable Leave-Vehicle Comfort Mode.
- Customize the bottom taskbar through the central control screen, which will “ **Comfort After Leaving Vehicle** ”Add to the bottom taskbar, tap in the bottom taskbar “ **Leave-vehicle Comfort** ”, enable Leave-Car Comfort Mode (for information about custom bottom taskbar, please refer to the custom bottom taskbar section).



- Tap in the XPENG App “**XPENG→Comfort After Exit**”Confirm in the pop-up window and enable Leave-Car Comfort Mode.

i Tips

In the pop-up window of the XPENG App, you can select “**Lock vehicle at the same time**”. After selecting it, the vehicle will automatically lock when P-Comfort Mode is activated.

After turning on Leave-Car Comfort Mode, you can also perform the following operations on the Leave-Car Comfort Mode screen according to your personal needs:

1. Self-check item list: Tap to expand/collapse the self-check item list.

   Tips

   After Leave-Vehicle Comfort Mode is enabled, the vehicle will automatically detect the closed status of each component and display a self-check item list on the mode interface. When a component has an abnormal closed status, a red warning symbol will be displayed in front of the corresponding self-check item to prompt you to inspect the condition of the vehicle components.

2. Air Conditioner status: Tap to enter the Air Conditioner interface, where you can set the Air Conditioner according to your personal needs.
3. Door lock: Tap to unlock/lock the doors.
4. lights: Tap to turn the exterior headlights on/off.
5. Screen off: Tap to turn off all screens in the vehicle, including the instrument screen, center control screen, rear control screen, and rear entertainment screen. Tap the corresponding screen or exit Leave-Vehicle Comfort Mode to turn the screen back on.

Exit Leave-Vehicle Comfort Mode

After Leave-Car Comfort Mode is enabled, you can exit Leave-Car Comfort Mode by any of the following methods:

- Tap on the center display in the Leave Vehicle Comfort interface. " ✕ ", exit Leave Comfort Mode.
- Tap in the XPENG App "**XPENG→Leave-Vehicle Comfort**"Confirm in the pop-up window and exit Leave-Car Comfort Mode.
- In the XPENG App "**XPENG→Comfort Access Activating→Exit**"Confirm in the pop-up window and exit Leave-Car Comfort Mode.

When the vehicle meets any of the following conditions, Leave Vehicle Comfort Mode will automatically exit:

- Battery level is below 5%.
- The gear position switches to a non-P gear.
- Power Off in an emergency via the central control screen.

i Tips

- After P-Comfort Mode has been running for 1 hour, the system will send a notification to the XPENG App indicating that it has been running for 1 hour.
- When locking the vehicle from outside, if the vehicle detects that a passenger remains inside, the system will temporarily activate P-Comfort Mode. The vehicle will remain powered on for 5 minutes, and a pop-up notification will appear on the touchscreen while a message is also sent to the XPENG App. At this time, you can tap Confirm on the touchscreen pop-up or use the XPENG App to keep P-Comfort Mode running. If P-Comfort Mode is not activated on the touchscreen or in the XPENG App within 5 minutes, the vehicle will power off automatically.

⚠ caution

- The P-Comfort Mode is intended only to maintain a comfortable in-vehicle

environment during temporary absence from the vehicle. Do not leave children or pets alone in the vehicle.

- After P-Comfort Mode is activated, it must be turned off manually via the touchscreen or the XPENG App. If you will be away from the vehicle for an extended period, it is recommended to turn off P-Comfort Mode to avoid excessive range consumption caused by prolonged operation.

Pet Mode

After Pet Mode is enabled, when the driver leaves the vehicle, it can ensure the safety of pets left alone in the vehicle and will prompt the in-vehicle safety status. If there are children in the vehicle, please ensure that an adult accompanies them.

Enable Pet Mode via the center display

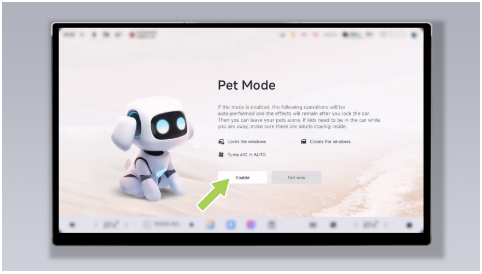
Before enabling Pet Mode, ensure that the vehicle meets the following conditions:

- The gear is in P.
- Battery level is greater than 20%.

When the conditions for enabling Pet Mode are met, enable Pet Mode by following these steps:

1. You can enter the Pet Mode screen in any of the following ways:
   - Directly use a voice command (for example, say “Hey XPENG, turn on Pet Mode”).
   - Tap on the central control screen home page “ **Scenario** ”Enter the Combo mode screen, tap “**Pet Mode**”Enter the Pet Mode screen.
   - On the center control screen “ →**Combo Mode**→**Pet Mode**”, enter the Pet Mode screen.
   - On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Maintenance**→**Pet Mode**”, enter the Pet Mode screen.
   - Tap the taskbar at the bottom of the center display. Pet Mode icon, enter the Pet Mode screen (for information about the

custom bottom taskbar, please refer to the custom bottom taskbar section).



2. On the Pet Mode interface of the central control screen, tap “**Enable**”Press the button to enable Pet Mode. After Pet Mode is enabled, the vehicle will automatically perform the following operations and continue to maintain them after the vehicle is locked:
   - Locks the windows.
   - Closes the windows.
   - Turns A/C in AUTO.
   - Child lock engaged (if equipped with electronic child lock).

i Tips

- Please do not forget to lock the vehicle. After the vehicle is locked, the Air Conditioner and the central control screen will remain on.
- If the window cannot be fully closed, Pet Mode may fail to be enabled. Please check it and try enabling it again.
- When the vehicle battery level is lower than 5% or the vehicle functions abnormally (for example: Air Conditioner abnormality), the window will open by 10% to ensure air circulation inside the vehicle.

3. You may leave pets alone in the vehicle. After the driver leaves the vehicle, the center display will show the current interior temperature to inform nearby pedestrians that rescue is not required.

Set Pet Mode via the center display

After Pet Mode is enabled, you can manually adjust the air conditioning temperature to ensure a comfortable temperature inside the vehicle.

i Tips

If there are children in the vehicle, ensure that they are accompanied by an adult.

Exit Pet Mode via the center display

After the driver returns, on the Pet Mode interface of the central control screen, press and hold “**Long Press to Exit**”Press the button to exit Pet Mode.

Enable Pet Mode via the mobile app

Enable Pet Mode by following these steps:

1. Ensure that the vehicle is in P gear and the remaining battery level is greater than 20% before enabling Pet Mode.
2. Tap in the mobile app “**XPENG→Smart Air Conditioning→Pet Mode**”Confirm in the pop-up window and enable Pet Mode.

   After Pet Mode is activated, the air conditioner automatically turns on AI-AUTO mode. You can manually adjust the air conditioning temperature in the mobile App to ensure a comfortable temperature inside the vehicle. The four windows close automatically, and the window lock and child lock are automatically locked. Please do not forget to lock the vehicle. After the vehicle is locked, the air conditioner and the central control screen will remain on.

3. After the occupants leave the vehicle, the central control screen will display the current interior temperature to inform nearby pedestrians that rescue is not required.

Exit Pet Mode via the mobile app

After the driver and passengers return, tap in the mobile app "**XPENG→Smart Air Conditioning→Pet Mode**", confirm in the pop-up window and exit Pet Mode.

Meditation Mode

After Mindfulness Mode is enabled, the seats and other Cabin environment settings will be adjusted to a comfortable state for your mindfulness time.

Enable Meditation Mode via the center display

Before enabling Meditation Mode, ensure that the vehicle meets the following conditions:

- The gear is in P.
- Rescue Mode, Car Wash Mode, Camping Mode, Pet Mode, Sleep Mode, and other scenario modes are not enabled.

When the conditions for enabling Meditation Mode are met, you can enable Meditation Mode in the following ways:

1. You can enter the Meditation Mode screen in any of the following ways:
   - Tap on the center control screen in sequence. " →**Combo Mode→Meditation Mode**", enter the Meditation Mode screen.

- Tap on the home page of the central control screen " **Scenario** "Enter the Combo mode screen, tap "**Meditation Mode**"Enter the Meditation Mode screen.

2. You can select the seat you want to activate in the Meditation Mode interface according to your personal needs, and tap "**Confirm**"Press the button to enable Meditation Mode. After Meditation Mode is enabled, the vehicle will automatically perform the following operations:
   - The seat will automatically adjust to a comfortable position.
   - The exterior lights turn off automatically.
   - Switch to Night Mode, turn on Ambient Lights, adjust the media volume, and play mindfulness music.

i Tips

During the automatic seat adjustment process, you can operate the seat adjustment switch at any time to interrupt the seat movement.

warning

- During automatic seat adjustment, keep objects and all parts of the body away from the seat movement range to avoid personal injury or property damage.

Set Meditation Mode

After Meditation Mode is enabled, the instrument cluster, center display, and rear entertainment screen will simultaneously display the Meditation Mode interface. You can perform the following operations on the Meditation Mode interface according to your personal needs:

1. Mindfulness headband: Follow the prompts to connect the mindfulness headband device. When used with Mindfulness mode, it can provide mindfulness records to help you scientifically relieve stress and care for your physical and mental health.

Tips

The meditation headband device must be purchased separately.

2. Screen off: Select the front-seat meditation mode, and the instrument screen and central control screen will enter the screen-off state; select the rear-seat meditation mode, and the rear control screen and rear entertainment screen will enter the screen-off state. Tap the screen again or exit meditation mode to light up the screen again.
3. Ambient Lights: Tap to turn the Ambient Lights on or off.
4. Synchronized seats: You can select the seats to be turned on or off as required on the synchronized seats interface, tap "**Confirm**"Press the button to enable or exit Meditation Mode. After Meditation Mode is enabled, the corresponding seat will automatically adjust to a comfortable position. After exiting Meditation Mode, the corresponding seat will return to its original state.

warning

Make sure hands, bodies or objects are not on the seat path during seat adjustment to avoid the risk of pinching.

5. Seat massage: Tap to enter the seat massage screen, where you can set the seat massage function according to personal needs.

Tips

If the front seats are equipped with a massage function, settings can be made on the Meditation Mode interface of the central control screen. If the rear seats are also equipped with a massage function, settings can be made on the Meditation Mode interface of the rear entertainment screen.

6. Air Conditioner: Tap to enter the Air Conditioner screen, where you can set the

Air Conditioner according to your personal needs.

7. Time and date.
8. Alarm: Set the alarm and countdown; if the countdown is not set, it defaults to 30 minutes.

> **Tips**
>
> You can set alarms independently on the meditation mode interface of the center control screen and the rear entertainment screen. After setting an alarm, the set alarm wake-up time will be displayed when entering meditation mode again. If you exit meditation mode before the countdown ends, it will exit directly.

9. Music card: Tap the music card to pause or play. You can also switch the music theme according to your personal needs. At the same time as switching the theme, the animations on the instrument cluster, center display, and rear entertainment screen will also switch to the corresponding theme.

> **Tips**
>
> The Four Seasons Story and Sound of Waves do not require downloading; all other music themes require downloading (the estimated data usage can be viewed on the Music card). Please pay attention to data usage. The download speed is related to the signal strength of the connected network. If the signal strength is low, the vehicle's Internet access speed may be slow.

Immersive Mode

If there is no operation for more than 20 seconds or if you tap a blank area, the system will enter immersive mode. In immersive mode, only the theme background animation, time, date, and alarm are retained. If there is no operation for more than 5 seconds after entering immersive mode, the instrument screen, center control screen, and rear entertainment screen will reduce screen brightness.

In immersive mode, tapping the screen again, waking up XPENG, or operating the entertainment screen remote control will all exit immersive mode and restore the screen brightness to the setting before entering.

Tips

After exiting immersive mode, when setting the various functions of meditation mode, immersive mode will not be entered.

Exit Meditation Mode

After Meditation Mode is activated, you can exit Meditation Mode by any of the following methods:

- Directly use a voice command (for example, say “Hey XPENG, exit Meditation Mode”), and follow the prompts to confirm exiting Meditation Mode.
- Tap on the meditation mode screen interface. “ ✕ ”Follow the prompt to confirm exiting Meditation Mode.

When the vehicle gear is shifted to a non-P gear, Meditation Mode will automatically exit.

After exiting Meditation Mode, the vehicle will automatically perform the following operations:

- The seats, rear entertainment screen, and exterior lights will automatically adjust to the state before entering Meditation Mode.
- Pause Mindfulness music playback. Night Mode, Ambient Lights, and media volume automatically switch to the settings from before entering Mindfulness mode.

Tips

Night Mode automatically switches to the settings before entry only after Meditation Mode is exited on both the central control screen and the rear entertainment screen.

warning

Make sure hands, bodies or objects are not on the seat path during seat adjustment to avoid the risk of pinching.

Sleep Mode

After turning on Sleep mode, you can adjust the seat mode yourself and start your sleep time.

Enable Sleep Mode

Before enabling Sleep Mode, ensure that the vehicle meets the following conditions:

- The gear is in P.
- Fast charging state not entered.
- The remaining driving range is greater than 30 km.
- Rescue Mode, Nap Mode, Car Wash Mode, Camping Mode, Away Comfort, Meditation Mode, Pet Mode, and other scenario modes are not enabled.
- The vehicle is not in the system update state.

When the conditions for enabling Sleep Mode are met, you can enable Sleep Mode in the following ways:

- Directly use a voice command (for example, say “Hey XPENG, turn on Sleep Mode”).
- Tap on the home page of the central control screen “ **Scenario** ”Enter the Combo mode screen and tap “**Sleep Mode**”Enter the sleep mode screen.
- Tap the central control screen in sequence. “ →**Combo Mode**→**Sleep Mode**”, enable Sleep Mode.

After Sleep Mode is enabled, the vehicle will automatically perform the following operations:

- The exterior lights switch off automatically.
- Switch to Night Mode, enable the air conditioner AI-AUTO mode, automatically adjust the media sound effect mode, and play sleep music.
- Disable the Power Off Automatically function to keep the vehicle powered on and disable the seat Welcome function.

Set Sleep Mode

After Sleep Mode is enabled, the center display and the instrument cluster will simultaneously display the Sleep Mode interface. You can

perform the following operations on the Sleep Mode interface according to your personal needs:

1. Time and driving range.

> **Tips**
>
> When the driving range is below 60 km, XPENG will issue a voice reminder: "The current battery level is too low. Please do not use Sleep Space for an extended period."

2. Screen off: Tap to turn off all screens in the vehicle, including the instrument screen, center control screen, rear control screen, and rear entertainment screen. Tap the screen, wake up XPENG, operate the steering wheel buttons, when the alarm sounds, or exit Nap Mode to turn the screen back on.
3. Door Lock: Tap to lock or unlock the doors.
4. Trunk: Tap to open or close the trunk.
5. Sleep Space guardian prompt information.
6. Seat mode: Turn Single Bed Mode or Large Bed Mode on or off.

> **Tips**
>
> If needed for use with the mattress, it can be purchased at XPENG stores.

> **warning**
>
> Make sure hands, bodies or objects are not on the seat path during seat adjustment to avoid the risk of pinching.

7. Alarm settings: Set the alarm and countdown timer; if the countdown timer is not set, it defaults to 5 minutes, and the maximum setting is 24 hours.

> **Tips**
>
> After setting an alarm, the set alarm wake-up time will be displayed when entering sleep mode again. If sleep mode is exited before the countdown ends, it will exit directly.

8. Air Conditioner status: Tap to enter the Air Conditioner interface, where you can set the Air Conditioner according to your personal needs.
9. Sleep music: View the cover and name of the currently playing music, control music play/pause, view the playlist, and tap the card to set the sleep music theme and timed playback.

Enable seat bed mode

On the Sleep Mode screen, tap Seat Mode to set the seat mode to Single Bed Mode or Large Bed Mode. Taking Single Bed Mode as an example, it can be enabled through the following operations:

1. Tap "**Single Bed Mode→Next**"Adjust the front seat head restraints to the lowest position as prompted, confirm that there are no passengers or items on the rear seats and that the rear seatbacks are not folded, then tap "**Next**"。
2. Tap as prompted. "**Start Adjustment**"Afterward, leave the front seat, and the seat will automatically adjust to the flat position. After the seat adjustment is completed, wait a moment and it will return to the sleep mode interface.

i Tips

During the automatic adjustment of the seat, you can operate the seat adjustment switch or tap on the central control screen at any time. "**Pause Adjustment**"Button, interrupts the seat movement. After confirming safety, tap on the central control screen. "**Continue adjusting**"Press the button, and the seat will continue to automatically adjust to the flat position.

warning

Make sure hands, bodies or objects are not on the seat path during seat adjustment to avoid the risk of pinching.

3. To use the airbed, follow the airbed user manual to unfold it, lay it flat, and inflate it, then start your sleep time.

Exit Bed Mode for Seat

If the airbed has been used, after sleep ends, please deflate it according to the requirements in the airbed user manual and store the airbed.

Using Single Occupant Mode as an example, you can exit seat mode in any of the following ways:

- Tap on the sleep mode screen " ✕ "Select according to the prompt. "**Single Bed Mode**", the seat will automatically return to the memorized position and exit Sleep mode.
- Tap on the sleep mode screen "**Single Bed Mode**", tap "**Next**", the seat will automatically return to the memorized position. After seat adjustment is completed, wait a moment and it will return to the sleep mode screen.

i Tips

During the automatic seat adjustment process, you can operate the seat adjustment switch or tap on the central control screen at any time. "**Pause/Resume**"Button, interrupts the seat movement. After confirming safety, tap on the central control screen. "**Continue Recovery**"The seat will continue to automatically return to the memorized position.

warning

Make sure hands, bodies or objects are not on the seat path during seat adjustment to avoid the risk of pinching.

Exit Sleep Mode

After Sleep Mode is enabled, you can exit Sleep Mode by any of the following methods:

- Directly use a voice command (for example, say "Hey XPENG, exit Sleep Mode"), and follow the prompts to confirm exiting Sleep Mode.

- Tap on the sleep mode screen “ ✕ ”Follow the prompt to confirm exiting Sleep Mode.

When the vehicle triggers any of the following conditions, Nap Mode will automatically exit:

- The remaining driving range is less than or equal to 30 km.
- The gear is shifted to a non-p gear.

After exiting sleep mode, the vehicle will automatically perform the following operations:

- The exterior lights will automatically adjust to the state before entering sleep mode.
- Pause Sleep Space music playback. Night Mode and media sound effects automatically switch to the settings from before entering sleep mode.
- Restore Power Off Automatically and the seat welcome function.

Standby Mode

Enable Standby Mode

Before enabling Standby Mode, ensure that the vehicle meets the following conditions:

- The door is closed.
- The gear is in P.

When the conditions for enabling Standby Mode are met, you can enable Standby Mode in any of the following ways. After entering Standby Mode, the vehicle lights and screen will turn off:

- Tap on the home page of the central control screen “ **Scenario** ”Enter the Combo mode screen and tap “**Standby Mode**”Enable Standby Mode.
- Tap in sequence on the center control screen. “ →**Combo Mode**→**Standby Mode**”, enable Cleaning Mode.
- Tap the center display in sequence. “ →**Settings**→**Display**→**Standby Mode**”, enable Standby Mode.

Exit Standby Mode

After Standby Mode is enabled, when any of the following conditions is triggered, Standby Mode will automatically exit:

- Shift gears.
- Tap the center display.
- Wake up XPENG.
- When the rear entertainment screen is unfolded, tap the rear entertainment screen*.
- Open the door.

screen Cleaning Mode

Enable screen Cleaning Mode

You can enter screen cleaning mode in the following ways. The center display, instrument display, and rear entertainment screen* will be turned off to prevent accidental touches during cleaning:

- Use a voice command (for example, say “你好XPENG, turn on screen cleaning mode”).

- Tap on the central control screen home page “ **Scenario** ”Enter the Combo mode screen and tap “**screen Cleaning Mode**”Enable Cleaning Mode.
- Tap on the center control screen in sequence. “ →**Combo Mode**→**screen Cleaning Mode**”, enable Cleaning Mode.
- Tap on the center control screen in sequence. “ →**Settings**→**Display**→**screen Cleaning Mode**”, enable screen Cleaning Mode.

Exit screen Cleaning Mode

After screen cleaning is completed, press and hold the center display screen “**Press and hold to exit**”Button, after the countdown ends, exit screen cleaning mode.

XCOMBO

XCOMBO supports you in personalizing Cabin functions according to your own preferences. For example: at noon on a workday, when the vehicle is at the company, turn on the remote air conditioning in advance to adjust the temperature inside the vehicle, and after getting in the vehicle, automatically adjust the seat position to nap mode.

caution

To ensure the functional experience, please upgrade the XPENG Motors App and the in-vehicle system to the latest version.

Central Control Screen Function Entry

Tap the central control screen “ ”, tap in the App Center “**XCOMBO**”, enter the XCOMBO screen.

Select Combo

XCOMBO has selected a series of creative and practical vehicle use scenarios, which can be used in “**Recommended Store**”Interface selection, tap “**Combo Card**”You can view Combo details. Log in to your account on the center display, then tap “**Add**”Can be added to My Combo. In the search box at the upper right, you can search for Combo cards by Combo code and keywords.

Tips

When adding XCOMBO through a Combo code or the Recommended Store, if there are Combo cards not supported by this vehicle model, a reminder will be displayed on the Combo details page.

My Scenario

Log in to your account on the central control screen, and you can enable/disable/delete/restore/run Combo.

Combo Editing

XCOMBO supports custom editing of cards in My Scenes.

1. Log in to your account on the central control screen. Under the My Combo screen, tap a Combo card to enter the card details screen.
2. Tap .
3. Use the XPENG App to search for the Combo code or scan the QR code to edit.

Tips

Changes to Combo can be synchronized and updated only after both the vehicle system and the mobile phone are connected to the network.

Operation View

Enabled Combo will automatically execute one or more corresponding continuous functions after the vehicle meets the set trigger conditions. You can view, stop, or resume the currently running Combo in the status bar on the central control screen.

Tips

When executing an XCOMBO that requires a second confirmation, you can view and confirm it on the XCOMBO card in the lower-left corner of the center display.

One-Click Restore

When XCOMBO is running and after it has run, you can restore to the state before the Combo was run in the following ways:

- When Combo is running, in the status bar on the center display, tap “**Restore**”This will stop the Combo and restore it to the state before the Combo was running.
- When the Combo is running, you can also tap the central control screen in sequence. “ →**XCOMBO**→**My Combo**”In , click the corresponding scenario to proceed “**Restore**”This will stop the Combo and restore the state prior to Combo operation.
- After the Combo finishes running, tap the central control screen in sequence. “ →**XCOMBO**→**My Combo**”Select the Combo to be restored, then click “**Restore**”This will stop the Combo and restore it to the state before the Combo was running.

i Tips

Currently supported recoverable states include Air Conditioner, seat position, and screen display. More recoverable states will be added in subsequent versions.

Mobile App Function Entry

In the XPENG App “**XPENG**→**XCOMBO**”interface, where exclusive Combo settings can be configured.

Select Combo

XCOMBO has selected a series of creative and practical vehicle use scenarios, which can be used in “**Recommended**”Interface selection, tap “**Combo Card**”You can view Combo details, tap “**+Add to My**”Can be added to My Apps. At the same time, you can also according to your own vehicle usage habits through “**custom edit**”Make adjustments. In the search box at the upper right, you can search for Combo cards by Combo code and keywords.

i Tips

Changes to Combo can be synchronized and updated only after both the vehicle system and the mobile phone are connected to the network.

Personalization

XCOMBO supports personalized customization needs for Cabin functions. Tap "**XCOMBO→+→Create Combo**"You can then start personalized customization.

System provides "**Triggered Inside the Vehicle**"and "**Remote Trigger**"Two scenario operation trigger methods are supported. Voice, time, location, environment, multimedia playback, vehicle status, and others are supported as trigger conditions for automated operation. Rich execution actions are also supported, for example: XPENG Q&A, driving mode adjustment, air conditioning settings, and others.

It can also be through "**Advanced**"Set up advanced application scenarios such as continuous perception and judgment under multiple conditions, synchronized execution of multiple tasks, and delayed execution of commands.

⚠ caution

- When the Combo is running, be sure to ensure the safety of the vehicle and personnel.
- Recommendation "**Create Combo**"Time Selection "**Smart Inquiry**"Mode. In this way, before the Combo task is executed on the vehicle side, the safety level of the Combo will be determined based on the vehicle status. If there is a driving safety risk (for example, adjusting the driving mode in D gear), the XPENG intelligent recommendation card on the center control screen will ask whether to execute the Combo; if selected "**Do not ask**", the Combo will be executed immediately when the trigger conditions are met. Please pay attention to the relevant safety risks.

Combo Sharing

"**Mine**"Combo supports sharing. Tap "**Combo Card**"of "**...**"Share with one tap or share externally in the form of a link. After others click the Combo link, they can view the Combo details. After entering the XPENG App, tap Complete to save the Combo, or edit and adjust it according to preference, and enable it to run.

It is also possible to be at "**Edit Combo**"/ "**Create Combo**"Enter at the bottom of the page "**Combo Publicity**", Turn on "**Participate in the selection and recommend scenarios**", indicating that you agree to participate in the premium Combo selection. The premium Combo you create will be periodically selected for display in the feature's "**Recommended**"Combo interface, for users to select and enable.

i Tips

For scene sharing and execution capabilities among different vehicle models, refer to the functions actually supported by the vehicle.

"Until the conditions are met."and "If the status is in"Difference

"**Until the conditions are met**"The operation is based on the capability of continuously sensing condition variables after the Combo is triggered. After the Combo is triggered, the vehicle will continuously sense the set condition variables until they are satisfied, thereby executing the corresponding actions.

For example, if the scenario is set so that after the vehicle shifts to D Gear, seat ventilation is turned on when the interior temperature is higher than 27°C, then after the vehicle shifts to D Gear, if the set temperature is not reached in the short term, XCOMBO will continuously detect the interior temperature until it reaches above 27°C, and then execute the seat ventilation operation.

"**If the status is in**"The operation is based on the capability to determine conditions at the exact moment when the Combo is triggered. If the set condition state is met, the corresponding action is executed; if the trigger condition state is not

met, it will no longer sense, determine, or execute the corresponding action.

For example, a Combo is set so that when the vehicle shifts to D Gear, seat ventilation is turned on if the in-vehicle temperature is higher than 27°C. When the vehicle shifts to D Gear, if XCOMBO detects that the in-vehicle temperature has not reached above 27°C, the seat ventilation task set in the Combo will not be executed. Even if the in-vehicle temperature subsequently reaches above 27°C, the seat ventilation task will still not be executed.

System Update

Function Overview

The vehicle supports updates via the central control screen or the mobile app, providing your vehicle with the latest features. It is recommended that you update the system as soon as possible after receiving a new version prompt.

Tips

- Make sure the vehicle is connected to the network and will not receive updates until the vehicle is connected to the network.
- The traffic consumption resulting from the system updates is borne by Xpeng Motors, the vehicle package traffic will not be used, the user will not be responsible for the system update traffic cost.
- If you have any further questions, please contact the Xpeng Car Service Center or the Customer Service Center.

View System Version

On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**General**”Interface, tap the top “**XOS Version Number**”, you can view the details of the current vehicle system version.

Update Prompt

When a new version needs to be updated, it will be displayed in the top status bar of the central control screen. Update the icon.

Update via the center display

Tap the center display screen After the icon, you can select the system update method.

- **Update Now**: After tapping, the vehicle will start updating immediately. During the update process, the vehicle cannot be used. Please ensure the vehicle is parked in a safe area and allow sufficient time.
- **Scheduled Update**Tap to set the update time. When the set time is reached and the vehicle is in the locked state, the system automatically performs the update.

Update via mobile app

After receiving the new version update prompt, tap in the mobile app **Go to update**After pressing the button, the vehicle immediately starts updating.

Automatic update at 3 a.m. at night

On the central control screen general interface, tap **Update Settings**After that, you can enable the automatic update function. After it is enabled, when the vehicle detects that a new version is available for update, it will start updating at 3:00 at night without manual confirmation.

Precautions and Limitations

- Before updating, ensure that the vehicle remaining battery level is greater than 10%, the vehicle is in Park (P gear), and parked in a safe area.
- Once the update starts, it cannot be interrupted. The vehicle cannot be used during the update. Please allow sufficient time for the update to complete.

- The vehicle cannot be charged during the update process. Please arrange the update and charging time properly.
- A system update failure may cause some functions to operate abnormally. If the update fails, do not use the vehicle. Tap “**Retry**”Retry the update. If repeated retry attempts are unsuccessful, please contact a XPENG service center or customer service center.
- After the system is updated, it cannot be rolled back to a previous version.

Wired Projection

Function Overview

Supports Wired Projection, allowing you to easily project the screens of devices such as game consoles and computers, including Switch and MacBook, onto the vehicle infotainment large screen and enjoy an unprecedented visual feast.

1. Tap the center display screen “ ”, tap in the App Center “**Wired Projection**”。

2. Use an HDMI cable and a video capture card to connect to the front row Type-C or Type-A port.

> **Tips**
>
> The Switch requires an additional PD charging cable for power supply. Insert one end of the charging cable into the video capture card or HDMI, and connect the other end to the vehicle system-side USB-C port.

3. Connection successful. The image will be displayed on the screen.
4. Wired Projection:
   - Swipe up or down on the left side to adjust the screen brightness.
   - Swipe up or down on the right side to adjust the media volume.
   - Supports touch mute function.
5. Tap the screen, tap the upper left corner “**Exit Screen Projection**”You can exit screen projection.

Tips

Sony PS, Xbox, etc. have relatively high voltage requirements, so it is not recommended to use the in-vehicle transmission port for screen projection. However, after parking, you may use the external power supply port to power the device for screen projection.

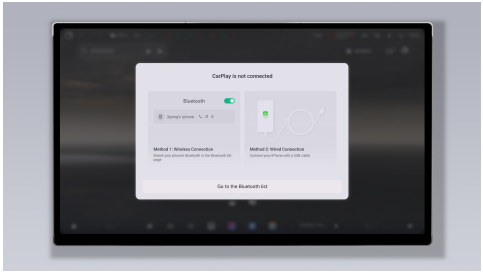
Apple Carplay

Function Overview

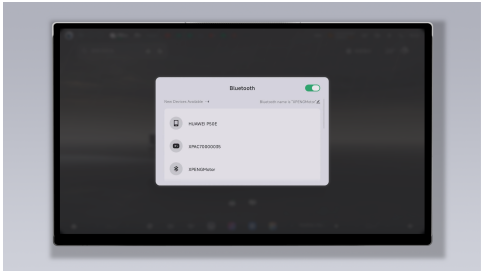
Apple CarPlay allows users to access services more safely and conveniently while driving by mapping core iPhone functions to the CID.

1. Enter “**APP center**”and click “**Apple CarPlay**”.

2. Activate Apple CarPlay according to the guideline on CID.



a. Method 1: Match your phone's Bluetooth in the Bluetooth listpage.
b. Method 2:Connect your iPhone with a USB cable.



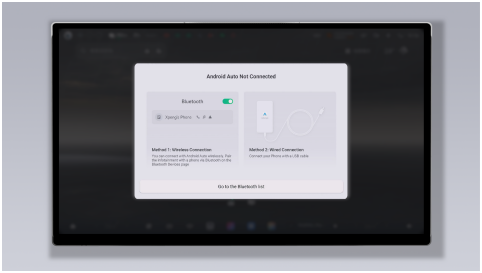
Android Auto

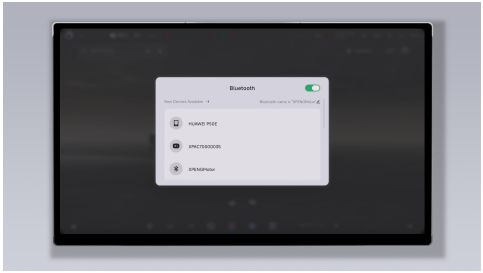
Function Overview

Android Auto allows users to access services more safely and conveniently while driving by mapping core Android functions to the CID.

1. Enter “**APP center**”and click “**Android Auto**”.

2. Activate Android Auto according to the guideline on CID.





a. Method 1: Match your phone's Bluetooth in the Bluetooth listpage.
b. Method 2: Connect your Phone with a USB cable.

Quick Vehicle Search

Remote Vehicle Search (Available Only for the Owner Account)

When you are far away from the vehicle or do not know where the vehicle is parked, you can use the mobile app “**XPENG→Vehicle Location/ Map**”Interface, query the geographic location information where the vehicle is parked.

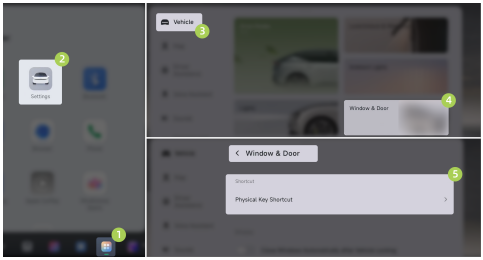
Find Vehicle at Close Range via XPENG App

When you are close to the vehicle (for example: a residential parking lot), in the mobile App “**XPENG**”On the interface, select honking or flashing lights for alerts so that you can quickly locate the vehicle.

Locating the Vehicle with the Remote Key

When the remote key custom button is set to “**Find Vehicle Reminder**”Afterward, double-press this button within the effective range of the remote key, and the vehicle will trigger the vehicle locating function. At this time, the vehicle turn signals will flash and the horn will sound, helping you quickly find the vehicle.

Set the custom key to "Vehicle Finder Reminder"



On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**Doors and Windows**→**Physical Key Shortcuts**"Interface, set the custom key to "**Find Vehicle Reminder**"。

Unlock Lock Feedback

Introduction

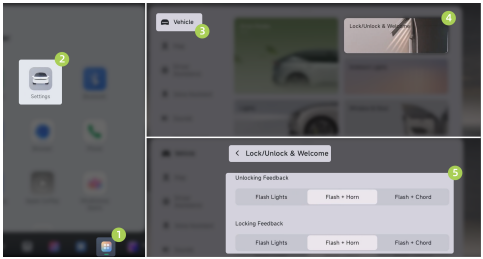
When the vehicle is unlocked, the doors will be unlocked simultaneously, the turn signals on both sides of the vehicle will flash twice, the horn will sound or chord music will be played (if set), the exterior rearview mirrors will unfold (if set), and the anti-theft alarm system will be deactivated.

When the vehicle is locked, the doors will be locked simultaneously, the turn signals on both

sides of the vehicle will flash once, the horn will sound or chord music will play (if set), the Side Mirrors will fold (if set), the window will close (if set), and the anti-theft alarm system will be activated.

Vehicle Lock Unlock Feedback

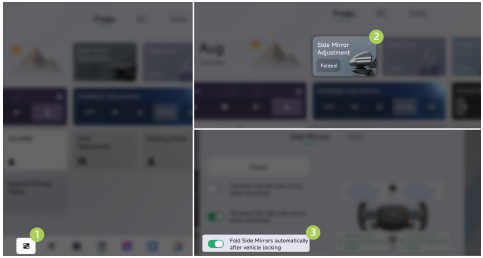
On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Unlocking/Locking and Welcome**”On the interface, you can set the unlock and lock reminder methods.



- **Flashing Lights**:When the vehicle is unlocked, the turn signals will flash twice. When the vehicle is locked, the turn signals will flash once.
- **Flashing lights + honking**: While the turn signal flashes, a horn sound is emitted.
- **Flashing lights + chord**: While the turn signal is flashing, a musical sound is emitted.

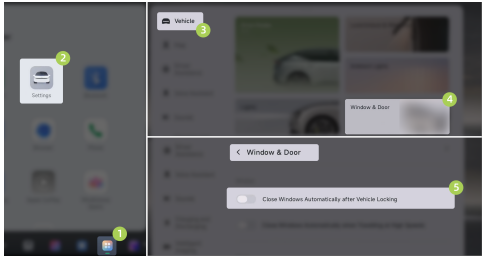
Automatically Fold Side Mirrors When Locked

You can on the central control screen “ →**Mirror Adjust**”Interface, Open/Close “**Automatically Fold Side Mirrors When Locked**”。



Automatic Window Closing When Vehicle Is Locked

You can on the central control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Doors and Windows**"Interface, Open/Close "**Automatic Window Closing When Locked**"。



warning

When the automatic window locking feature is switched on, the windows will close automatically when the vehicle is locked, make sure that the windows do not jam occupants or obstructions and that there are no occupants in the vehicle, especially children. Then lock.

Anti-theft Alarm System

When the anti-theft system is activated, if any door (including the trunk) or the front hood is opened, the anti-theft system will alarm through

the horn and turn signals. After unlocking the vehicle, the anti-theft system alarm can be stopped.

Tips

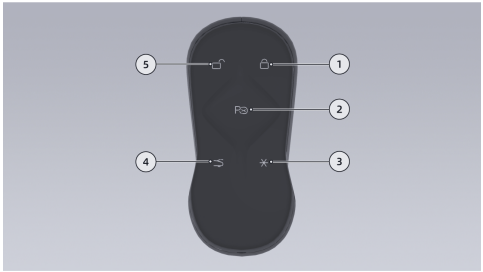
The anti-theft system alarm lasts for approximately 28 seconds and is re-timed if the doors (including the boot) or the front compartment lid are opened again.

warning

Modifications to the vehicle anti-theft system are prohibited, as this may result in the system not functioning correctly.

Smart Remote Key

Button Functions



1. Lock button: Press this button briefly to lock all doors and the trunk, and activate the anti-theft system.
2. Parking: Use together with parking-related functions.

caution

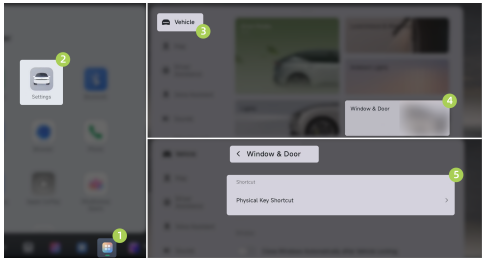
During parking, functions such as unlocking/locking with the remote key cannot be used.

3. Custom key: Double-press this key to execute the relevant function preset on the central control screen See 119 page。
4. Trunk button: Double-press this button to open or close the trunk. Or pause the trunk while it is opening/closing.
5. Unlock button: Press this button briefly to unlock all doors and the trunk, and deactivate the anti-theft system.

caution

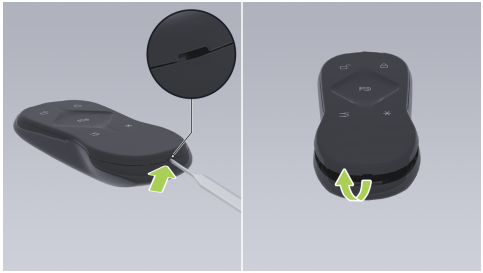
- The vehicle will not lock unless the vehicle is in P and all doors (including the front compartment lid, the boot) are closed, unless the vehicle is left unattended.
- Keep the key fob safe to prevent damage caused by impact, heat, or corrosion of liquids.
- Do not leave children or pets unattended in the vehicle. Take the key with you when leaving the vehicle and lock the vehicle.

Set the remote key custom button

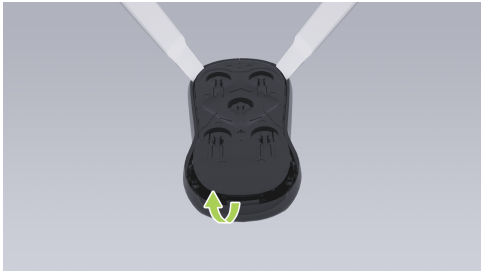


On the center control screen “ →**Settings→Doors and Windows→Physical Key Shortcuts**”Interface, you can set the custom key as “**XGUARD On, Find Vehicle Reminder, window Ventilation On/Off**”。

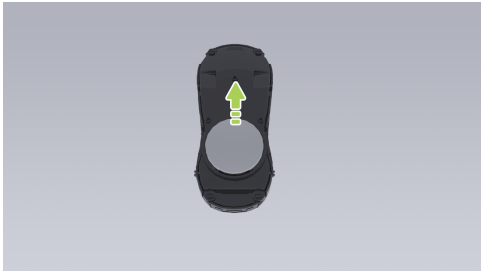
Replacing the Key Battery



1. Use a suitable tool (a flat-head screwdriver covered with a soft cloth / wrapped with tape, or a similar tool) to pry up from the key notch and remove the key button panel.



2. Pry up the left and right sides of the key main board and remove the key main board.



3. Remove the key battery. Battery model: CR2450.
4. Install in the reverse order. During installation, the key battery "+"(Positive terminal) facing upward.

Tips

- Wipe the battery surface clean before installation, or finger marks may affect battery life.
- It is recommended that you do not replace the key fob battery yourself, send it to Xpeng Automobile Service Centre for replacement.

caution

- Dispose of used batteries properly, incorrect disposal of used batteries can damage the environment.
- Do not use sharp objects to remove the key fob, as this may damage the key fob.

warning

Keep the battery out of the reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows it, serious injury or even death may result.

Mobile App Key

Function Overview

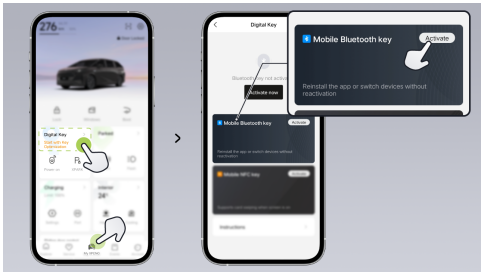
After installing the XPENG Motors App, you can register your mobile phone as a vehicle key and use Bluetooth technology to communicate with the vehicle, helping users conveniently and

safely perform locking and unlocking, start the vehicle, and carry out more vehicle controls.

XPENG App only supports the mobile phone Bluetooth key. Devices applicable to the Bluetooth key: iOS and Android phones.

Phone Bluetooth Key

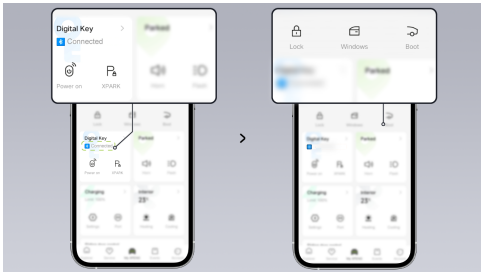
Create Phone Bluetooth Key



In the XPENG App “**Digital Key**”Tap Bluetooth Key in the app “**Activate**”Press the button and follow the prompts in the XPENG App to create the phone Bluetooth key.

Bluetooth Key Lock/Unlock

Bluetooth Key: Supports multiple lock and unlock operation methods.



- **Manual Unlocking:**After the mobile phone is successfully paired with the vehicle via Bluetooth, open the XPENG App to lock or unlock, raise or lower the window, open the trunk, etc.

- **Door Handle Unlocking/Locking:**In the XPENG App "**XPENG→Digital Key→Bluetooth Key Settings**"Open in the middle "**Door Handle Lock/Unlock**"After switching on and after the phone and vehicle bluetooth connection is established, press the microswitch on the outer door handle to unlock/lock and unlock the trunk.
- **Automatic Unlock:**In the XPENG Motors App "**XPENG→Digital Key→Bluetooth Key Settings**"Open in the middle "**Automatic Unlocking**"After turning on the switch and after the phone and the vehicle bluetooth connection is established, carry the phone close to the vehicle to automatically unlock.
- **Automatic Locking:**In the XPENG App "**XPENG→Digital Key→Bluetooth Key Settings**"Open in the middle "**Auto Lock**"After the switch is on and the phone and the vehicle bluetooth connection is established, carry the phone away from the vehicle, and it will lock automatically.

Tips

If the Bluetooth key is reactivated, the XPENG App is reinstalled, or you log in to the XPENG App on another phone, you need to set the "Automatic Lock/Unlock" function again.

caution

After unlocking, do not close the XPENG App. Keep the XPENG App running in the background so that the relative position between the mobile phone and the vehicle can be determined, thereby enabling automatic lock and unlock. To ensure normal use of the function, be sure to enable the following permissions for the XPENG App:

Android phone

1. Bluetooth Permission
2. Auto-Start Permission
3. Background Running Permission

iOS system phone

1. Location information must be set to Always Allow
2. Background App Refresh
3. Location Services (Phone Settings > Privacy > Location Services)

Deregister Digital Key*

On the center control screen "→**Settings→General→Safety and Privacy**"Interface, tap "**Delete Digital Key**", click in the pop-up prompt window "**Confirm Send**"Send an email verification code to the vehicle owner's email address. After the entered verification code passes verification, all users' digital vehicle keys will be deactivated.

Frequently Asked Questions

What situations (including but not limited to) will cause the Bluetooth key automatic lock/unlock function to fail?

- When the phone battery is low and Low Power Mode is enabled.
- Bluetooth is not enabled on the phone.
- The phone system has closed the XPENG App.
- Bluetooth signal is unstable and disconnects unexpectedly.
- The Bluetooth signal is blocked by obstacles (such as a backpack, the body, walls, etc.), causing abnormal distance measurement.
- After the phone restarts or the system is updated, the XPENG App is not opened.
- When the doors, front hood, and trunk are not fully closed, leaving the vehicle causes the Bluetooth connection to disconnect.

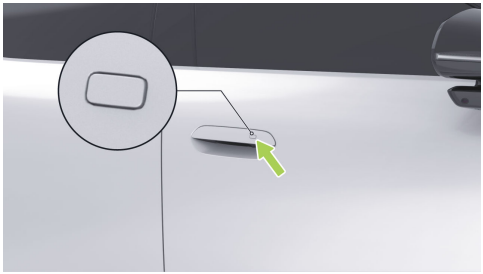
Tips

If the mobile phone Bluetooth key cannot unlock or lock the vehicle, first restart the XPENG App. If the problem still cannot be resolved, please in "**XPENG→Digital Key→Key Check**"On the interface, follow the guidance to resolve the connection issue.

Door

Exterior Door Handle

Door Handle Microswitch



Carry a valid mobile phone Bluetooth key, and press the microswitch on the right front door handle to unlock or lock the vehicle.

- **Unlock the vehicle:**When the vehicle is in the locked state, press the microswitch on the right front door handle. At this time, the vehicle provides an unlocking feedback prompt, indicating that unlocking is successful.
- **Lock the vehicle:**When the vehicle is in the unlocked state and all doors (including the front hood and trunk) are closed, press the microswitch on the right front door handle. At this time, the vehicle provides lock feedback, indicating that locking is successful.

Open the door from outside the vehicle

When the vehicle is unlocked, pull up the exterior door handle to open the door.

Tips

When any door, the hood, or the trunk is opened, the center display and the head-up display (HUD) show 'The vehicle door is not closed.'

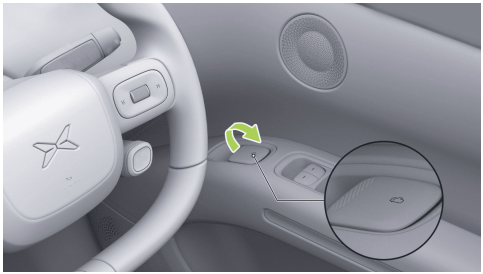
caution

- Before opening a door, check the area around the vehicle for passing or approaching road users. Open the door only after confirming it is safe to prevent accidents.
- When the window is fully closed, do not pull the door open until the window has lowered slightly; otherwise, the window glass and seals may be damaged.

warning

Be sure to use caution when using the door handle to prevent fingers, jewelry, acrylic nails, etc. from being caught by the door or the door handle mechanism. Otherwise, damage to items or personal injury may occur.

Interior Door Handle



Inside the vehicle, you can open the corresponding door using the interior door handle:

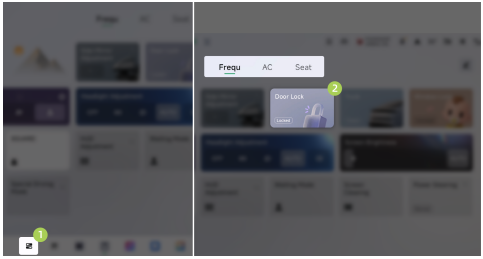
- When the vehicle is in the unlocked state, pull up the interior door handle to open the corresponding door.
- When the vehicle is in the locked state, pull the interior door handle upward once to unlock the corresponding door. Pull it upward again to open the corresponding door and unlock all doors.

caution

Always check for approaching traffic from behind before opening the door. We recommend keeping Door Opening Warning enabled at all times. Open the door only after confirming that it is safe to avoid accidents that could result in personal injury or property damage.

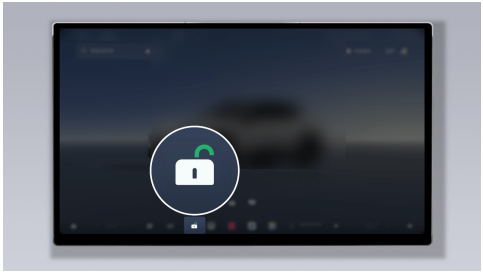
Interior Central Locking System

You can unlock or lock the vehicle on the central control screen in the following ways.

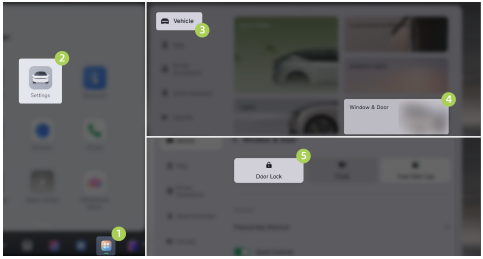


- Tap on the center control screen. " " Enter the Control Center screen, and tap the central locking icon to unlock or lock the doors.

- On the SR interface of the central control screen, tap the central lock icon below the 3D vehicle model to unlock or lock the doors.

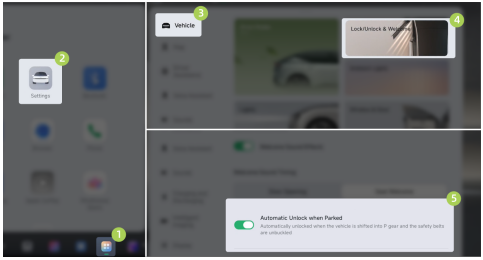


- Tap the taskbar at the bottom of the center display. “**Door Lock**”Tap the icon to unlock or lock the doors (for information about the custom bottom taskbar, refer to the Custom Bottom Taskbar section).



- On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Doors and Windows**”Interface, tap “ **Door Lock** ”Press the button to unlock or lock the doors.

Automatic Unlock when Parked



On the center control screen
“ →**Settings→vehicle→Unlocking and Welcome**”Interface, selectable on/off “**Automatic Unlock when Parked**”。

Tips

You can also turn Automatic Unlock when Parked on or off using voice commands.

After the function is enabled, when the vehicle is shifted to P gear and the (driver) seat belt is unfastened, the door locks are automatically unlocked.

Tips

When certain conditions are met, the door locks will also automatically lock/unlock:

- Automatic locking while driving: When the doors (including the trunk) and the front compartment lid are closed, if the vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h, the door locks automatically lock.
- Automatic unlocking when opening the door: Open the door from inside the vehicle, and the door lock will automatically unlock.
- Emergency automatic unlocking: When the vehicle is involved in a collision or an emergency such as thermal runaway occurs, the door locks automatically unlock.

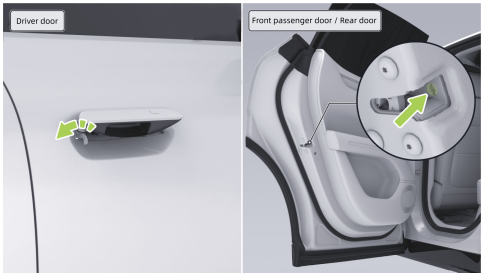
Unlocking the Door with the Mechanical Key

When the vehicle battery is depleted, pull up the exterior door handle, fully insert the mechanical key into the lock cylinder, turn it clockwise to unlock the driver door, and then pull up the exterior door handle again to open the driver door.

i Tips

- Only the Driver's Door can be unlocked with the mechanical key. After entering the vehicle, use the interior door handles to open the other doors.
- Ensure the mechanical key is fully inserted before turning it. After unlocking, return the mechanical key to the initial position before removing it. If the mechanical key cannot be turned during operation, insert it fully and then continue turning.
- In extremely cold weather, if the mechanical key does not return to its original position after unlocking the door, do not forcibly remove the key. Contact an XPENG Service Center.
- The mechanical key is supplied with the vehicle as a separate item. Store it securely to prevent loss.

Emergency Lock Switch



If the door cannot be locked under special circumstances:

- **driver door**: Close the driver door, pull up the outer door handle, fully insert the mechanical key into the lock cylinder, and turn it counterclockwise to lock the driver door.
- **Passenger door, left rear door, and right rear door**: After opening the door, locate the knob at the door lock. Use the mechanical key to turn the knob at the door lock, and push the door inward until the door is fully closed and locked.

Frunk*

Open the front hood

1. Pull the front compartment lid opening handle at the lower right of the instrument panel twice consecutively. The front compartment lid will pop up slightly, indicating that unlocking is complete.

2. Open the front hood upward, and the support rod will automatically hold up the front hood. You can load items into the storage space in the Frunk.

⚠ caution

- When the ambient temperature is too low and the Frunk is covered with ice or snow, remove the ice and snow before opening the Frunk.
- Before opening the Frunk, always make sure the area within its path of motion is clear of people and objects to prevent collision or pinching hazards.

Close the front compartment lid

1. Lower the front hood until the front hood latch contacts the striker.

2. Place both hands on the front side of the front hood (green area), then press down to close the front hood.
3. After closing, please check whether the front compartment lid is securely locked. The center display and HUD will provide prompts for the opening and closing status of the front compartment lid.

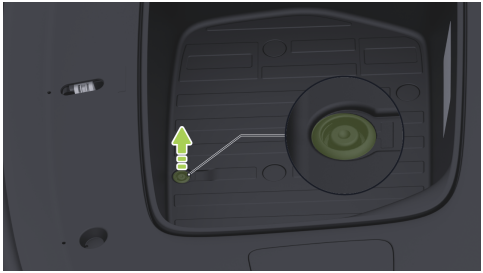
warning

- When closing the front hood, be especially careful to avoid trapping your fingers or other body parts.

- If the front hood is not properly latched, it may open while the vehicle is in motion, which could cause an accident resulting in serious injury or death.

Frunk Storage*

You can temporarily store in the Frunk damp, dirty, strongly odorous, and other items that are inconvenient to place in the passenger compartment or trunk.



The Frunk is equipped with a drain outlet and can be washed with water. Remove the sealing cap on the drain outlet to discharge liquid from the Frunk. After draining the liquid from the Frunk, rinse it with clean water, wipe it dry, and install the drain outlet sealing cap. Keep the Frunk storage space dry to avoid odors or mold growth.

Tips

- The Frunk is not a sealed water tank. During prolonged water storage, the water level may slowly decrease. This is normal.

- The Frunk may also be used to temporarily store fresh items such as live fish. However, due to factors such as a drop in water level, high ambient temperatures in summer, and road vibrations, the allowable storage duration is limited. Prolonged storage may result in damage or spoilage of these items.

caution

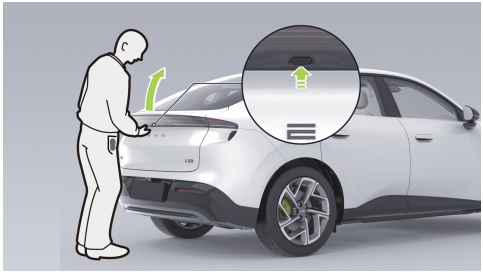
- Do not place items exceeding 50 kg (RWD)/25 kg (4WD) to avoid damaging the Frunk.
- When loading items into the Frunk, place the loaded items in the Frunk as evenly as possible by weight.
- When storing liquid items, ensure they are kept sealed. Do not store unsealed liquid items, so as to avoid liquid leakage causing damage to the vehicle. If leakage occurs, promptly clean up any accumulated liquid in the storage box and inside the screw plug cover.
- Pay attention to the height of the items loaded in the Frunk to avoid the items being squeezed or damaged, or the front compartment lid not being fully closed when closing the front compartment lid.

warning

Do not store flammable, explosive, and heavy items in the front spare box when the temperature is high.

trunk

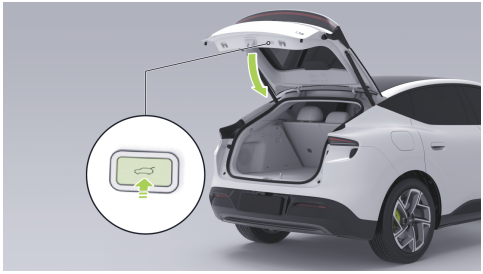
trunk external switch



When the doors are unlocked, press the external trunk switch to open/close the trunk, or pause the trunk that is opening/closing.

When the vehicle is locked and the key is in the trunk, press the external trunk switch to open the trunk.

Interior Trunk Switch



Press the interior trunk switch to close the trunk, or to stop the trunk while it is opening or closing.

Manually pull down to close

With the vehicle powered off, pull the trunk down by hand to the closed position.

When the vehicle is not powered off, manually pulling down to close the trunk will activate the trunk follow-up function, and the vehicle will then automatically close the trunk.

caution

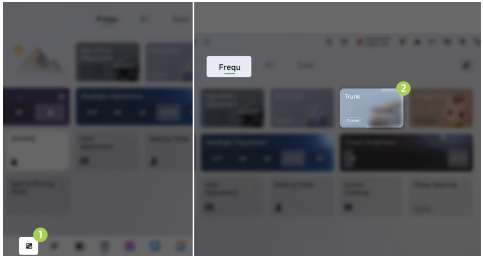
- Always use caution when opening the trunk in high winds. High winds may cause the trunk to open beyond its normal range, resulting in deformation.
- If the trunk is frozen shut or covered with ice or snow, do not force it open. Turn on the heater and wait for the interior temperature to rise before opening the trunk.
- In an emergency, if you need to manually open or close the trunk, keep the trunk moving slowly and at a constant speed. Do not apply sudden force to accelerate the trunk's opening or closing.
- Do not apply excessive force to reverse the trunk's movement during Open Trunk or Close Trunk; otherwise, personal injury or damage to the trunk may result.
- Exercise extra caution when manually closing the trunk to prevent pinch injuries.
- Do not install or affix any decorative items to the trunk lid struts.
- Do not pull the trunk sideways forcefully. Doing so may bend or deform the support struts.

Remote key opens closes the trunk

When the vehicle is in P gear, double-press the trunk button on the remote key to open/close the trunk. Or pause the trunk while it is opening/closing.

Open Close the trunk on the central control screen

On the central control screen, you can open/close the trunk in either of the following ways:

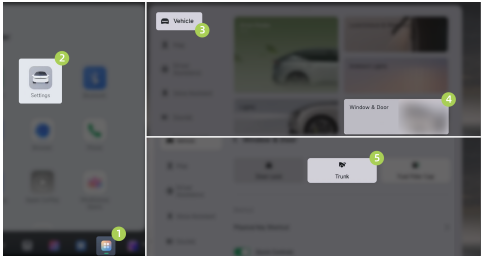


- Tap on the center control screen. “ ”Enter the Control Center screen to turn on/off. “**trunk**”, tap again during movement to pause opening/closing.
- Tap on the bottom taskbar of the center control screen “**trunk**”(If equipped), the trunk can be opened/closed.
- On the SR screen of the center display, tap the trunk icon below the 3D vehicle model, or tap the hotspot icon on the trunk area of the 3D vehicle model, to open/close the trunk.

Tips

The hotspot icons on the 3D vehicle model are hidden by default. You need to tap the 3D vehicle model to display them.

- On the center control screen “ →**Settings→vehicle→Doors and Windows**”Interface, enabled “**Quick Controls**”. When the gear is shifted to P, tap the switch in the pop-up window to open/close the trunk.



- On the center control screen “ →**Settings→vehicle→Doors and Windows**”Interface, tap “ **trunk** ”Press the button to open/close the trunk.

Tips

When opening/closing the trunk, if an obstacle blocks it, the trunk will move back a certain distance.

warning

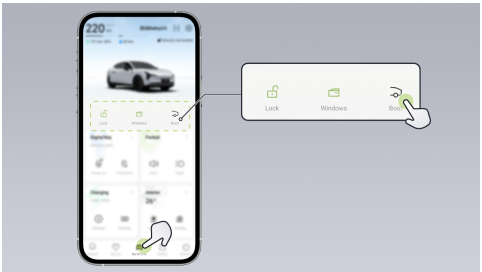
When opening/closing the trunk, ensure that there are no people or other obstacles within

the opening/closing range of the trunk to prevent personal injury or vehicle damage.

Steering Wheel Shortcut Button to Open Close the trunk

When the steering wheel shortcut key on the center control screen is set to "**Open/close trunk**"When enabled, you can open/close the trunk using the steering wheel shortcut button.

Open close the trunk with the mobile app



In the mobile app "**XPENG**"Interface, where the trunk can be opened/closed.

Tips

- The trunk can also be opened and closed using voice commands. When the transmission is not in Park (P), the trunk cannot be opened by voice.
- When opening or closing the trunk, if an obstruction is detected, the anti-pinch protection will cause the trunk to reverse for a certain distance.
- If the trunk is opened and closed frequently within a short period, thermal protection will be activated and trunk opening/closing will be temporarily disabled.
- Wait until the system has cooled down before resuming normal operation.

warning

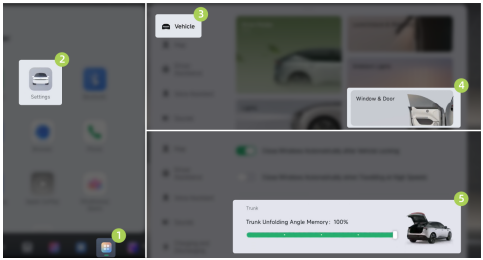
When opening/closing the boot, ensure that there are no persons or other obstructions

within the open/closed boot area to prevent personal injury or vehicle damage.

Adjust the trunk opening angle

The vehicle supports two methods for adjusting the trunk opening angle: the central control screen and the switch inside the trunk:

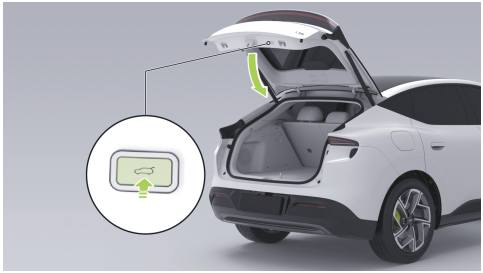
Adjust trunk opening angle via the central control screen



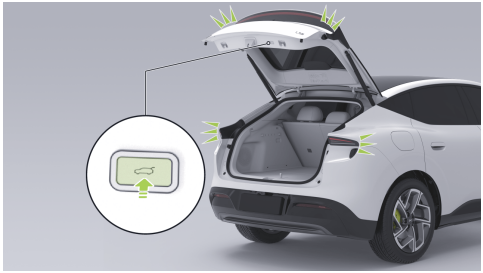
On the central control screen

“ →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Doors and Windows**”Interface, adjustable “**Trunk Opening Angle Memory**”。

Adjust the opening angle via the trunk switch



1. After opening the trunk, use the switch inside the trunk to lower or raise the trunk to the desired angle.



2. Press and hold the switch inside the trunk until you see the flashing-light alert, then the trunk opening angle setting is completed.

i Tips

When the switch is pressed and held, the trunk deployment angle will be set to the lowest value if the trunk deployment angle is below the minimum allowable setting.

Anti-pinch protection

During the opening or closing process of the trunk, the Anti-pinch protection for trunk function is available. That is, if resistance is detected or a foreign object is trapped in the trunk during the opening or closing process, it will automatically stop moving and reverse for a certain distance to prevent injury from pinching.

warning

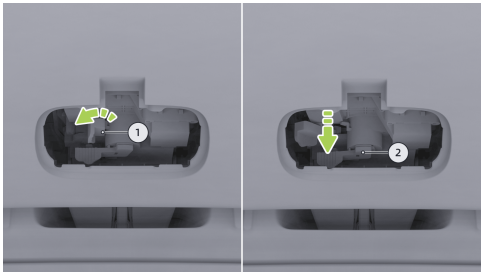
- Do not use any part of your body to test the anti-pinch function.
- Despite the presence of anti-pinch protection, there is still a risk of pinching injury. Always ensure that the movement area of the trunk is unobstructed; otherwise, in special circumstances (for example, if the obstacle is thin or soft), interruption of the movement process cannot be ensured.
- The anti-pinch function may not work before the trunk lid is about to fully close.

Emergency Opening Switch

If the trunk cannot be opened, you can open the trunk by performing the following operations:

1. Fold down the rear seatback and enter the trunk.

2. Open the trim cover on the emergency unlocking device.

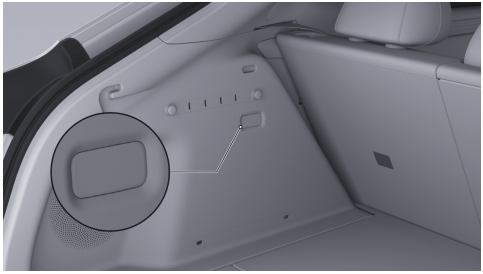


3. First move lever ① to the left and hold it, then press lever ② to unlock the trunk, and then push the trunk outward to open it in an emergency.

i Tips

After emergency opening, press down on the boot to close it.

trunk lighting lamp



The trunk lamp is located on the left trim panel of the trunk. When the trunk is opened, the trunk lamp turns on automatically.

trunk storage

trunk storage space

After opening the trunk, you can place luggage and cargo in the trunk storage space.

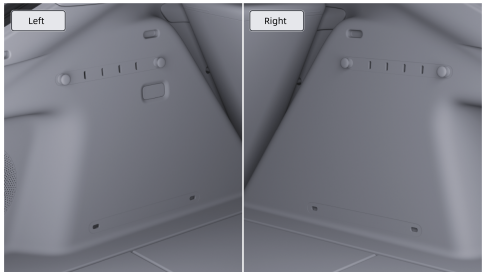
Lift the trunk cover panel and place it in the retaining slot to use the trunk storage box. Warning signs, cargo, and other items can be placed in the trunk storage box.

If greater storage capacity is needed, the trunk storage space can be expanded by folding the rear seat backrests (for information on the rear seat folding operation, please refer to "**In-Vehicle Functions→Rear Seats**"Section).

caution

- Do not store fragile, flammable, explosive, etc. in the trunk to avoid fire, explosion, or damage.
- Store liquid items with a tight seal to avoid damage to the vehicle due to fluid leaks. Clean up if leakage occurs.
- Do not drive the vehicle with an overloaded vehicle to avoid excessive braking distances due to excessive inertia, which could result in an accident.

Trunk Hook and Flexible Hook Slot



Hooks and flexible hook slots are provided on both the left and right sides of the trunk.

- Detachable hook: When the hook is not needed, rotate the hook 90° and remove it. When the hook needs to be used again, align the hook with the mounting hole, rotate the hook 90°, and gently shake the hook to confirm that it is securely installed.

caution

Do not hang items exceeding 2 kg to avoid damaging the hook.

- Flexible Hook Slot: Can be used with a variety of expansion accessories.

Tips

Optional accessories are sold separately. Before use, be sure to read the instruction manual and strictly follow the installation and operating instructions to prevent personal injury.

trunk elastic strap

There is an elastic strap in the middle of the trunk cover panel, which can secure umbrellas, rackets, and other items.

Tips

Allow the umbrella to dry before securing it, otherwise it can breed bacteria or cause mold, etc.

trunk lid hook

Hooks are provided on both the left and right sides of the trunk lid, and the maximum load capacity of each hook is 2 kg.

caution

Do not hang items weighing more than 2 kg to avoid damaging the hook.

Child Presence Reminder*

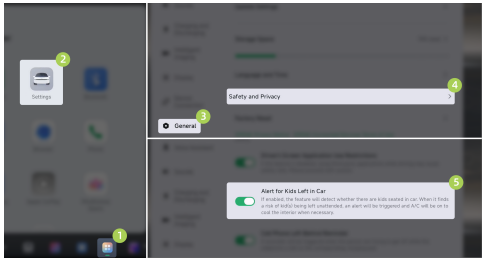
Function Overview

The rear occupant reminder function provides rear occupant reminder service by detecting status information such as the rear seats and seat belts.

caution

This function cannot guarantee complete accuracy. When leaving the vehicle, carefully check the rear seating area, and never leave children, persons requiring assistance, or pets alone in the vehicle.

Center Control Screen Settings Items



On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**General**→**Safety and Privacy**"Interface, where the child presence reminder function can be turned on/off. After it is turned on, if rear-seat activity information is detected, a reminder will be given to check the rear seats when the driver gets out of the vehicle.

Air Conditioner

Display on the Page

Center Control Screen front row Air Conditioner Interface

1. A/C Mode	8. Adjust driver temperature
2.AI-AUTO Mode	9. Airflow Mode/MODE
3. Turn the front row Air Conditioner switch on/off	10. Air Volume Adjustment
4. Max Cool Mode	11. SYNC/Inside and Outside Air Circulation/ Front Windshield Heating and Defrosting/Rear Windshield Heating and Defrosting
5. Max Heat Mode	12. Adjust passenger temperature
6. PM2.5 Purification	13. Front/Rear Air Conditioner Page Switching (with Front/Rear Air Conditioner Switch Display)
7. Front row air vent switch (four independent air vent switches in total)	14.Close page

Rear Air Conditioner Interface on the Center Control Screen

1. Turn the rear Air Conditioner switch on/off	4. Front/Rear Air Conditioner Switching (with Front/Rear Air Conditioner Switch Display)
2. Rear Air Outlet Mode	5.Close page

3. Air Volume Adjustment	

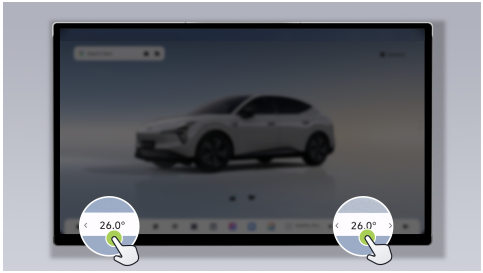
Turn the Air Conditioner on off

You can turn the Air Conditioner on/off via the central control screen, mobile APP, or voice commands.

Turn the Air Conditioner on/off via the central control screen

You can enter the Air Conditioner interface on the center display by either of the following methods:

- Enter the Air Conditioner interface by voice command, for example, say keywords such as “Open the Air Conditioner interface”.
- Tap the Air Conditioner widget in the bottom taskbar of the center control screen to enter the Air Conditioner interface.



Tips

- Tap the driver or passenger Air Conditioner component to open the Air Conditioner interface.
- Before using the Air Conditioner component, ensure that the Air Conditioner component has been added to the bottom taskbar of the central control screen.

On the central control screen, the Air Conditioner can be turned on/off in any of the following ways:

- Tap on the front row Air Conditioner interface on the central control screen. " ⏻ ", turn on/off the front row Air Conditioner.

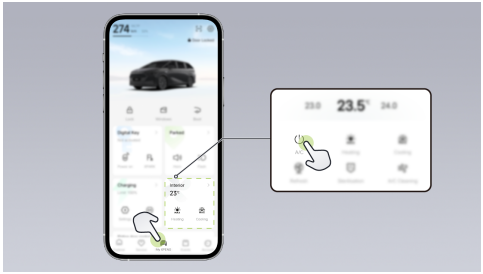
- Tap on the rear Air Conditioner interface on the center control screen. " ⏻ ", turn the rear Air Conditioner on/off.

Tips

- When the vehicle is powered down, the system automatically learns the A/C status. If the air conditioning is switched on before power down, the system will automatically return to the air conditioning on state when the vehicle is powered up again.
- When the air conditioning is off, the air conditioning is automatically switched on by adjusting the air conditioning volume or temperature.

- When the front air conditioning is switched off, the rear air conditioning is switched on simultaneously.

Turn the Air Conditioner on/off via the mobile APP



Tap in the mobile app "**XPENG→Cabin Temperature**→ ⏻ "Turn the Air Conditioner on/off.

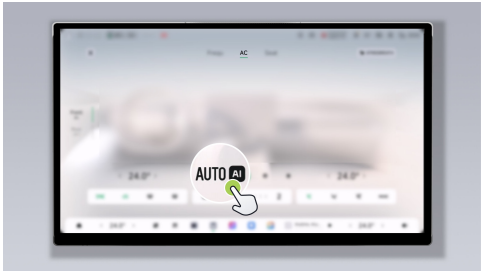
A C button (cooling heating button)

The vehicle is equipped with an electric compressor. Turn on the A/C button on the center display, and the compressor starts operating. The system performs cooling or heating according to the currently set air conditioning temperature. When the set temperature is lower than the vehicle temperature, the vehicle performs cooling. When the set temperature is higher than the vehicle temperature, the vehicle performs heating.

When the A/C button is turned off, the compressor stops operating. At this time, the Air Conditioner blows Natural Breeze, with no cooling or heating function.

You can turn the A/C on/off in any of the following ways:

- Turn A/C on/off by voice command.
- Tap on the Air Conditioner interface. "**A/C**", turn the A/C on/off.



Air Conditioner intelligent automatic mode (AI-AUTO)

When the Air Conditioner is in AI-AUTO mode, you can manually adjust the temperature value, and the system will automatically control the airflow volume, recirculation/fresh air intake, etc. according to the set Air Conditioner temperature. For daily use, it is recommended that you select the Air Conditioner AI-AUTO mode.

Tap on the Air Conditioner interface. "**AI-AUTO**", turn on/off the Air Conditioner AI-AUTO mode.

Tips

- When the air conditioner AI-AUTO mode is turned on, the A/C button and air blowing mode button will be automatically hidden; after AI-AUTO mode is turned off, these buttons will be displayed again.
- To exit AI-AUTO and resume manual control, perform any of the following operations:
  - Manually tap the AI-AUTO switch.
  - Adjust the Air Conditioner fan speed (levels 1 to 10) by voice/steering wheel.

- Turn off A/C mode by voice.
- Operate the front defrosting/ defog switch.

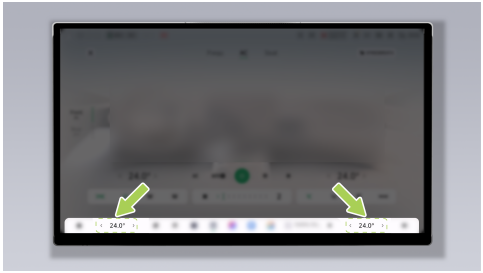
Adjust the air conditioning temperature

You can adjust the air conditioning temperature via the central control screen, the steering wheel scroll wheel, the mobile app, or voice commands.

Adjusting the A/C Temperature via the Center Display

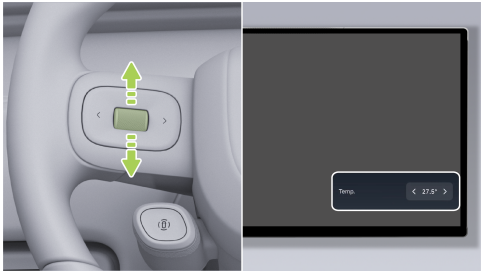
The left side of the center control screen can adjust the driver air conditioning temperature, and the right side can adjust the passenger air conditioning temperature.

- Tap 〈 or 〉The air conditioner temperature can be adjusted step by step.
- Swipe left or right to quickly adjust the air conditioning temperature.



Adjust the air conditioning temperature using the steering wheel scroll wheel.

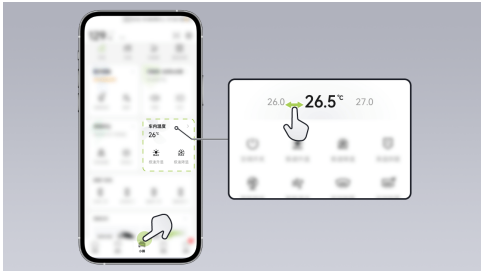
When the ACC/LCC function is not enabled, you can use the left scroll wheel on the steering wheel to adjust the air conditioning temperature.



- Push the left scroll wheel on the steering wheel upward to increase the air conditioning temperature.
- Roll down the scroll wheel on the left side of the steering wheel to lower the air conditioning temperature.

Adjust A/C Temperature via Mobile APP

Tap in the mobile app "**XPENG→Cabin Temperature**"Swipe left or right on the temperature display area to quickly adjust the air conditioning temperature.



Zone Air Conditioning Temperature Control

The vehicle is equipped with dual-zone air conditioning. The driver-side air conditioning temperature and the passenger air conditioning temperature can be controlled independently. The rear row and the passenger share the same temperature zone. When the rear air conditioning temperature is adjusted, the passenger temperature will be adjusted synchronously.

Swipe the driver Air Conditioner component, then tap in the pop-up window "**Sync**", turn

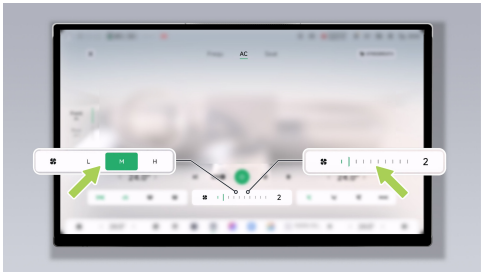
Temperature Sync mode on/off. After it is turned on, the driver temperature and passenger temperature will be adjusted synchronously.

Adjust Air Conditioner airflow volume

You can adjust the Air Conditioner airflow volume through the central control screen, steering wheel buttons, or voice commands.

Adjust the Air Conditioner fan speed through the central control screen

You can adjust the Air Conditioner fan speed on the central control screen in the following ways:



- When the Air Conditioner AI-AUTO mode is enabled, "Low", "Medium", or "High" can be selected.
- When the Air Conditioner AI-AUTO mode is not enabled, swipe left or right on the blower level display to manually adjust the Air Conditioner blower level (levels 1 to 10).

- When the Air Conditioner AI-AUTO mode is enabled, "Low", "Medium", or "High" can be selected.
- When the Air Conditioner AI-AUTO mode is not enabled, swipe left or right on the fan speed level display to manually adjust the Air Conditioner fan speed (levels 1 to 7).

Steering Wheel Buttons Adjust Air Conditioner Fan Speed

When the ACC/LCC function is not enabled, use the left and right buttons on the steering wheel to adjust the Air Conditioner fan speed.

- Press the left button on the steering wheel to decrease the Air Conditioner airflow.
- Press the right button on the steering wheel to increase the Air Conditioner fan speed.

Adjust the Air Conditioner airflow mode

The vehicle supports the following three air outlet modes. Multiple air outlet modes can be enabled at the same time, but at least one air outlet mode must remain enabled:

Windshield Defogging Mode: The air conditioner airflow is directed toward the window glass. It is recommended to select the window-blowing mode when defrosting or defogging the glass.

Face-Level Mode: The air flow from the Air Conditioner is directed toward the face. In summer cooling, it is recommended to select face-level mode.

Foot Ventilation Mode: The Air Conditioner airflow is directed toward the feet. It is recommended to select foot mode for heating in winter.

Adjust the front row Air Conditioner airflow mode through the central control screen.

On the front row Air Conditioner interface, the front row air blowing mode can be set.

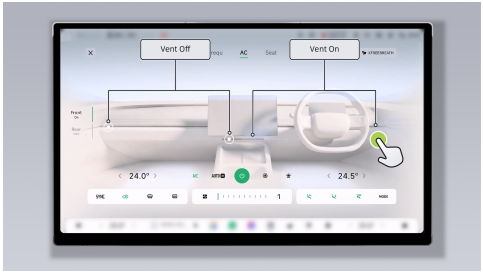
Adjust rear Air Conditioner airflow mode via the central control screen

On the rear Air Conditioner interface, you can set the rear air supply mode.

Adjust Air Conditioner Airflow Mode

The front row face-level air vents can be adjusted through the central control screen Air Conditioner interface and voice commands, and the rear face-level air vents can be adjusted manually.

Open/Close front row Air Conditioner air vent



- Tap the air vent to open/close the corresponding air vent.

Adjust the front row Air Conditioner airflow mode through the central control screen

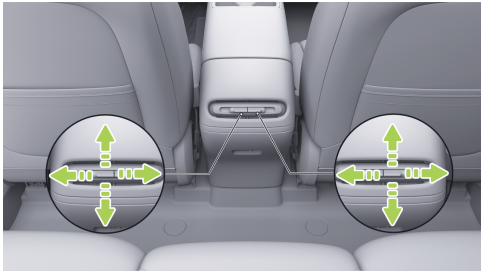
When the blower mode is set to face blowing or face blowing + foot blowing mode, you can slide the air vent up, down, left, or right to enter the air outlet mode adjustment interface.

- Adjust the airflow direction of the air vent: slide the blowing animation up and down to control the vertical blowing angle, and slide the blowing animation left and right to control the horizontal blowing angle.

Intelligently adjust the front row Air Conditioner air vent mode

- Direct blow to driver/passenger: The airflow direction of the air vent will blow directly toward the core chest area of the driver/passenger occupant.
- Avoid the driver/passenger: The airflow direction of the air vent will avoid the core thoracic position of the driver/passenger occupant.
- Forest Breeze: The air outlet will automatically perform Auto Swing according to the settings. At this time, you can swipe up or down on the airflow animation to manually control the vertical airflow angle.

Adjust rear face-level air vent



Move left or right to adjust the air vent airflow volume and airflow direction. Move up or down to adjust the air vent airflow direction. Move fully left/right to close the air vent.

Air Conditioner Inside Outside Circulation

Tap on the Air Conditioner screen. , switch the air circulation mode. It can be switched to three modes: Recirculate, Fresh Air, and automatic internal/external air circulation.

Recirculate: When the outside air quality is poor, it is recommended to select Recirculate mode. The system prevents dust and harmful gases from entering the vehicle, improving the air quality inside the vehicle.

Fresh Air: When the outside air is good, you can select Fresh Air mode, and the system will introduce fresh outside air into the vehicle to improve the air quality inside the vehicle.

Automatic Recirculate/Fresh Air: Automatically controls interior/exterior air circulation according to the outside air. When poor outside air quality is detected, it automatically switches to Fresh Air; when good outside air quality is detected, it automatically switches to Fresh Air.

Air Conditioner Defrosting and Defogging

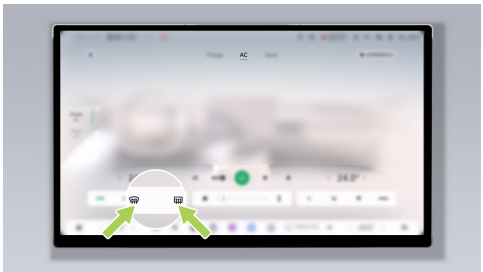
You can turn the front and rear defrosting/defog functions on or off via the central control screen, mobile app, or voice command.

Front Defrosting/ Defog: After being turned on, it can quickly remove fog from the front windshield and front side windows.

Rear Defrosting/ Defog: After activation, the fog on the rear windshield and Side Mirrors can be quickly cleared.

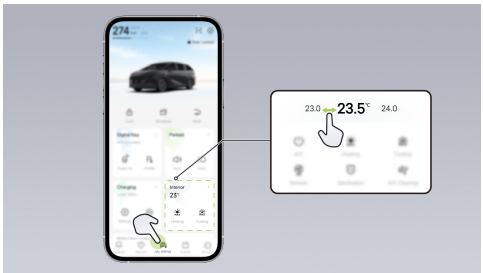
Turn Windshield Defrosting/defog on or off via the central control screen

Tap on the Air Conditioner interface. or , turn the defrost/defog function on or off.



Turn Windshield Defrosting/defog on or off via the mobile APP

Tap in the mobile app "**XPENG→Cabin Temperature**"Enter the settings screen and tap or , turn the defrost/defog function on or off.



Tips

- When the front defrost/demist function is switched on, the blow-out mode is automatically adjusted to the blow-out mode. The front defrost/demist function is

automatically switched off when the blow mode is switched to blow head or foot mode.

- The rear defrost/demist and mirror heating functions are the same switch as on and off. The function will switch off automatically after a period of time.

caution

Do not place any objects on the instrument panel, as they may block the vents and obstruct the air conditioner airflow, which can reduce the effectiveness of windshield defrosting and defogging.

Max Heat Mode

You can turn Max Heat mode on/off via the central control screen, mobile APP, or voice.

After Max Heat mode is turned on, the air conditioning will automatically be set to the highest temperature, and the seat heating and steering wheel heating functions will be turned on simultaneously. When the temperature inside the vehicle rises to 24°C, the system will exit Max Heat mode and automatically set the automatic air conditioning temperature to 24°C.

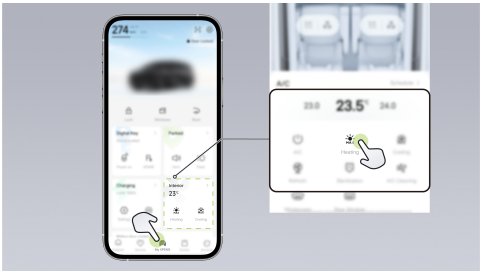
Turn Max Heat mode on/off via the central control screen

Tap on the Air Conditioner screen. ⁂, turn Max Heat mode on/off.

Turn Max Heat mode on/off via the mobile APP

In the mobile app “**XPENG**”Page or “**XPENG→Cabin Temperature**”Enter the Air

Conditioner settings page and tap “ ❄ ”Turn Max Heat mode on/off.



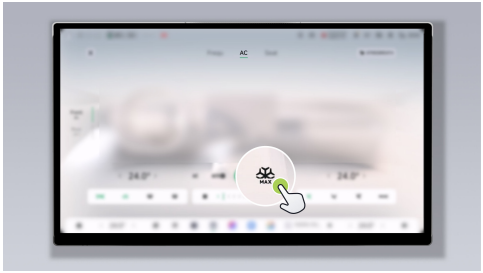
Max Cool Mode

You can turn Max Cool mode on/off via the central control screen, mobile APP, or voice.

After Max Cool mode is turned on, the air conditioner will automatically be set to the lowest temperature and maximum airflow, and the seat ventilation function will be turned on simultaneously. When the temperature inside the vehicle drops to 20°C, the system will exit Max Cool mode and automatically set the air conditioner temperature to 24°C.

Turn Max Cool mode on/off via the central control screen

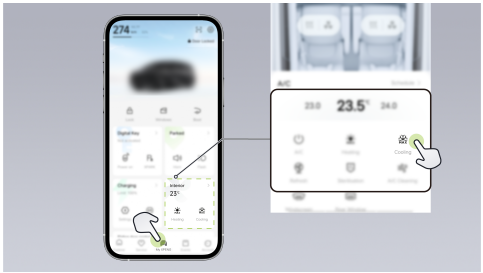
Tap on the Air Conditioner interface. ❄, turn Max Cool mode on/off.



Turn Max Cool mode on/off via the mobile APP

In the mobile app “**XPENG**”Page or “**XPENG→Cabin Temperature**”Enter the Air

Conditioner settings page and tap “ ❄ ”Turn Max Cool mode on/off.



Remove Air Conditioner Odor

If the Air Conditioner filter element has not been replaced for a long time, if there are bacteria in the Air Conditioner air duct, or if items that can emit special gases are stored in the vehicle, an odor may be smelled after turning on the Air Conditioner. You can remove or reduce the odor in the vehicle by the following methods.

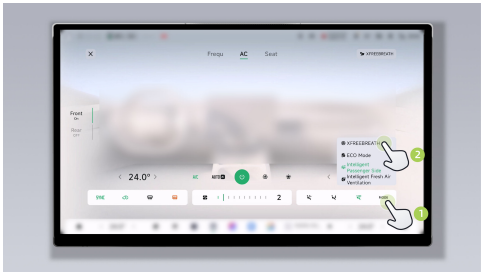
Reduce particulate concentration via air purification on the center control screen

When the outside air quality is poor (when the PM2.5 value is high) or when there is a relatively high concentration of inhalable particulate matter inside the vehicle (after smoking), it is recommended to turn on the air purification function. The system filters air particles through the filter to ensure air quality.

On the Air Conditioner interface, tap “ ”, turn on the air purification function.

Quickly remove odors through the center control screen Refresh

After the Refresh function is enabled on the Air Conditioner interface, it will switch to Fresh Air and set the fan speed to the maximum value, removing odors inside the vehicle through rapid ventilation and air exchange.

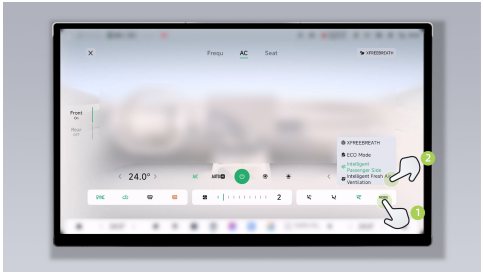


Tap on the Air Conditioner interface. “**Smart→Refresh**”, turn the Refresh function on/off.

Remove odors via Smart Ventilation on the center display

After the intelligent fresh air function is enabled in the Air Conditioner interface, after the vehicle is locked and powered off, the system will periodically start the Air Conditioner Fresh Air mode and adjust the airflow to the maximum value for cabin ventilation, ensuring that there is no odor in the vehicle when you get in.

Tap on the Air Conditioner interface. “**Smart→Smart Air Ventilation**”, turn the intelligent fresh air function on/off.



Tips

If the air conditioning filter element is not replaced for a long time, the vehicle will continuously emit odors. Promptly go to a XPENG service center to replace the air conditioning filter element.

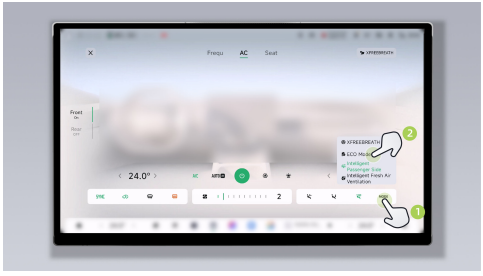
Reduce Air Conditioner Energy Consumption

After the Air Conditioner is turned on, the power battery charge will be continuously consumed. You can reduce the Air Conditioner energy consumption in the following ways.

Enable Air Conditioner energy-saving mode via the central control screen

After ECO Mode of the air conditioner is enabled, the vehicle cooling or heating effect is slightly reduced, energy consumption will decrease, and the driving range will be extended. It is recommended to enable ECO Mode when traveling alone.

Tap on the Air Conditioner interface. "**Smart→ECO Mode**", turn ECO Mode on/off.



Tips

The cooling or heating effect of the air conditioning will be affected when switched on.

Tips

The power consumption can also be reduced by switching off the rear air conditioning at the

central climate screen when the rear of the vehicle is empty.

Enable Intelligent Passenger Side Vent mode through the central control screen

After Intelligent Passenger Side Vent mode is enabled, when the system detects that there is no passenger in the passenger seat, it will close the passenger air vent.

Tap on the Air Conditioner screen. "**Smart→Intelligent Passenger Side Vent**", turn on/off the Intelligent Passenger Side Vent function.

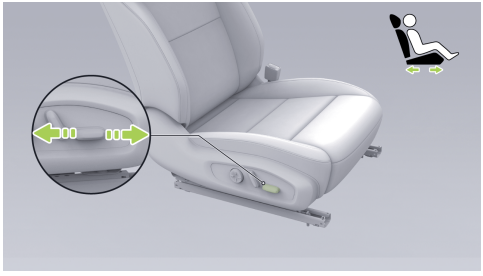
Driver Seat

Adjust the driver seat position

You can adjust the driver seat to a suitable position in any of the following ways:

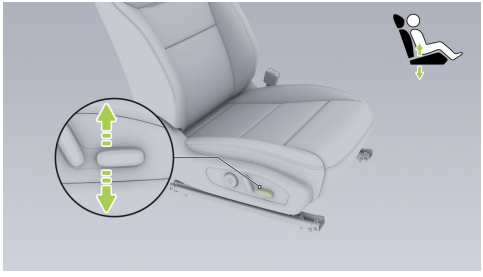
- Adjust the seat position using the seat switch.
- Adjust the seat position through the center control screen.
- Adjust the seat position by voice command.

Adjust the seat fore-and-aft position with the seat switch.



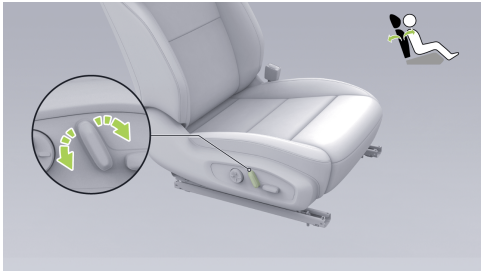
Push this adjustment switch forward or backward to adjust the fore-and-aft position of the driver seat.

Seat switch adjusts seat height



Push the rear of this adjustment switch upward or downward to adjust the height of the driver seat.

Seat switch adjusts the seatback angle



Push the top of this adjustment switch forward or backward to adjust the angle of the driver seatback.

Adjust Seat Position on the Center Control Screen

Tap the central control screen in sequence. “ →**seat**→**Seat Position**→**Select "driver seat"**→**Select “ ⊙”** ”, enter the driver-position adjustment interface, select “**seat**”。

- Height: Tap ^ or ˇAdjust the seat height step by step. Press and hold to continuously adjust the seat height. You can also tap or slide the slider to quickly adjust the seat height.
- Position: Click 〈 or 〉, adjust the seat forward and backward position step by step. Press and hold to continuously adjust the seat forward and backward position. You can also tap or use the slider to quickly adjust the seat forward and backward position.
- Angle: Tap 〈 or ˇ, adjust the seat seatback angle step by step. Press and hold to continuously adjust the seat seatback angle. You can also tap or the slider to quickly adjust the seat seatback angle.

warning

- Before making seat adjustments, confirm the surrounding seating environment. Avoid crushing, collision, etc. with rear row personnel (especially children) or pets.

- Make sure hands, bodies or objects are not on the seat path during seat adjustment to avoid the risk of pinching.
- Avoid allowing children to adjust the seat and risk being pinched.
- Do not place overthick floor mats or other foreign objects (such as beverage bottles, charcoal bags, etc.) on the bottom of the seat, as they may become trapped between the seat and the guide rails, preventing seat adjustment. Locking, thus damaging the seat. It is recommended to use officially approved carpet mats from Xpeng Motors.
- Do not adjust the seat with the seat belt fastened, to avoid the seat belt being taken out of normal use, injury to occupants and loss of protection.

warning

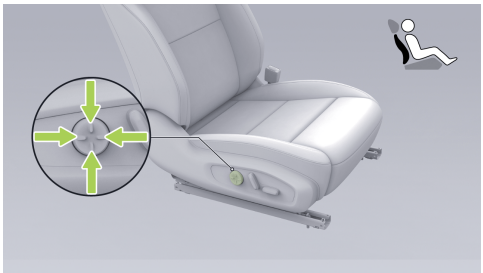
Do not adjust the driver seat while the vehicle is in motion, as this may cause loss of vehicle control and result in an accident.

Adjust the driver seat lumbar support

You can adjust the lumbar support of the driver seat in any of the following ways:

- Adjust the seat lumbar support using the seat switch.
- Adjust the seat lumbar support through the center display.
- Adjust the seat lumbar support by voice command.

Seat switch adjustment of seat lumbar support



- Press the up/down button to adjust the height position of the lumbar support.
- Press the left/right button to adjust the lumbar support forward/backward position.

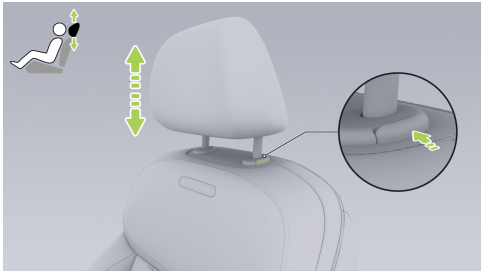
Adjusting the Seat Lumbar Support on the Center Control Screen

Tap on the center control screen in sequence. “ →**seat→Seat Position→Select "driver seat"→Select “ ⊙”** ”, enter the driver-position adjustment screen, select “**Lumbar Support**”。

- Height: Tap ^ or ˇ, can adjust the height position of the driver seat lumbar support.
- Position: Click < or > Adjust the front-rear position of the driver seat lumbar support.

Driver seat headrest

Adjust Head Restraint Height



- Adjust upward: Lift the head restraint upward to a suitable position, then press the head restraint downward to ensure that it is locked.
- Adjust downward: Press and hold the headrest adjustment button, adjust the headrest downward to a suitable position and release the button, then press the headrest downward again to lock it.

i Tips

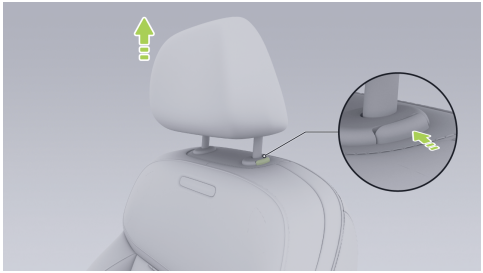
Do not use the headrest in the lowest position. Always raise it to a locked position before use.

warning

Do not ride in the vehicle with the headrest removed. The headrest should be installed on the seats and adjusted to a proper position.

Remove Seat Headrest

You can remove the headrest by following these steps:



1. Raise the head restraint upward to the highest position.
2. Press the headrest adjustment button and remove the headrest upward.

Tips

If removal is necessary, adjust the seat backrest rearward to allow the head restraint to be removed smoothly.

Install the seat headrest

When installing the seat headrest, align the headrest rods with the mounting holes of the seat, and press the headrest vertically downward.

driver User Manual habits

Save Habit

Method 1:

1. Adjust the seat position to a suitable state.
2. After the adjustment is completed, a pop-up window appears on the central control screen. Tap “**Save**”The current seat position can then be saved; tap “**Restore**”, the seat position automatically returns to the last saved position.

i Tips

The pop-up window will disappear automatically after a period of time.

Method 2:

1. Tap the central control screen in sequence. “ →**seat**→**Seat Position**→**Select "driver seat"**→**Select “ ⊙”** ”, enter the driver-position adjustment interface.
2. Adjust the seat position to an appropriate state.
3. After adjustment is complete, click “**Save Habits**”The current seat position can then be saved; tap “**Restore**”, the seat position automatically returns to the last saved position.

Switching Habits

After logging in to the account, tap the following on the center display in sequence. “ →**seat**→**Seat Position**→**Select "driver seat"**→**Driving Habits**”, enter the driving habits screen, where you can select the memorized driving habits.

Management Habits

On the driving habit screen, you can add, delete, or rename the saved driver driving habits. One account can store up to 6 driving habits.

- **Add Habit:**On the driving habits screen, tap “ + ”, enter the driving habit name, then click “**Confirm**”Completed adding.

- **Delete Habit:**On the driving habits screen, tap " ", select the driving habit to be deleted, tap the delete icon, then tap "**Confirm**"Deletion completed.
- **Rename:**On the driving habits screen, tap " ", select the driving habit to be renamed, tap the rename icon, enter a new driving habit name, and then tap "**Confirm**"Rename completed.

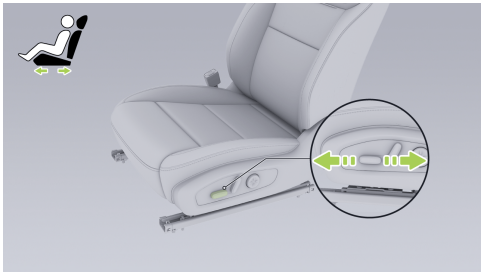
Passenger Seat

Adjust the passenger seat position

You can adjust the passenger seat to a suitable position in any of the following ways:

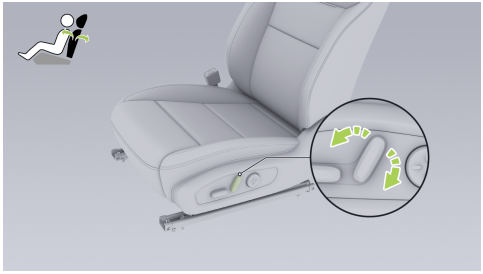
- Adjust the seat position using the seat switch.
- Adjust the seat position through the center control screen.
- Adjust the seat position by voice command.

Adjust the seat fore-aft position with the seat switch.



Push this adjustment switch forward or backward to adjust the fore-and-aft position of the passenger seat.

Adjust the seatback angle with the seat switch



Push the top of this adjustment switch forward or backward to adjust the angle of the passenger seatback.

Center Display Adjustment

Tap the center display in sequence.

“ →**seat**→**Seat Position**→**Select "passenger seat"**→**Select “ ⊙”** ”, enter the passenger-position adjustment interface, select “**seat**”。

- Location: Tap 〈 or 〉Adjust the seat forward and backward position step by step; press and hold to continuously adjust the seat forward and backward position. You can also tap or drag the slider to quickly adjust the seat forward and backward position.
- Angle: Tap 〈 or ﹀, adjust the seat seatback angle step by step; press and hold to continuously adjust the seat seatback angle. You can also tap or drag the slider to quickly adjust the seat seatback angle.

warning

- Before making seat adjustments, confirm the surrounding seating environment. Avoid crushing, collision, etc. with rear row personnel (especially children) or pets.
- Make sure hands, bodies or objects are not on the seat path during seat adjustment to avoid the risk of pinching.
- Avoid allowing children to adjust the seat and risk being pinched.

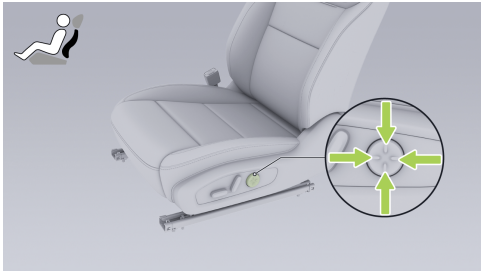
- Do not place overthick floor mats or other foreign objects (such as beverage bottles, charcoal bags, etc.) on the bottom of the seat, as they may become trapped between the seat and the guide rails, preventing seat adjustment. Locking, thus damaging the seat. It is recommended to use officially approved carpet mats from Xpeng Motors.
- Do not adjust the seat with the seat belt fastened, to avoid the seat belt being taken out of normal use, injury to occupants and loss of protection.

Adjust the passenger seat lumbar support*

You can adjust the passenger seat lumbar support in either of the following ways:

- Adjust the seat lumbar support using the seat switch.
- Adjust the seat lumbar support through the center display.
- Adjust the seat lumbar support through voice commands.

Adjust seat lumbar support with the seat switch



- Press the up/down button to adjust the height position of the lumbar support.
- Press the left/right button to adjust the lumbar support forward/backward position.

Adjusting the Seat Lumbar Support on the Center Control Screen

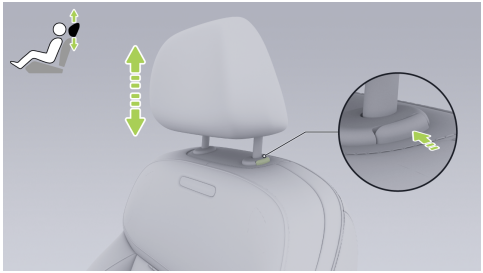
Tap the central control screen in sequence. “ **→seat→Seat Position→Select "passenger seat"→Select “ ⊙” ** ”, enter the passenger-

position adjustment interface, select “**Lumbar Support**”。

- Height: Tap ^ or ˇAdjust the height position of the passenger seat lumbar support.
- Position: Click < or > Adjust the forward and backward position of the passenger seat lumbar support.

Passenger Seat Headrest

Adjust Headrest Height

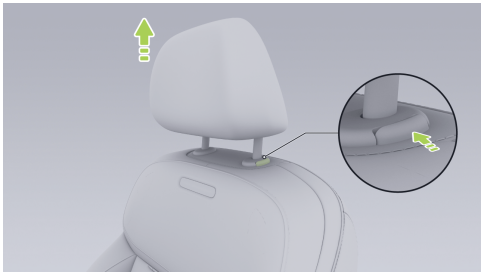


- Adjust upward: Lift the head restraint upward to a suitable position, then press the head restraint downward to ensure that it is locked.
- Adjust downward: Press and hold the headrest adjustment button, adjust the headrest downward to a suitable position and then release the button, then press the headrest downward again to lock it.

i Tips

Do not use the headrest in the lowest position. Always raise it to a locked position before use.

Remove Seat Headrest



You can remove the head restraint by following these steps:

1. Raise the head restraint upward to the highest position.
2. Press the headrest adjustment button and remove the headrest upward.

Tips

If removal is necessary, adjust the seat backrest rearward to allow the head restraint to be removed smoothly.

warning

Do not ride in the vehicle with the headrest removed. The headrest should be installed on the seats and adjusted to a proper position.

Install the seat headrest

When installing the seat headrest, align the headrest rods with the mounting holes of the seat, and press the headrest vertically downward.

Passenger Seat Memory

Save Seat Memory

Method 1:

1. Adjust the seat position to a suitable state.
2. After the adjustment is completed, a pop-up window appears on the central control screen. Tap “**Save**”The current seat position can then be saved; tap “**Restore**”, the seat position automatically returns to the last saved position.

i Tips

The pop-up window will disappear automatically after a period of time.

Method 2:

1. Tap the central control screen in sequence. “ →**seat**→**Seat Position**→**Select "Passenger Seat"**→**Select “ ⊙”** ”, enter the passenger - Position Adjustment interface.
2. Adjust the seat position to an appropriate state.
3. After adjustment is completed, tap “**Save Memory**”, you can save the current seat position information to the Standard, Relaxation, or Nap memory position; tap “**Restore**”, the seat position automatically returns to the last saved position.

Switch Seat Memory

Tap the center display in sequence.

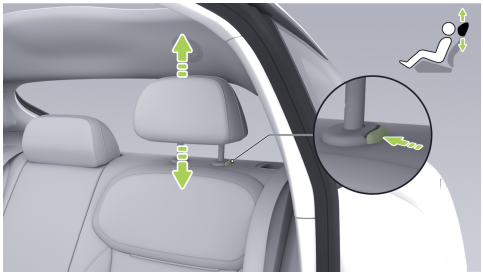
“ →**seat**→**Seat Position**→**Select "passenger seat"**→**Seat Memory**”, enter the passenger-seat memory screen, where you can select a memorized seat position.

On the passenger - Seat Memory screen, tap “ ”The memory name can be renamed.

Rear Seats

Rear Seat Headrest

Adjust Head Restraint Height



- Adjust upward: Lift the head restraint upward to a suitable position, then press the head restraint downward to ensure that it is locked.
- Adjusting downward: Press and hold the headrest adjustment button, adjust the headrest downward to a suitable position and then release the button, then press the headrest downward again to lock it.

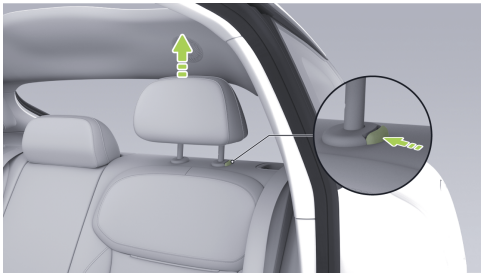
i Tips

Do not use the headrest in the lowest position. Always raise it to a locked position before use.

Remove Seat Headrest

You can remove the headrest by following these steps:

1. Fold part of the rear seat seatback forward. See 195 page。
2. Raise the head restraint upward to the highest position.



3. Press the headrest adjustment button and remove the headrest upward.

warning

Do not ride in the vehicle with the headrest removed. The headrest should be installed on the seats and adjusted to a proper position.

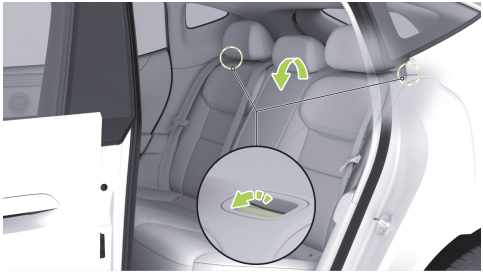
Install the seat headrest

When installing the seat headrest, first fold the rear seat seatback partially forward, then align the headrest rods with the seat mounting holes, and press the headrest vertically downward.

Fold Unfold the Rear Seat Seatback

The rear seat seatback supports folding. After folding, it can effectively expand the vehicle's cargo space and greatly improve space utilization.

Fold the rear seatback



Pull the rear seat seatback unlock handle forward, and fold the rear seat seatback forward at the same time to fold the rear seat seatback.

caution

Remove all items from the rear seats before folding the backrest to prevent obstruction and ensure proper folding.

Fold down the rear seat seatback

Pull out the seat belt and lift the rear seat seatback rearward until the seat seatback locks into place.

caution

Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that the seat belt is not trapped between the seatback and the trim panel, and ensure that the seat belt is positioned in front of the seatback.

Seat Heating Ventilation Massage

Seat heating function

You can turn the seat heating function on or off in the following ways:

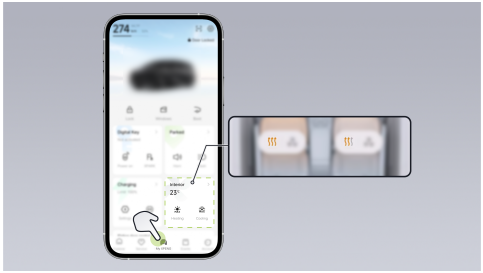
- Control seat heating through the central control screen.
- Control seat heating via the mobile APP.
- Control seat heating by voice.

Center Display Control

Tap on the center control screen in sequence. “ →**seat**→**Heating/Ventilation**”, enter “**Heating/Ventilation**”Settings screen.

- Tap “ ”Turn on the corresponding seat heating function. When the level is at 3, repeated taps cycle through level 2, level 1, off, and level 3.
- Tap “**Smart Heating/Cooling**”, the vehicle system automatically adjusts the seat heating or ventilation intensity according to the interior and exterior ambient temperature, the air conditioning settings, and the status of the seat sensors, without the need to manually switch levels.
- Tap “**Close All**”, all seat heating, seat ventilation, and steering wheel heating functions can be turned off.

Mobile APP Control



In the mobile app “**XPENG**→**Cabin Temperature**”Tap the corresponding seat Turn on the seat heating function. When the level is at

3, repeated taps cycle through level 2, level 1, off, and level 3.

Tips

The seat heating and ventilation functions cannot be turned on at the same time.

caution

- Unmanned seats do not recommend switching on the seat heating to avoid waste of energy or other damage.
- Do not add blankets, cushions, etc. to the seat when using the seat heating function, as this will cause the seat to overheat. Failure of the heating function or damage to the seat may result.
- Do not switch on the seat heating if a child safety seat is fitted to the rear seats.

warning

- Do not use the seat heating function if the person in contact with the seat does not feel pain, as personal injury may result.
- Extended use of a high-speed heated seat can cause cold burns.
- Using the host seat heating for extended periods of time may cause distress and affect safety.

Seat ventilation function

You can turn the seat ventilation function on or off in the following ways:

- Control via the center display.
- Controlled via the mobile app.
- Control via voice.

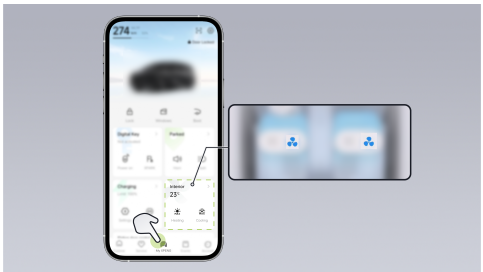
Center Display Control

Tap the center display in sequence.
“ →**seat**→**Heating/Ventilation**”, enter “**Heating/Ventilation**”Settings screen.

- Tap “ ”Turn on the ventilation function for the corresponding seat. When the level is at 3, repeated taps cycle through level 2, level 1, off, and level 3.

- Tap “**Smart Heating/Cooling**”The vehicle system automatically adjusts the seat heating or ventilation intensity according to the interior and exterior ambient temperature, the air conditioning settings, and the status of the seat sensors, without requiring manual switching of levels.
- Tap “**Close All**”, all seat heating, seat ventilation, and steering wheel heating functions can be turned off.

Mobile APP Control



In the mobile app “**XPENG→Cabin Temperature**”Tap the corresponding seat ♣Turn on the seat ventilation function. When the level is at 3, repeated tapping cycles through level 2, level 1, off, and level 3.

i Tips

The seat heating and ventilation functions cannot be turned on at the same time.

⚠ caution

Unmanned seats do not operate the seat ventilation function to avoid waste of energy or other damage.

Seat Massage Function*

You can turn the seat massage function on or off in the following ways:

- Control via the central control screen.
- Control directly through voice commands (for example, say: “Hey XPENG, turn on the driver seat massage” and other keywords).

Center Display Control

Tap on the center control screen in sequence. “ →**seat**→**Seat Massage**”, enter “**Seat Massage**”Settings screen.

- Tap “ ”Turn on the corresponding seat massage function. When the massage intensity level is at level 3, repeated tapping cycles through level 2, level 1, Off, and level 3.
- Tap “**Close All**”, all seat massage functions can be turned off.
- Tap the corresponding seat massage mode name to enter the corresponding seat massage settings screen, where the following personalized settings are supported:

  1. You can select the massage mode according to your personal preference.
  2. Tap to turn the seat massage function on or off.
  3. Tap to select the massage intensity.

Tips

- After the seat massage function is turned on, even if you do not manually turn it off, it will automatically turn off after running for a certain period of time.
- Only the front row seats support the seat massage function.

Seat Welcome Mode

After the seat Welcome mode is enabled, when you get in or out of the vehicle, the seat will automatically adjust to the Welcome position, making it easier for you to enter and exit the vehicle.

Turn driver welcome on or off

Tap the center display in sequence. " →**Settings→vehicle→Unlocking and Welcome→driver Welcome**", turn driver welcome on or off.

Turn passenger welcome on or off

Tap on the center control screen in sequence. " →**Settings→vehicle→Unlocking and Welcome→Passenger Welcome**", turn passenger welcome on or off.

Tips

- If the seat back angle is greater, the seat back may affect the rear passengers and the approach function will not be activated.
- If the seat position is in a rearward position and the person has been able to exit the vehicle easily, the approach function will not be activated.

caution

Always make sure that there are no obstructions within the seat movement area before the seat approach function is activated, as personal injury or vehicle damage may result.

warning

- Do not drive the vehicle while the host drive approach function is in operation and always wait for the seat adjustment to complete as this may result in loss of control of the vehicle.
- During the operation of the host or passenger approach function, there should be sufficient safety space for rear passengers (especially children), pets and surrounding objects to prevent seat

movement. Rear passengers, pets and surrounding objects are crushed, bumped or pinched.

- Ensure that no part of the body of a passenger, any part of the body of a pet or any object is within the range of movement of the seat during the operation of the host or passenger approach function, to avoid the risk of pinching.
- Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle. If a child is switching over the driving habits or adjusting the front seats while in an unattended vehicle, they may become trapped while the seat is moving.
- If there is a risk of being pinched by the front seats, manually operate the seat adjustment switch to suspend the host or passenger approach functions.
- If a child is often in the rear seat, it is recommended that the host or passenger approach function is switched off.

Seat Initialization

When using the seat, if a function is abnormal (for example, the buttons, the central control screen, or voice cannot adjust the seat), you can try manually initializing the seat before using it again.

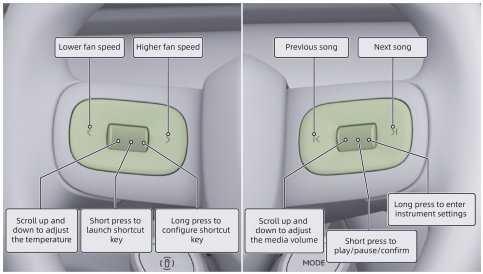
Front Row Seat Initialization Operation

1. Push the seatback angle adjustment switch forward, and release the switch after the seatback stops moving at the fully forward position.
2. Push the switch forward again to confirm it is in the fully forward position, then release the switch.
3. Within 5 seconds, push the switch forward again and hold the switch in that position for more than 5 seconds until the seat automatically starts the initialization action.
4. Wait until the seat has come to a complete stop before using the seat.

steering wheel

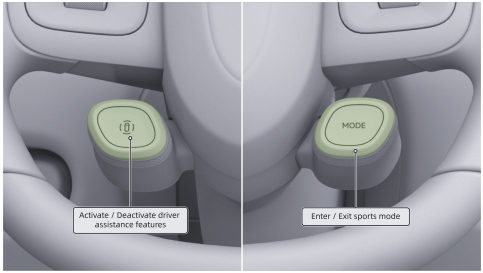
Steering wheel buttons

Steering Wheel Button Functions in Daily Driving



Tips

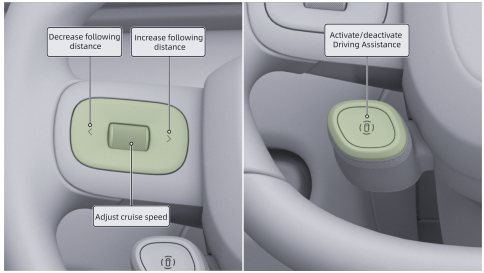
- After pressing and holding the scroll wheel to enter the instrument cluster editing interface, you can adjust the related functions of the instrument cluster by scrolling left or right. For detailed operations, please refer to the instrument cluster chapter.
- On the Side Mirrors adjustment interface, you can use the left and right buttons and the scroll wheel to adjust Side Mirrors-related functions. For detailed operations, please refer to the Side Mirrors chapter.
- In the HUD adjustment interface, you can use the left and right buttons and the scroll wheel to adjust HUD-related functions. For detailed operations, please refer to the HUD chapter.
- When there is an incoming call, scroll the right roller up/down to select answer/reject, and press the roller briefly to confirm. During a call, press briefly to hang up.



Tips

- Only after the conditions for activating the driver assistance system are met can you briefly press the left intelligent drive control button to activate the driver assistance function. For detailed operation and instructions, refer to the relevant Driver Assistance sections.
- Before enabling the Driver Assistance function, read the relevant sections of this manual carefully to ensure you understand the operating instructions and all warnings and precautions for this function.

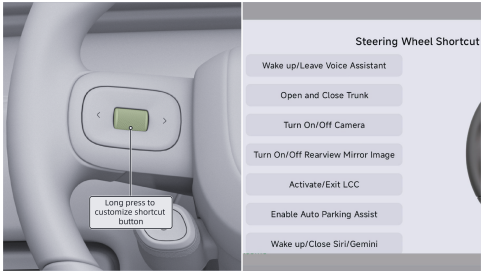
Steering Wheel Button Functions in Assisted Driving



Tips

The steering wheel buttons can be used to adjust the following distance and cruise speed only when the ACC*/LCC function is enabled.

Steering Wheel Shortcut Buttons



Press and hold the steering wheel shortcut button or on the central control screen "→**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Seats and Steering Wheel**→**Steering Wheel Shortcut Buttons**"You can set the steering wheel shortcut button function.

Press the steering wheel shortcut button briefly to perform the set function.

Horn

Press the horn symbol area, and the horn will sound.

caution

Do not press and hold the horn symbol area for a long time, otherwise the horn is very likely to be damaged.

Steering Wheel Position Adjustment

Before driving the vehicle, you can adjust the height of the steering wheel and the distance between the steering wheel and your body, so that you can comfortably hold the steering wheel in a suitable driving posture.

1. Adjust to a proper driving position.
2. When the vehicle is stopped, pull the steering wheel lever downward to unlock the steering wheel.
3. Move the steering wheel up, down, forward, and backward to a suitable position.
4. Pull the steering wheel lever upward to lock the steering wheel.

Tips

- Adjust the steering wheel position only when the gear is in Park (P).
- After adjusting the steering wheel position, try moving it up and down and forward and backward to ensure it is securely locked in place.

warning

- Do not adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion to avoid accidents.
- Improper steering wheel position adjustment can cause personal injury, at least 25cm from the steering wheel to the driver's chest.

Steering Wheel Heating Function

You can turn the steering wheel heating function on/off in the following ways:

- Control steering wheel heating through the central control screen.
- Control steering wheel heating via the mobile app.
- Control steering wheel heating by voice command.

Control via the center display

On the central control screen

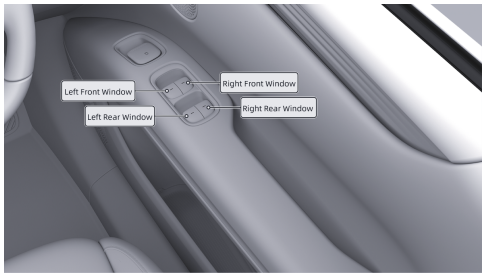
“ →**seat→Heating/Ventilation**”Interface, tap

“ ”Turn on the steering wheel heating function. When the level is at 3, repeated tapping cycles through level 2, level 1, off, and level 3.

Window Adjustment

driver window button

The driver-side window switch can control the raising and lowering of the four windows, and the passenger-side window switch can control the raising and lowering of the window on one side.



- Pull up the window switch to the second detent. The window closes with one touch and moves to the fully closed position.

- Press the window switch down to the second detent to open it with one touch, and the window moves to the fully open position.
- Pull the window switch up to the first detent and hold it; the window will rise slowly, and it will stop when released.
- Press the window switch down to the first detent and hold it. The window lowers slowly and stops immediately when released.

Passenger-side window switch

The passenger-side window switch can adjust the raising and lowering of a single window.

- Press the switch slightly firmly to open with one tap, and the window moves to the fully open position.
- Pull up the switch slightly with force to close with one tap, and the window moves to the fully closed position.
- Press the switch lightly, the window lowers slowly; release to stop.
- Pull the switch lightly, the window rises slowly; release it to stop.

Tips

- Do not switch the windows repeatedly within a short period of time, as this will trigger the window thermal protection, the window lift function will fail after thermal protection, wait approximately 2 minutes before operating.
- When the window is closed, if an obstacle is encountered in the anti-trap area, the

window will stop closing and reverse for a distance.

- If the window is closed with one touch and the anti-trap function is disabled, the window initialization can be performed.

caution

When cleaning the interior, do not spray a large amount of cleaner directly onto the window switches. Use a soft cloth moistened with cleaner to wipe them gently to avoid damaging the switches.

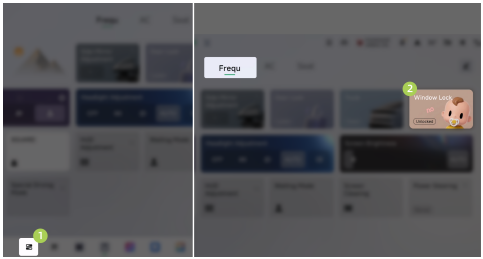
warning

- To ensure safety when children are in the vehicle, lock the passenger glass up and down to prevent children from operating the windows to avoid pinching.
- Even if the windows are equipped with anti-trap, there is still a risk of pinching when closing the windows, do not use any part of your body to block the windows from closing to activate the anti-trap.
- Before closing the windows, the driver must ensure that all passengers, especially children, do not protrude any part of their body out of the window, otherwise there is a risk of pinching!
- Make sure the vehicle is powered down before leaving the vehicle.

Center Display Settings Items

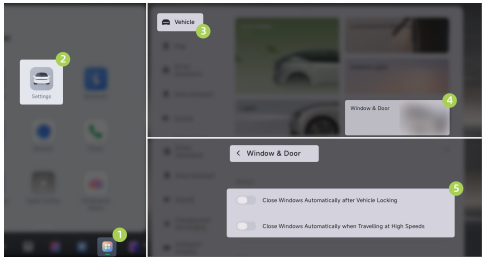
window lock

Tap on the center control screen. Enter the Control Center screen to turn the window lock on/off.



Auto Window Closing

On the central control screen "→**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Doors and Windows**"Interface, can be opened/closed "**Automatic Window Closing When Locked**"and "**Automatically Close Windows at High Speed**"Function.



Tips

After enabling automatic window closing at high speed, it is recommended to enable Fresh Air mode during high-speed driving.

warning

After the automatic window closing when locked function is enabled, when the vehicle is locked, the window will close automatically. Please ensure that the window will not trap

6

occupants or obstacles and that there are no passengers in the vehicle, especially children, before locking.

Anti-pinch function for window

This vehicle is equipped with a window anti-pinch function. When the window encounters an obstacle during automatic closing, the window anti-pinch function will be triggered, and the window will immediately stop closing and move downward a certain distance.

Tips

If the anti-pinch function of the window fails, window initialization can be performed.

warning

- Even if the windows are equipped with anti-trap function, do not reach or extend any part of the body or other object into the window during the window closing process, as this may cause injury to members or damage to the vehicle.
- Under special circumstances, such as thin or soft obstructions, the window anti-trap function will not be guaranteed to be triggered.

window initialization

If the function is abnormal when operating the window (for example, one-touch up/down fails, and neither the central control screen nor voice can adjust it), window initialization can be performed:

1. When the vehicle is powered on and the doors are closed, gently pull the window switch to raise the window to the fully closed position and hold for 2 seconds, then release.
2. Press the window switch slightly harder and release it, so that the window automatically lowers to the fully open position and remains there for 2 seconds.
3. Pull up the window switch slightly with force and release it, so that the window automatically rises to the closed position and

remains there for 2 seconds, then the window initialization is completed.

The following operations can be used to check whether initialization is complete:

1. Press the window switch slightly and release it, and the window can automatically lower to the fully open position.
2. Pull up the window switch slightly with force and release it, and the window can automatically rise to the fully closed position.

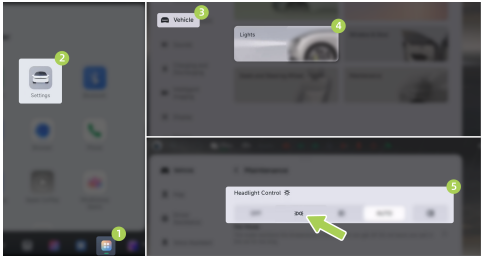
Exterior Lights

Position lamp

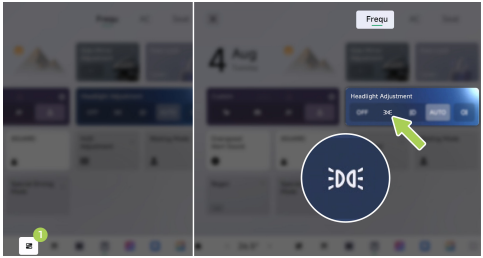
When in an environment with insufficient light or low visibility, turning on the position lamps can allow other road users to notice the presence of the vehicle.

You can turn on the position lights in the following way. After they are turned on, the instrument cluster and the central control screen display Indicator Light:

- On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Lights**"Interface, turn on the position lights.



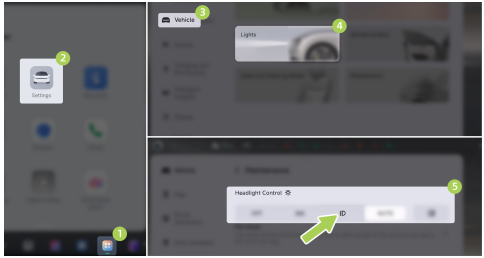
- Tap on the center control screen. Enter the Control Center screen and turn on the position lamps.



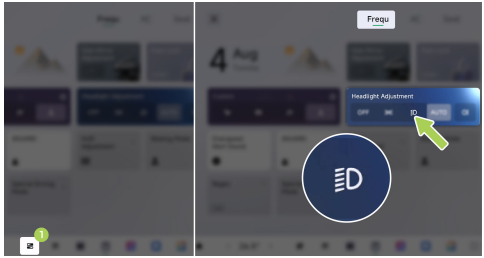
Low beam headlights

You can turn on the low beam headlights in the following ways. After they are turned on, the instrument cluster and the center display show Indicator Light:

- On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Lights**”Interface, turn on the low beam headlights.



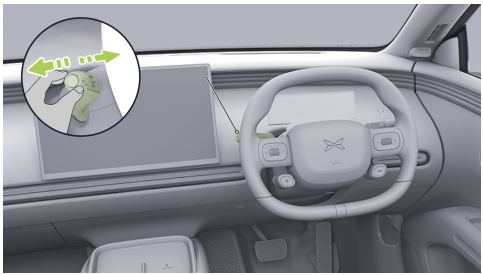
- Tap on the center control screen. Enter the Control Center screen and turn on the low beam headlights.



caution

Do not turn on the low beam or high beam when the headlights are covered by obstructions (such as towels, gloves, clothing, or other objects), otherwise the lamp cover may overheat and deform. If you find at night that the headlights are obstructed while driving, pull over safely when safety is ensured and promptly remove the obstruction to avoid affecting the lighting effect and driving safety.

high beam



- **Turn on high beam**: When the low beam is on or the light switch is in AUTO mode, push the lever on the left side of the steering wheel forward to turn on the high beam. At this time, the instrument cluster and the central control screen display Indicator light.
- **Turn off high beam**: When the high beam is on, pull the lever on the left side of the steering wheel backward to turn off the high beam.
- **Overtaking lights**: Pull the lever on the left side of the steering wheel backward and release it, and the high beam flashes once.

caution

- For your driving safety and that of others, please use the high beam properly.
- Under certain conditions of use (such as high air humidity or car washing), the lights may fog up inside, which is a normal phenomenon. If a large number of water droplets or water accumulation

appears inside the lights, please contact a XIAOPENG Motors Service Center.

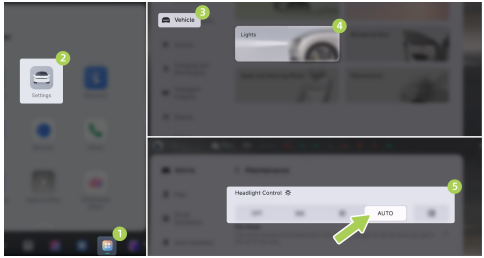
caution

Do not turn on the low beam or high beam when the headlights are covered by obstructions (such as towels, gloves, clothing, or other objects), otherwise the lamp cover may overheat and deform. If you find that the headlights are obstructed while driving at night, pull over safely when conditions permit and promptly remove the obstruction to avoid affecting lighting performance and driving safety.

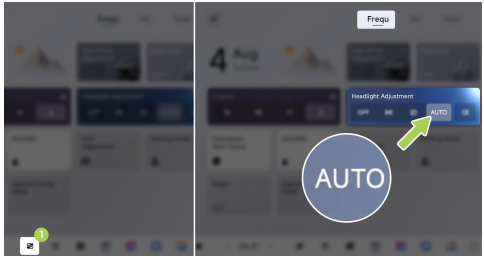
auto headlights (AUTO)

You can enable the auto headlights function in the following way:

- On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Lights**"On the interface, enable the auto headlights function.



- Tap on the center control screen. Enter the Control Center screen and enable the auto headlights function.



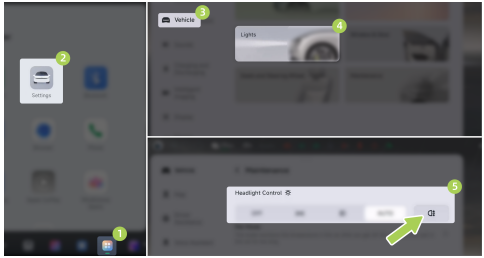
After the auto headlights function is enabled, the system will automatically turn the low beam headlights and position lights on/off according to the ambient brightness.

When the auto headlights function is enabled and the low beam headlights are on, the instrument cluster and central control screen display Indicator light.

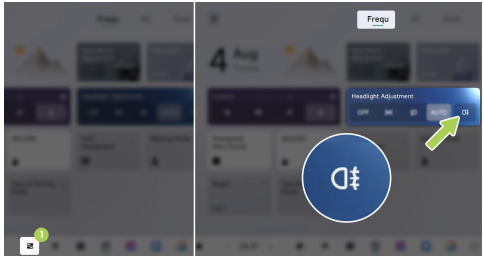
rear fog light

You can turn on the rear fog light in the following way. After it is turned on, the central control screen displays Indicator Light:

- On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Lights**"Interface, turn on the rear fog light.



- Tap on the center control screen. Enter the Control Center screen and turn on the rear fog light.

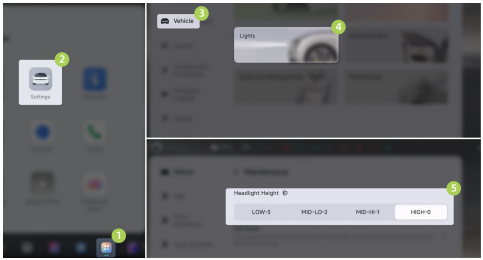


Tips

If the low beam headlights are off and the rear fog lights are turned on, the low beam headlights will turn on simultaneously.

headlights height adjustment

On the central control screen “ →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Lights**”On the interface, you can select the headlight height position according to the vehicle load condition.



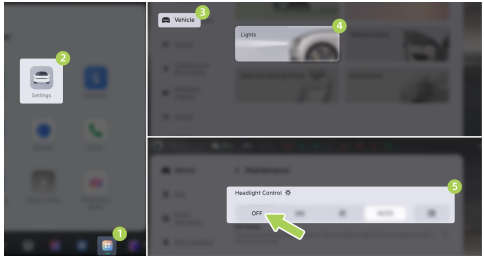
Conditions	Headlights Height Position
Driver Only	HIGH-0
Only the driver and one front row passenger	
There are five people in total in the front row and rear seats.	MID-HI-1
There are five people in the front row and rear seats, and there is luggage in the Frunk* and trunk (within the limits of the maximum permissible axle load and maximum permissible vehicle weight).	MID-LO-2

Driver only, luggage in the Frunk* and trunk (within the limits of the maximum permissible axle load and maximum permissible vehicle weight)	LOW-3

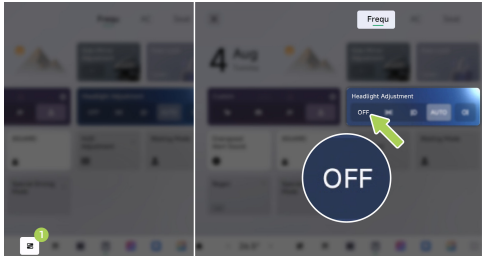
Turn off the lights

When the position lights, low beam, high beam, rear fog light, or auto headlights are turned on, you can turn off all lights in the following way:

- On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Lights**"Interface, turn off all lights.

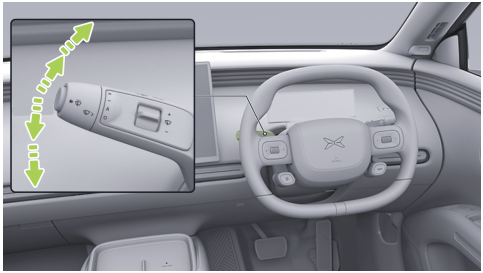


- Tap on the center control screen. Enter the Control Center screen and turn off all lights.



Turn Signal

The turn signal is used to alert other road users that the vehicle is about to change direction.



- Lightly push the stalk downward and then release it; the stalk automatically returns to its original position, and the left turn signal flashes three times.
- Push the stalk down to the limit position and then release it. The stalk automatically returns to its original position, and the left turn signal continues flashing.
- Push the stalk upward lightly and release it. The stalk automatically returns to its original position, and the right turn signal flashes three times.
- Push the stalk upward again to the limit position and then release it. The stalk automatically returns to its original position, and the right turn signal continues flashing.
- To turn off the turn signal, lightly move the stalk upward/downward or return the steering wheel to the straight-ahead position.

i Tips

When the turn signal is activated, the corresponding turn signal indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster, accompanied by an audible ticking sound.

Hazard Warning Lamp

If an emergency occurs while driving, press the hazard warning light switch to turn on the hazard warning lights. At this time, the turn signal lights

flash. Press the switch again to turn off the hazard warning lights.

Tips

The hazard warning lights can be turned on whether the vehicle is powered on or powered off.

intelligent high beam IHB

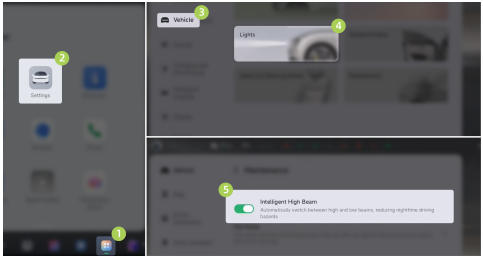
IHB can automatically switch between high beam and low beam according to information such as vehicles ahead and ambient lighting, avoiding interference with surrounding traffic participants.

Status Indicator Light

AUTO	IHB is enabled and the high beam is not illuminated.
AUTO	IHB is on and the high beam is illuminated.
AUTO	There is a fault in the IHB.

Center Display Settings Items

On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Lights**"On the interface, you can turn the intelligent high beam on/off.



Using IHB

When the following conditions are met simultaneously, IHB is activated, and the vehicle automatically switches between high beam and low beam according to the road environment:

- The lighting switch on the central control screen is in the Auto or low beam position.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 35 km/h.

Tips

When IHB is activated, if the vehicle speed is less than 25 km/h, IHB will exit.

warning

IHB is a function that assists in switching between high beam and low beam. The driver shall always remain vigilant, ensure safe driving, and manually switch between high beam and low beam when necessary.

In the following situations, activation of the high beam may be suppressed, and the high beam or low beam may not switch automatically:

- When the ambient light is relatively sufficient.
- Street lights include the Traffic Lights Intelligent Assist scenario.
- When there is a vehicle traveling in the same direction or in the opposite direction.
- The Combo for curves will be suppressed when necessary according to the actual situation.
- When a sign or mirror-like surface reflects strong light to the front of the vehicle.

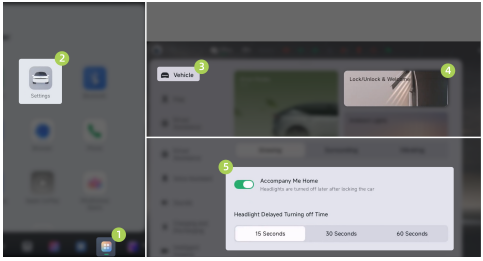
warning

IHB may not work in the following scenarios:

- Camera restricted.

Accompany Me Home

After the Accompany Me Home function is enabled, at night or in environments with insufficient light, when you lock the vehicle and power it off, the vehicle automatically turns on the low beam headlights to illuminate the road ahead for you.



On the central control screen "→**Settings→vehicle→Unlocking and Welcome**"Interface for turning the Accompany Me Home function on/off and setting the headlight delayed switch-off time.

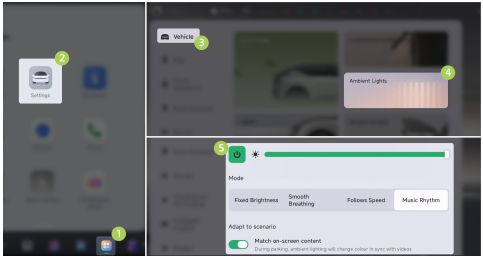
Interior Lighting

Ambient Lights

The vehicle is equipped with Ambient Lights, which can change color with variations in rhythm, adding warmth to your journey home as night gradually falls.

Center Display Settings Items

On the center control screen "→**Settings→vehicle→Ambient Lights**"Interface, where Ambient Lights can be set.



Brightness Adjustment and Color Selection

After Ambient Lights are turned on, the brightness of the Ambient Lights can be adjusted manually. Depending on the mode, the color of the Ambient Lights can be selected from theme color, fixed color, and cycle color options.

Under the fixed color option, you can select the main zone color and the secondary zone color separately, or synchronize the entire vehicle to select one color.

Ambient Lights Mode

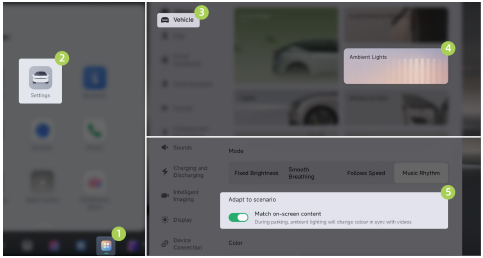
Ambient Lights has four mode settings: fixed brightness, smooth breathing, follow vehicle speed, and Music rhythm, which can be selected on the Ambient Lights control interface.

Light and Shadow Follow Movement

Light and shadow movement can, based on the video content on the central control screen, analyze in real time the color with the largest area and highest saturation in the video image, and synchronously switch the Ambient Lights color, achieving dynamic linkage between the Ambient Lights and the image.

Light and Shadow Follow On/Off

The light-shadow follow-up function can be turned on/off in the following ways:



- On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Ambient Lights**"Interface, turn the light and shadow follow-up effect on/off.
- Directly use a voice command (for example, say "Hey XPENG, turn on Dynamic Ambient Light").

Function Use

Function Activation: When the following conditions are met, the Ambient Lights automatically enter the light-and-shadow follow mode, and the color changes in real time with the video image.

- The vehicle is in P gear;
- Set the center display "Light and Shadow Follow Movement" switch to On;
- Play the video application in full screen on the central control screen.

Function Paused: During function operation, when video playback is paused/stopped, the Ambient Lights remain at the color of the fully backward frame and stay unchanged. If video playback continues, the function will resume operation.

Exit Function: If any of the following situations occurs, the light-and-shadow follow-up function will exit, and the Ambient Lights will immediately return to the color and mode you previously set.

- The video app moves to the background (for example, when returning to the home screen or switching to another app);

- Turn off the "Light and Shadow Follow-up" switch;
- The vehicle gear is shifted to a non-P gear.

i Tips

This function only works during full-screen video playback. It may not function properly when not in full-screen mode.

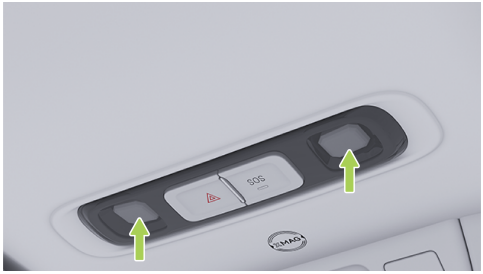
reading light

When the light inside the vehicle is insufficient, the interior reading light can provide appropriate illumination for the occupants inside the vehicle without affecting the driver's normal driving.

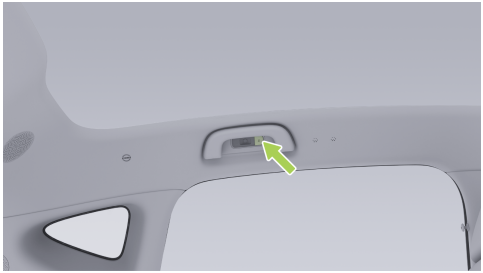
You can turn the reading light on/off in any of the following ways:

- Turn the reading light on/off using the reading light switch.
- Turn the reading light on/off via the central control screen.
- Turn the reading light on/off by voice command.

reading light switch

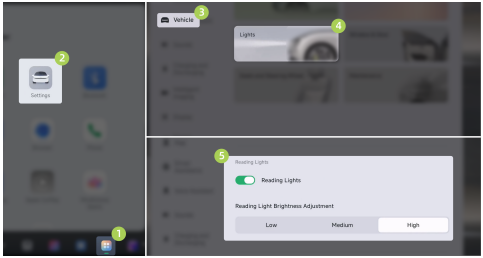


The front row reading light is installed in the front roof lamp assembly. Touch the reading light lens to turn on the reading light; touch it again to turn off the reading light.



Press the rear reading light switch on the corresponding side. The reading light turns on. Press the reading light switch again to turn it off.

Center Display Settings Items



On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Lights**"On the interface, the following settings can be configured for the reading light:

- Tap "**reading light**", turn the reading light on/off.
- Select "**reading light Brightness Adjustment**"Use the options below to adjust the reading light brightness.

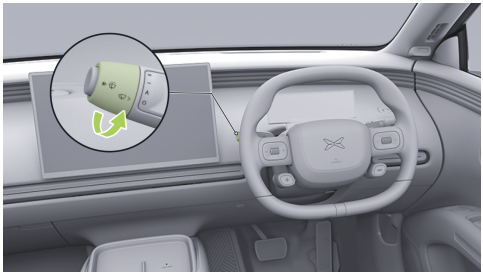
i Tips

The reading light automatically illuminates when the door is opened, and the reading light automatically extinguishes when the door is closed.

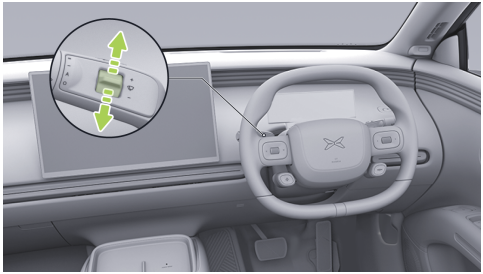
Wiper Operation

Manual Wiper

You can turn the wiper function on or off by rotating the wiper switch.

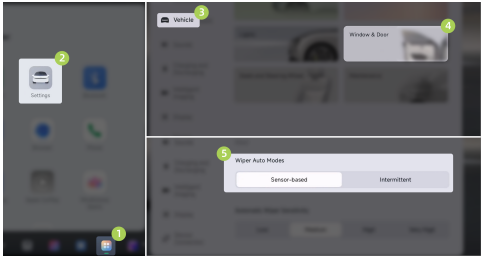


- ≡: The wipers wipe continuously at high speed.
- —: The wipers wipe continuously at low speed.
- A: Enable the automatic wiper or intermittent wipe function.
- O: Turn off the wipers.



- **Mist Wipe**: Briefly press the wash switch, and the wiper wipes once.

AUTO Wiper Mode



On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Doors and Windows**"On the interface, you can set the AUTO wiper mode to "**Rain-Sensing Automatic Wiping, Intermittent Wiping**"。

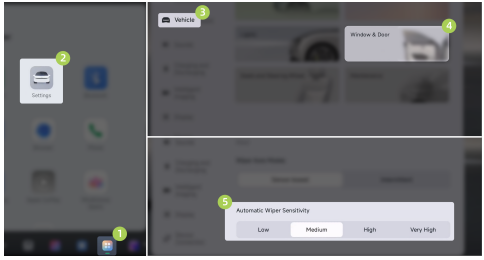
- Sensor-Activated Automatic Wiping: Wiper Switch Position " A "Automatic wiper mode.
- Intermittent Wiping: Wiper Switch Position " A "Intermittent wiping.

Automatic Wipers

Rotate the wiper switch to the AUTO position to enable the automatic wiper function. After it is enabled, when the vehicle rain sensor detects rain, the system will activate the wipers and adjust the wiping speed according to the set sensitivity.

Automatic Wiper Sensitivity Adjustment

On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Doors and Windows**"On the interface, you can set the automatic wiper sensitivity to "**Low, Medium, High, Very High**"Gear. The higher the gear, the higher the wiper sensitivity.



caution

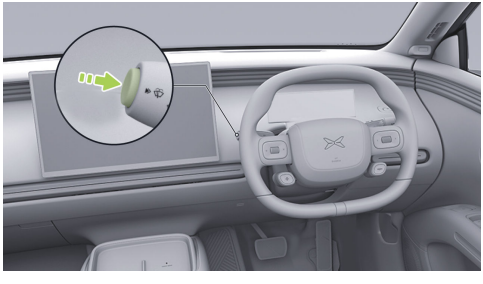
- Make sure that the front compartment lid, boot and main drive door are latched before operating the wipers.
- When washing the vehicle, switch off the automatic wipers function to avoid personal injury or damage to the wipers.
- When using the wipers in adverse weather conditions, make sure the blades are not frozen/stuck to the windshield.
- For example, if there are foreign objects (snow, leaves, etc.) on the wipers or

windscreen, park the vehicle in a safe area and remove it.

Windshield Washing

Windshield washing uses washer fluid to remove dirt from the front windshield, prevent the driver's vision from being affected, and improve driving safety.

When the vehicle is low on windshield washer fluid, refill the washer fluid promptly (for detailed operations, refer to the "Adding Wiper Cleaning Fluid" section).

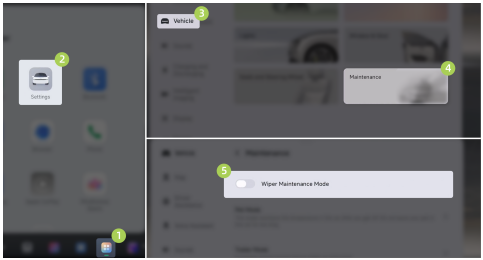


Press and hold the wiper washer switch. The washer sprays water while the wipers operate. After releasing this switch, the washer stops spraying water, and the wipers continue operating.

Tips

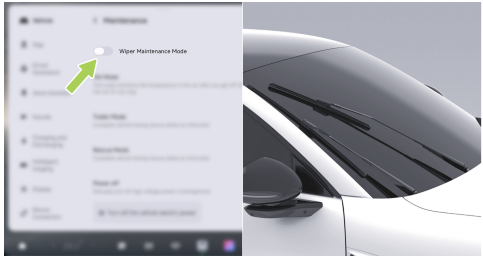
- Do not use the windshield washer for too long each time; otherwise, the washer motor may be damaged.
- When the washer fluid in the reservoir is insufficient, do not operate the washer, otherwise the washer motor may be damaged.

Replacing the Wiper Blades

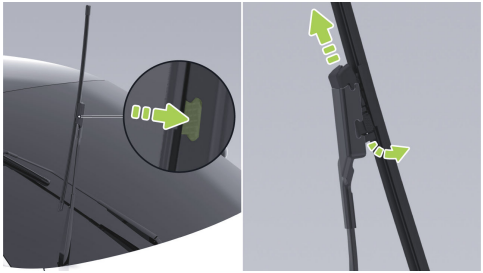


Shift the vehicle gear to P and keep the wipers off. On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Maintenance**"On this screen, Wiper Maintenance Mode can be turned on/off. The wiper arms will move to the maintenance position. After Wiper Maintenance Mode is turned off, the wiper arms will automatically return to their original position.

Wiper Blade Replacement



1. Open on the central control screen "**Wiper Maintenance Mode**", the wiper arm will move to the maintenance position.



2. Lift the wiper arm, press the locking buttons on both sides, disengage it first and then remove the wiper blade upward.
3. Reinstall the new wiper blade onto the wiper arm by reversing the steps, until you hear "**Click**"A sound indicates that it is installed in place.
4. Gently place the wiper arm back onto the windshield.
5. Turn off Wiper Maintenance Mode.

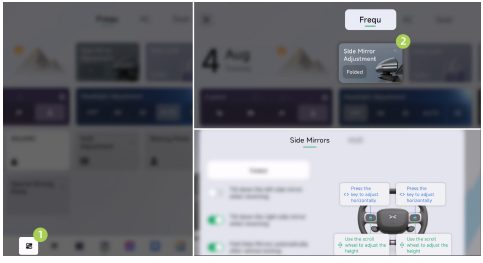
caution

- Before replacing the wiper blades, switch on the wiper service mode with the front compartment lid, main driver door fully closed, damage to the vehicle may occur.
- Place a thick soft towel between the wiper blade and the windscreen before removing the wiper blade to prevent accidental scratching of the windshield when removing the blade.
- In the case of cleaning the glass, wiper blades or replacing the blades, raise the wiper arms when lifting the wipers, do not grab the blades directly. Avoid deformation of the wiper blades, which can affect the abnormal noise and the performance of the wiper blades.

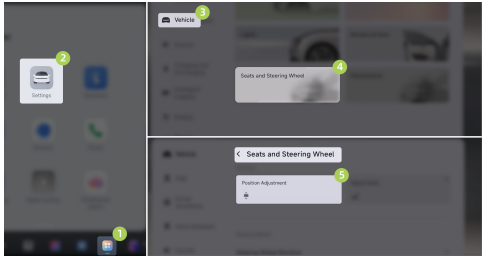
Side Mirrors

Adjust the Side Mirrors Angle

1. Open the Side Mirrors adjustment interface:



- **Method 1:**Tap on the center control screen. Enter the Control Center screen and tap “**Side Mirrors Adjustment**”After pressing the button, the Side Mirrors adjustment interface is displayed.



- **Method 2:**Tap the central control screen in sequence. “ →**Settings→vehicle→Seats and Steering Wheel→Position Adjustment**”, open the Side Mirrors adjustment interface.

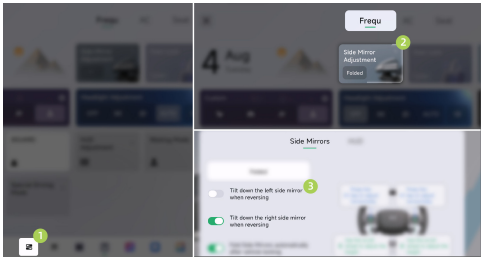
2. After opening the Side Mirrors adjustment interface, use the scroll wheels on both sides of the steering wheel and the left and right buttons to adjust the angle of the Side Mirrors.

warning

- Do not adjust the exterior mirrors while the vehicle is in motion to prevent accidents.
- Do not manually press the exterior mirrors to adjust the tilt angle.
- Do not make private modifications to the exterior mirrors.

Automatic Tilting of Side Mirrors When Reversing

Tap on the center control screen. Enter the Control Center screen and tap “**Side Mirrors Adjustment**”Button. After opening the Side Mirrors adjustment screen, you can turn the automatic tilt-down function of the reversing mirror on/off.



After the function is enabled, when the vehicle is in R gear, the side mirrors automatically tilt downward to a certain angle to assist with reversing.

i Tips

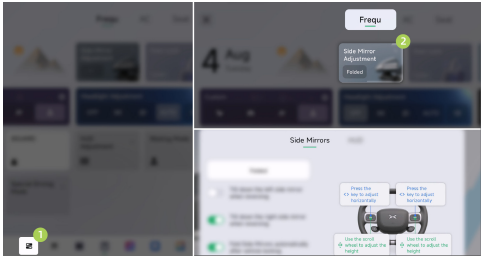
After the mirrors tilt downward while reversing, you can still adjust the mirror angle in the Side Mirrors adjustment interface using the scroll wheels on both sides of the steering wheel and the left and right buttons.

Adjust Side Mirrors Tilt-Down Angle

The Side Mirrors tilt-down angle supports manual setting. The specific operation method is as follows:

1. Enable the automatic tilt-down function of the rearview mirror when reversing on the central control screen.
2. Depress the brake pedal and shift the vehicle into R gear.
3. After the rearview mirror automatically tilts downward, tap on the central control screen.

   Enter the Control Center screen and tap “**Side Mirrors Adjustment**”Open the Side Mirrors adjustment screen.



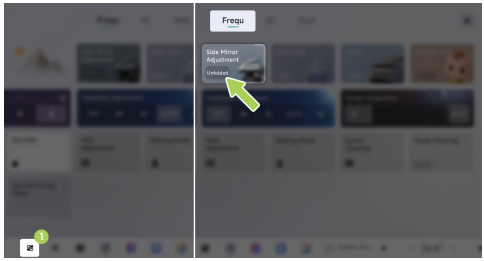
4. Use the scroll wheels on both sides of the steering wheel and the left and right buttons to adjust the angle of the Side Mirrors.
5. After the adjustment is completed, shift the vehicle out of R gear to complete the setting.

warning

Keep the brake pedal fully depressed during adjustment to avoid the danger of the vehicle rolling backward.

Side Mirrors Extend Fold

Tap on the center display. Enter the Control Center screen to unfold/fold the Side Mirrors.

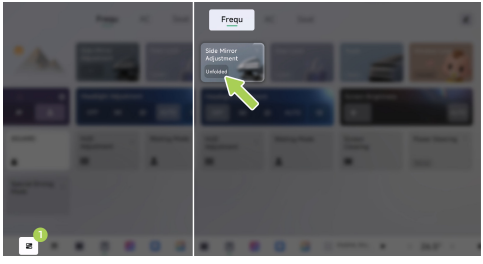


Side Mirrors Reset

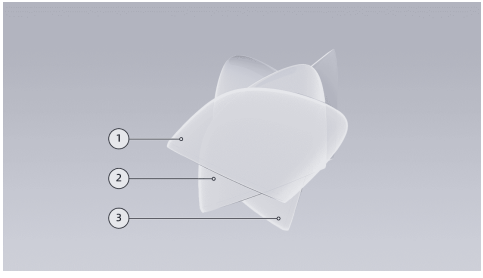
Due to accidental impact or manual pushing, the Side Mirrors may be in the forward-folded or rearward-folded position. Restore them to the normal position by following the method below.

1. Tap on the center control screen. Enter the control center screen and unfold the Side

Mirrors. Wait until the Side Mirrors complete the movement.



2. Manually push the Side Mirrors to the normal position.



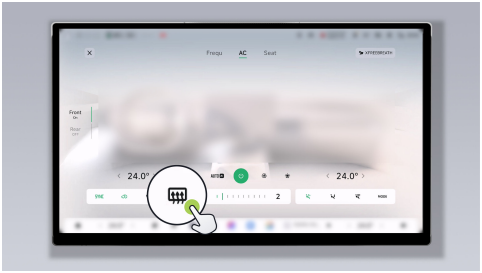
1. Forward Folded State
2. Standard Status
3. Rear Folded State

i Tips

Before manual reset, check whether there is ice, snow, or other foreign matter on the folding surface. Remove the foreign matter before resetting; otherwise, the Side Mirrors folding structure may be easily damaged.

Side Mirrors Heating

Using the Side Mirrors heating function can quickly remove fog or water stains from the Side Mirrors glass, improve the rear view, and enhance driving safety.



On the Air Conditioner control interface, you can turn on the rear defrost and Side Mirrors heating function with one touch. After this function is turned on for a period of time, it will automatically turn off.

caution

When the Side Mirrors heating function is on, do not touch it with your hand to avoid burns.

Side Mirrors Memory

Side Mirrors have a position memory function. After you adjust the position of the Side Mirrors, it can be saved to your account. The next time you get in the vehicle, the Side Mirrors will automatically return to the memorized position.

Manual Anti-Glare Rearview Mirror

Function Overview

Manually adjust the anti-glare Rearview Mirror to reduce reflected light shining in from the rear, so that the rear field of view remains in the optimal observation state.

- When the tab is in the normal rearview angle, push the tab forward to offset the reflected light coming from behind, achieving the anti-glare function.
- Push the tab further backward to adjust it back to the normal rearview angle.

i Tips

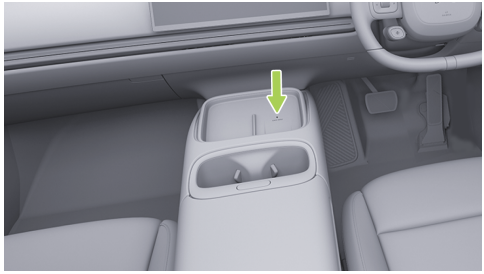
It is recommended to use both hands when adjusting the interior mirror lens angle.

Adjust the Rearview Mirror Angle

1. Adjust the driver's seat to a suitable position.
2. Hold the interior rearview mirror and adjust it up and down, left and right to set the angle of the rearview mirror to a position where you can observe the conditions behind the vehicle through the interior rearview mirror.

wireless charging

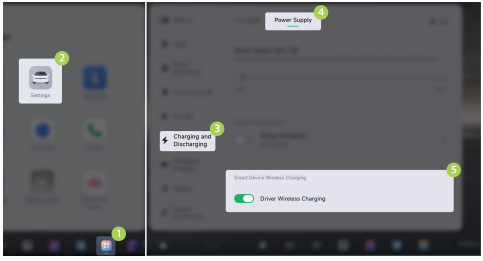
front row wireless charging



The front-row wireless charging is located at the front end of the center console. The mobile phone wireless charging power supports up to 50 W. When charging, place the mobile phone with the screen facing upward, and slide the mobile phone along the limiting strip to the bottom of the charging area. This helps the mobile phone detect charging and is beneficial for heat dissipation.

Center Control Screen Settings Items

On the center control screen "→**Settings**→**Charging/Discharging**→**Power Supply**"Interface, where the driver's wireless charging can be turned on/off.



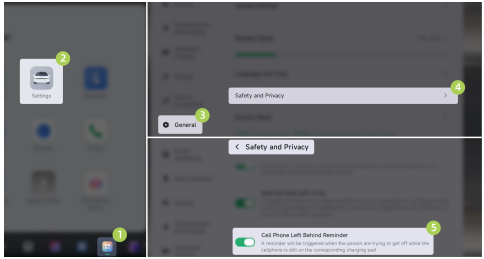
caution

Some mobile phones do not have the wireless charging function. Placing the mobile phone on the wireless charging panel may cause screen flickering, jumping, or similar conditions.

If necessary, it is recommended to turn off the wireless charging switch on the center display.

Phone Left-Behind Reminder

On the center control screen "→**Settings**→**General**→**Safety and Privacy**"Interface, where you can enable/disable the mobile phone forgotten reminder. After the function is enabled, when the mobile phone is wirelessly charging and a door is opened, a voice prompt reminds you to take your mobile phone with you when getting out of the vehicle.



6

Precautions

Wireless charging will stop in the following situations:

- When the phone is placed at the uppermost end of the charging area, charging may be interrupted or detection may fail.
- When searching for the key while starting the vehicle, stop charging.
- When the left front door is unlocked and all four doors are closed, when closing the trunk.

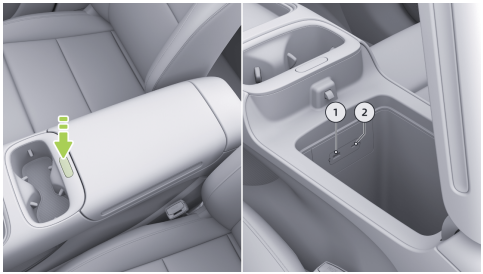
warning

- To avoid interference between medical or implantable electronic devices and the wireless charging system for mobile phones, personnel using medical or implantable electronic devices should maintain an appropriate distance from the wireless charging area of the mobile phone.
- Wireless phone charging function has a heating effect on metal, please make sure that there are no metal objects in the back of the phone and in the charging area before starting charging, this may cause metal objects to be heated or damaged, or even cause safety incidents. Metal foreign objects here refer to other objects with metal components, including but not limited to chips, magnetic cards, etc.
- For phones that do not have wireless charging, it is recommended to manually tap the center screen setting to turn off wireless charging in the corresponding area to avoid affecting the normal use of the phone.
- For mobile phones with 50W power wireless fast charging, the phone must be placed along the limit bar at the bottom of the charging area, and the bottom of the phone should be fully covered to avoid overheating problems.
- The wireless charging cooling fan outlet is located at the lower end of the wireless charging, be aware that foreign objects and liquids enter the outlet and affect the operation of the fan.

- Do not spill water in the wireless charging area to prevent damage to the electronics when water enters the wireless charging module.
- External wireless charging coils can cause accidents and should be used with caution.
- Do not place your phone in the vehicle to charge when the driver is not in the vehicle, as this may cause a safety hazard.
- Do not place heavy objects in the charging area to avoid damaging the wireless charging module.
- If the wireless charging function does not work or does not work properly, stop using it and contact the Xpeng Automobile Service Center for service.
- It is normal for the phone to get warm after a long charge. Do not leave the charging device in the charging area after it is fully charged, as this may cause overheating problems.
- Do not use a metallic phone case, such as a phone case that supports magnetic charging (MagSafe).

Vehicle Power Supply

Front Interface of the Center Armrest Box



The front row USB port is located inside the center armrest box and can be seen after opening the center armrest box.

1. USB media source port: used for Driving Recorder USB flash drive data transfer, connecting microphones and game controllers, etc.
2. Type-C power interface: used for Driving Recorder USB flash drive data transmission, charging electronic devices, connecting microphones and game controllers, etc.; supports standard charging protocols, with a maximum supported power of 60 W.

12V power outlet: The maximum supported power is 180W.

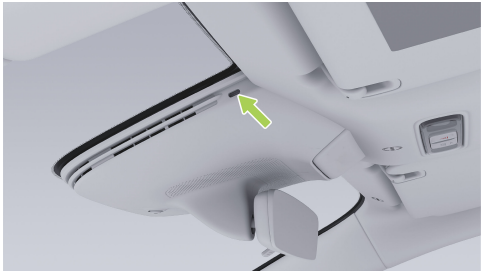
Rear Interface of the Center Armrest Box

Type-C power port: The maximum supported power is 60 W.

warning

Do not modify the Type-C port without authorization.

Rearview Mirror Interface



USB power port: The maximum supported power is 10 W.

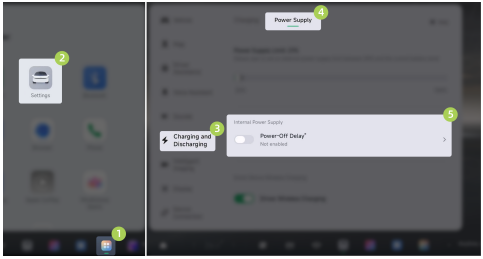
Trunk 12V Power Outlet

12V power outlet: The maximum supported power is 180W.

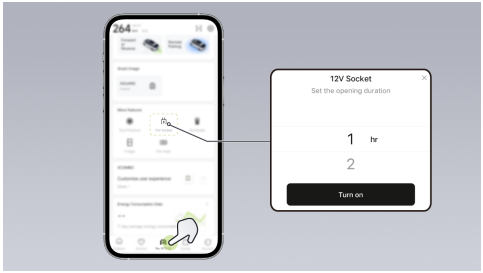
Delayed Power-Off

After the delayed power-off function is enabled, after the vehicle Power Off, the in-vehicle premium accessory expansion interface and the 12V power outlet will delay Power Off according to the set duration.

You can use the center display screen or the mobile app to turn the delayed power-off function on/off and configure it.



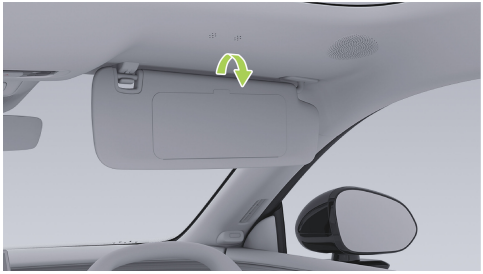
- **Central Control Screen**: on the central control screen " →**Settings**→**Charging and Discharging**→**Power Supply**"Interface, where the delayed power-off function can be enabled/disabled. Tap ＞The delayed power-off function can be set.



- **Mobile App**: In the mobile app "**XPENG**"Tap the screen "**In-vehicle Power Supply**"Tap the icon to enter the delayed power-off settings screen.

In-Vehicle Equipment

Sun Visor



Flip the sun visor downward in the direction of the arrow to block sunlight entering through the front windshield.

After folding down the sun visor, remove the end of the sun visor near the Rearview Mirror from the bracket, and turn the sun visor toward the window to block sunlight shining in through the window glass.

warning

A lowered sun visor may affect the forward field of view. If the sun visor is no longer needed, be sure to return it to the bracket.

Vanity Mirror

Both the driver and passenger sun visors are equipped with vanity mirrors, which you can use for grooming.

- Fold down the sun visor to a suitable position, flip down the vanity mirror cover panel (the vanity mirror cover panel can also be magnetically attached to the back of the sun visor), and turn on the vanity mirror light.
- After closing the vanity mirror cover, the vanity mirror lamp turns off, and fold the sun visor.

Tips

- When the vanity mirror is not in use, please close the vanity mirror cover.
- Even if the vanity mirror cover is not closed (for example, the cover is magnetically attached to the back of the sun visor), the vanity mirror light will automatically turn off when the sun visor is moved to its non-use position.

warning

Do not use the vanity mirror while driving the vehicle.

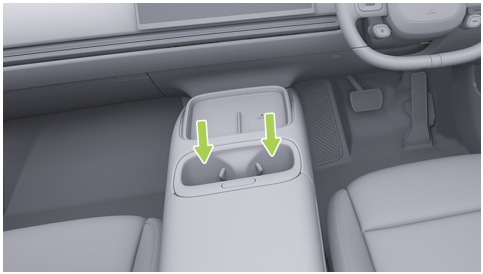
Glove Box

Open or close the glove box

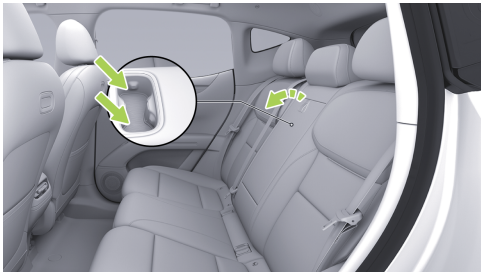
Press the glove box switch to open the glove box.

When closing, push the glove box upward until it is fully closed.

Cup Holder



The center console is equipped with cup holders for placing beverages or cups.



After folding down the center armrest of the rear seats, the rear cup holder can be used.

caution

When using the cup holder, avoid placing small fragmented items and other miscellaneous objects in it, to prevent the cup holder from jamming.

warning

When the vehicle is in motion, do not place open beverages or cups in the cup holder.

Otherwise, hot drinks in the cup may spill and scald occupants in the vehicle or damage the vehicle and the electrical equipment in the vehicle.

Expansion Interface

The vehicle is equipped with a wide range of expansion ports, which can be used with various expansion accessories.

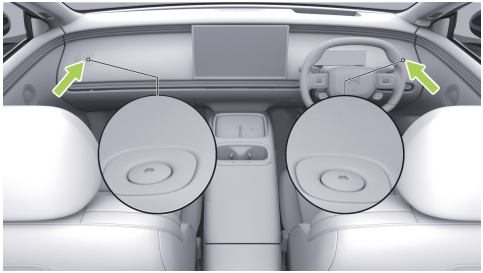
Tips

Additional accessories need to be purchased by you at a XPENG Service Center or store.

caution

- When using expansion accessories, keep them away from objects sensitive to magnetic fields, such as magnetic disks, magnetic cards, magnetic tapes, computer monitors, and watches.
- When using accessory attachments, pay attention to the operating method to avoid causing injury to the human body.

Instrument Panel 1/4 Threaded Interface

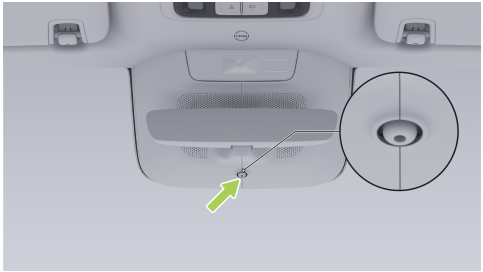


Each side of the instrument panel is equipped with a 1/4 threaded interface, which can be used to expand accessories such as phone mounts and hanging ornaments.

Tips

Before use, the bolt on the interface must be unscrewed before the expansion accessory can be installed.

Rearview Mirror 1/4 Threaded Interface



A 1/4 threaded interface is provided on the trim panel behind the Rearview Mirror for connecting accessories such as an external GoPro action camera.

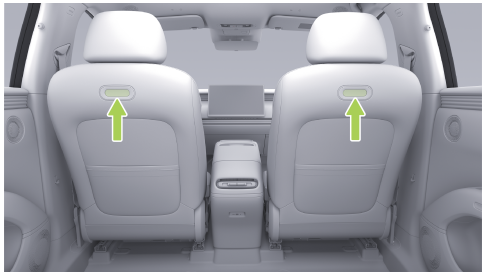
Tips

This port does not supply power. To power external accessories, use the USB port on the interior rearview mirror.

caution

The maximum load capacity of this port is 600 g. Do not exceed this limit to prevent damage to the port.

Front row seat seatback expansion port



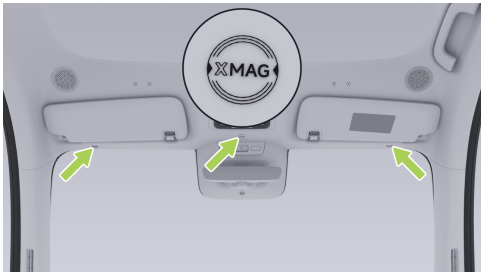
The front row seatbacks are equipped with expansion ports, which can be used to expand accessories such as small tray tables and vanity mirrors. When using them, align the expansion accessory with the port and push it in.

caution

The maximum load capacity of this port is 5 kg. Do not exceed this limit to prevent damage to the port.

Roof Magnetic Interface

There are a total of 7 hidden magnetic attachment interfaces on the roof, located at the front of the roof (3), middle (2), and rear (2). They can be used to install various auxiliary accessories, such as storage bags and privacy curtains.



- Front roof magnetic interface.

- Magnetic interface in the middle of the roof.

- Rear roof magnetic interface.

Tips

- Use the roof magnetic interface only when the vehicle is parked. Remove any add-on accessories before driving.
- For a more secure hold, attach the magnetic accessory within the area marked 'XMAG'.
- When not in use, remove any add-on accessories and store them properly.

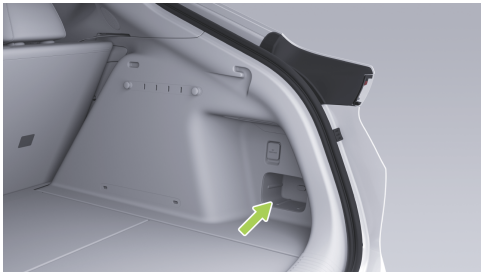
Center Console Smart Expansion Port

A smart expansion port is provided behind the pass-through storage compartment in the center console, supporting power supply with a maximum output power of 50 W. It can be used to connect external accessories such as a Fragrance diffuser, air purifier, and bluetooth speaker.

caution

- Do not place foreign objects in the smart extension port; doing so may damage the port.
- Do not connect electrical devices whose power demand exceeds the maximum power supply capacity.

Smart Expansion Interface for Trunk



The trunk is equipped with a smart expansion interface that supports power supply, with a maximum output power of 50 W. It can be used to connect external accessories such as Fragrance devices, air purifiers, and bluetooth speakers.

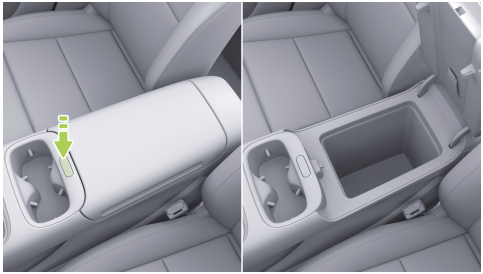
caution

- Do not place foreign objects in the smart extension port; doing so may damage the port.
- Do not connect electrical devices whose power demand exceeds the maximum power supply capacity.

Storage Space

The vehicle is equipped with multiple convenient storage spaces for storing daily items.

Center Armrest Box



Press the center armrest box switch to open the center armrest box.

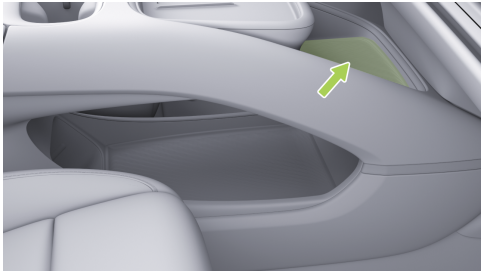
To close, lower the center armrest box lid until you hear a "click" indicating it is latched.

caution

Items placed in the center armrest compartment must not be too large, or the armrest cannot be closed. An open center armrest compartment may interfere with the driver.

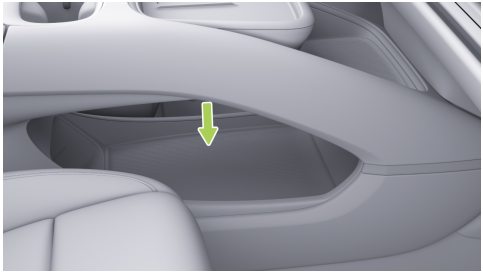
A card holder is provided inside the center armrest box for placing the vehicle license, driver's license, cards, etc.

Front Center Console Storage Compartment



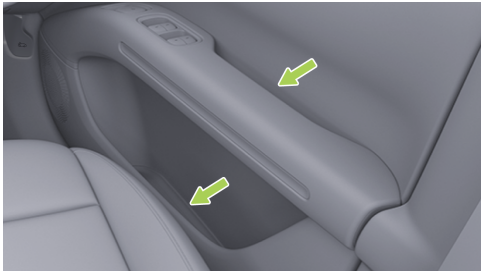
The front storage compartment is located at the front of the center console.

Pass-through Storage Compartment



The pass-through storage compartment is located beneath the front portion of the center console.

Door Storage Compartment



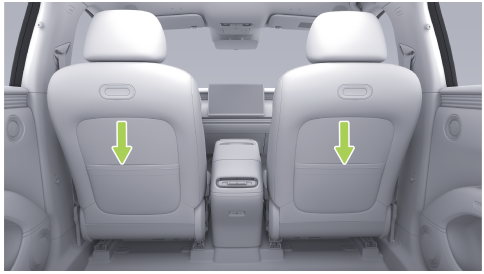
There is a phone slot at the door handle where a mobile phone can be placed.

There is a storage compartment below the door for storing items.

caution

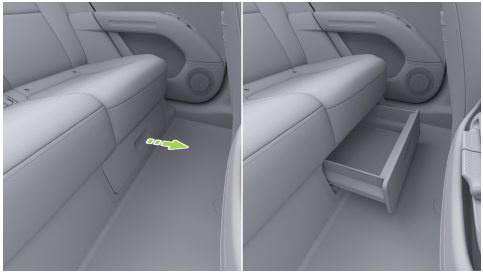
- Do not block the emergency door unlocking mechanism when placing objects in the door stowage space, as this will not work in an emergency.
- Do not place glasses, lighters or spray tanks in the storage device to avoid damage caused by jagging.

Front row seat seatback map pocket



A literature pocket is provided below the front row seatback for storing items such as receipts and magazines.

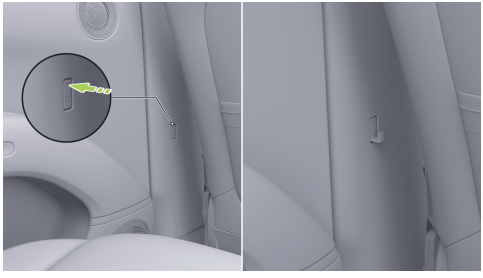
Rear Drawer



The rear drawer is located beneath the rear seats and can be used to store disposable slippers, thin blankets, and other items. Pull it outward to open it. To close it, push it in the opposite direction until it reaches the fully closed position.

Hook

A metal hook is provided on the upper part of the interior B-pillar for hanging clothes and other items.



A concealed hook is provided at the lower part of the in-vehicle B-pillar, which can be used to hang items such as garbage bags. When in use, press the top to pop it out. When not in use, simply retract it.

caution

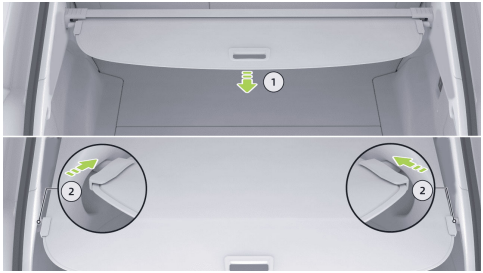
Do not hang items greater than 3 kg to avoid damaging the hook.

warning

Do not hang any hard objects (such as clothes hangers, fruit, glass bottles, etc.) on the metal hook at the upper part of the B-pillar, so as to prevent injury when the side curtain airbag deploys.

trunk cargo cover

Use of Cargo Shade



1. Pull out the cargo shade.
2. Insert both ends of the cargo shade into the fixing grooves on each side of the trunk.

warning

Do not place any objects on the cargo shade when it is deployed, as this will damage the cargo shade or cause injury to the occupants of the vehicle in the event of a collision.

Children are forbidden from climbing or sitting on the shade curtain, since this could not only cause damage to it but also result in children falling and sustaining injuries.

Removal and Installation of Cargo Shade

- Retract either end of the cargo shade and remove it.
- To install, first secure one end of the cargo shade into the fixing groove, retract the other end, and then lock it into place.

warning

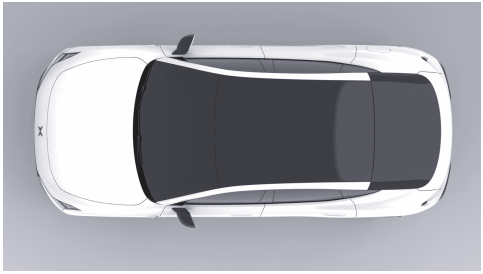
When installing the cargo shade, it is essential to ensure that both ends are fully engaged in the fixing slot or clip groove. Otherwise, in the event of emergency braking or collision, the loose cargo shade may cause personal injury.

The removed cargo shade should be properly placed and secured to prevent it from rolling around inside the car, which could pose a hazard in an emergency situation.

During operation, keep your hands away from the telescopic mechanism of the cargo shade to prevent getting pinched.

If the cargo shade is damaged, please promptly contact the Xpeng Service Center for a replacement.

Panoramic Sunroof



This vehicle is equipped with a panoramic canopy, providing you with a broader field of view, and is configured with a heat-insulating coating to enhance your user experience.

caution

After exposure to intense sunlight, the temperature of the panoramic canopy will rise. Do not touch it at this time; otherwise, there is a risk of burns.

Alcohol Lock*

Introduction

This vehicle is equipped with an alcohol interlock interface, and a LIN interface alcohol interlock can be installed (the interface must comply with the requirements of version 50436-4:2022).

Vehicle Power On and Off

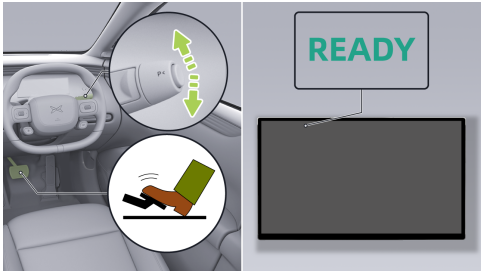
Vehicle Power On

Unlock the vehicle from outside and open the door, and the vehicle will automatically power on. At this time, the central control screen lights up, and you can use some comfort functions such as the Air Conditioner and multimedia.

When the vehicle is in the Power Off state (that is, the central control screen is off), if the remote key or mobile phone Bluetooth key is placed inside the vehicle, depress the brake pedal, and the vehicle will power on.

Starting the vehicle

The vehicle is equipped with a keyless entry system. You only need to carry a valid key with you and enter the vehicle to start the vehicle.



After the vehicle is powered on, ensure that the vehicle is in P gear, then depress the brake pedal and shift into a driving gear (D/R gear). At this time, the vehicle enters the READY state, central control screen READY The indicator light illuminates, indicating that the vehicle has started.

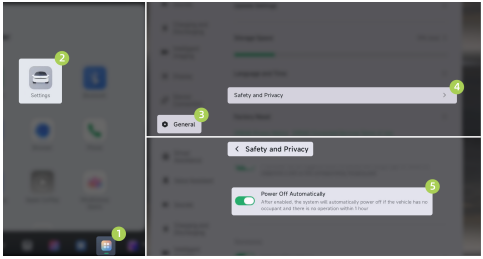
caution

Before starting the vehicle, properly adjust the seat, steering wheel, and positions of the Rearview Mirror and Side Mirrors, and ensure that you can normally depress the brake pedal.

Vehicle Power Off

When the driver seat is unoccupied, after locking the vehicle from outside, the vehicle will Power Off Automatically, and the central control screen will slowly turn off.

1-Hour Power Off Automatically

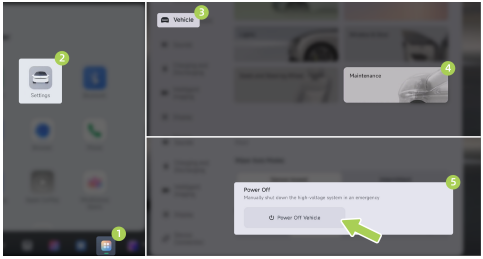


On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**General**→**Safety and Privacy**"Interface, can be opened/closed "**Power Off Automatically**"Function.

After the function is enabled, if the system detects that there is no one in the vehicle and no operation is performed within 1 hour, the vehicle will Power Off Automatically.

Emergency Power Off

Emergency Power Off via Central Control Screen



When the vehicle is stationary and emergency power-off is required, on the central control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Maintenance**"Interface, tap "**Power Off Vehicle**", the high-voltage power supply can be turned off, and the vehicle will directly Power Off.

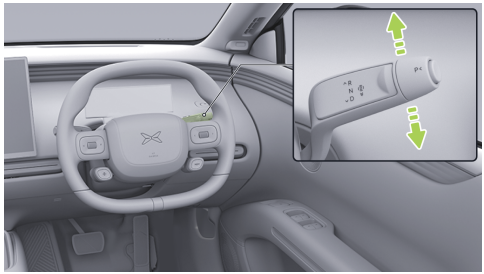
caution

It is recommended that you use this function when the vehicle cannot be powered off.

Gear Shifting Operation

Shift gears

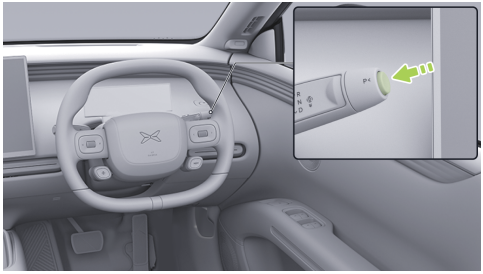
The vehicle uses a column-mounted electronic shift lever with 4 gears: Park (P), Reverse (R), Neutral (N), and D Gear (D).



You can switch the vehicle gear by the following methods:

- **Reverse Gear (R Gear):** Press the brake pedal and push the gear selector upward to the top position; the vehicle shifts to R gear, and the reversing light illuminates.
- **Neutral (N Gear):** Press the brake pedal, lightly push the shift lever upward/downward and hold it (for about 1 second) until N is displayed in the gear display area on the central control screen. The gear shifts to Neutral (N), allowing temporary parking.
- **Drive Gear (D Gear):** Press the brake pedal and push the shift lever downward to the bottom position. The gear shifts to drive (D), and the vehicle moves forward.

P: Park gear



When the vehicle is stationary, press the P gear button to engage Park.

When the vehicle is in P gear, you must depress the brake pedal before pushing the shift lever upward or downward to change gears.

i Tips

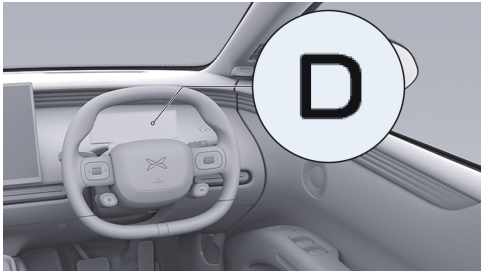
When the vehicle is in Drive (D) or Reverse (R), vehicle speed is below 3 km/h, the driver's seat belt is unfastened, and neither the brake nor accelerator pedal is depressed, opening

the driver's door will automatically shift the vehicle into Park (P).

caution

- Before leaving the vehicle or on a ramp, make sure the vehicle is in P to prevent the vehicle from moving without cause.
- When the vehicle is at high speed, pressing and holding the P key will trigger the emergency braking function.
- If you are unable to shift gears properly, you should contact the Xpeng Automobile Service Center for service.

Gear Shift Indicator Information



When shifting gears, the instrument cluster will display the current gear information.

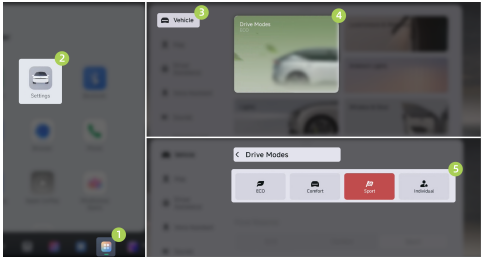
Tips

- After shifting, be sure to confirm the gear position through the instrument cluster. If the gear position displayed in the instrument cluster is inconsistent with the expected one, shift again and confirm the gear position once more.
- If the shift conditions are not met, the instrument cluster will display a text reminder. Please operate according to the prompt, and shift again after the conditions are met.

driving mode

Switch driving mode

On the central control screen “ →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**driving mode**”Interface, switch driving mode.

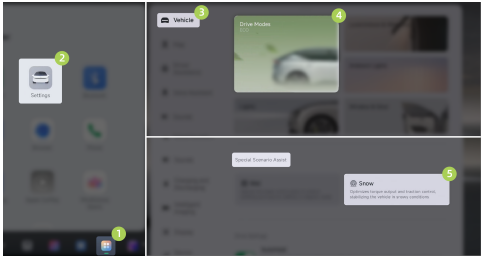


- **Energy Saving:**Slower power response can extend the driving range.
- **Comfort:**Power response is smoother, and the ride experience is more comfortable.
- **Sport:**Fast power response for an exceptionally strong driving pleasure experience.
- **Personalization:**Freely adjust multiple function parameters and enjoy personalized driving pleasure.

Snow Mode

Snow mode is suitable for roads covered with ice and snow, and is also suitable for wet and slippery muddy roads, grassland, and other road surfaces. After the mode is enabled, the driving stability of the vehicle is improved, and vehicle skidding is reduced.

On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**driving mode**”Interface, turn Snow Mode on/off.



Tips

- You can also use voice commands to turn Snow Mode on/off.
- After the vehicle passes over special road surfaces, please turn off Snow mode.
- After the mode is enabled, the functions in the driving mode cannot be adjusted. After exiting the mode, it returns to the driving mode from before entry.
- The next time the vehicle is powered on, Snow Mode is off by default.

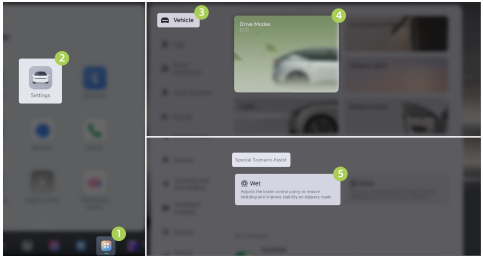
caution

- Snow mode can improve the vehicle's driving stability, but you still need to drive carefully and avoid sudden acceleration or sudden deceleration.
- Pay attention to the surrounding environment of the vehicle, otherwise it may cause vehicle damage.

Wetland Mode

Wet Mode is suitable for road surfaces such as waterlogged roads, wet and slippery asphalt pavement, and underground garages. After the mode is enabled, it improves the driving stability of the vehicle and reduces vehicle skidding.

On the central control screen " → **Settings→vehicle→driving mode**"Interface, turn Wetland Mode on/off.



Tips

- You can also use voice commands to turn Wetland Mode on/off.
- After the vehicle passes through special road surfaces, please turn off Wet Mode.
- After the mode is enabled, the functions in the driving mode cannot be adjusted. After exiting the mode, it returns to the driving mode from before entry.
- The next time the vehicle is powered on, Wetland Mode is off by default.

caution

- Wet mode can improve the vehicle's driving stability, but you still need to drive carefully and avoid sudden acceleration or sudden deceleration.
- Pay attention to the surrounding environment of the vehicle, otherwise it may cause vehicle damage.

X-pedal Regeneration

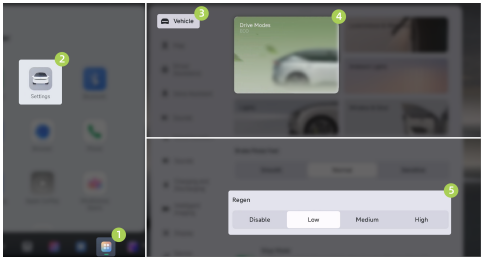
Introduction to Regeneration

When the vehicle brakes or coasts, the Regeneration system starts working, converting kinetic energy into electrical energy and storing it in the power battery to extend the vehicle driving range.

Switch the regenerative braking level

On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**driving mode**”On the

interface, the regenerative braking level can be set.



- Off: Regeneration function off.
- Low: After the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle speed decreases relatively slowly, and ride comfort is better.
- Medium: Balances deceleration and comfort, preferred for daily use.
- High: After the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle speed decreases relatively quickly, and the deceleration feel is relatively obvious.

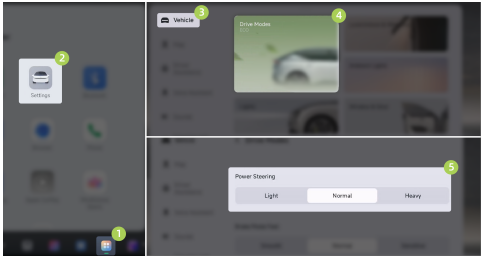
Tips

- When Regeneration significantly reduces the vehicle speed, the brake lights will automatically illuminate to remind following vehicles that the preceding vehicle is decelerating.
- The amount of Regeneration depends on factors such as the current power battery status, the set kinetic energy recovery level, and vehicle speed.
- When the vehicle decelerates, a slight braking sensation and motor noise are normal phenomena.

Power Steering

Switch Power Steering

On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**driving mode**"Interface for setting the Power Steering mode.



- **Light:**The vehicle provides greater steering assistance, requiring the driver to apply less torque to turn the steering wheel.
- **Moderate:**The vehicle provides moderate steering assist, preferred for daily use.
- **Steady:**The vehicle provides less steering assist, requiring the driver to apply greater torque to turn the steering wheel.

Tips

- When changing the Power Steering mode while driving, hold the steering wheel firmly to prevent the change in steering feel from affecting vehicle control.
- For safety reasons, switching Power Steering modes is not supported in the following situations:
  - When the driver is making aggressive steering maneuvers;
  - When the vehicle speed is above 150 km/h;
  - When the vehicle is in driver assistance mode.

Agile Steering*

Function Overview

The agile steering function can reduce the turning radius by applying braking force to the inner wheel when the vehicle makes a low-speed sharp turn, making the vehicle turn more flexibly.

Enable/Disable Agile Steering

You can turn Agile Steering on/off in either of the following ways:

- On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**driving mode**"Interface, turn the agile steering function on/off.

Function Activation

After the function is enabled, it is automatically activated when the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is in D Gear;
- The driver is in the seat;
- The brake pedal is not depressed;
- Vehicle speed is below 15 km/h;
- The steering wheel angle is greater than or equal to 460°;
- The slope gradient is less than or equal to 10°;
- Brake-related functions are not activated (such as automatic parking, emergency braking, ESC, ABS, dTCS, HDC, HHC, AEB, etc.);
- The HDC switch is not turned on;
- Brake disc temperature is below 400°C;
- No system fault.

i Tips

When the function is activated, the vehicle may produce slight noise and vibration, which is normal.

Exit Function

If any of the following conditions occurs, the function will automatically exit:

- Shift the gear to a gear other than D.
- The steering wheel angle is less than 420°;
- Press the brake pedal;
- The driver leaves the seat;
- Vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h;
- Power Off the vehicle or manually turn off the agile steering switch;
- Brake-related functions are activated (such as Auto Hold, emergency braking, ESC, ABS, dTCS, HHC, AEB, etc.);

- HDC switch on;
- Continuous operating time exceeds 40 seconds;
- Reach the maximum service life;
- Brake system malfunction;
- Sudden acceleration;
- Wheel lock-up;
- The slope gradient is greater than 10°.

Status Indicator Light

When the agile steering function is activated, the central control screen displays Indicator light.

Braking Operation

Electronic Parking Brake System EPB

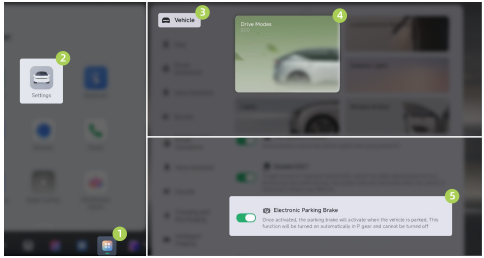
The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) can apply braking force to the vehicle's rear wheels to keep the vehicle stationary.

After the vehicle comes to a complete stop, press the P gear switch, and the vehicle activates the Electronic Parking Brake. At this time, the central control screen displays Ⓟ Indicator light.

Close the driver's side door, depress the brake pedal, and move the shift lever up or down to shift from Park (P) to Reverse (R) or D Gear, and the vehicle automatically releases the EPB. This Ⓟ The indicator light turns off.

Enable/Release EPB via the center display

On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**driving mode**"Interface, enable or release EPB.



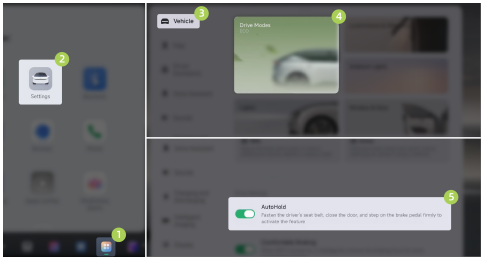
caution

- If the vehicle does not operate/close the EPB correctly, contact your Xpeng Vehicle Service Centre for service immediately.
- The EPB may not be able to hold the vehicle stationary on excessive gradients, which require the brake pedal to be pressed to prevent drifting.
- Never drive the vehicle without the EPB off, as damage to the vehicle may result.

Auto Hold AUTOHOLD

Auto Hold can brake all four wheels and keep the vehicle stationary in scenarios requiring a short stop, such as waiting at a red light, and the driver does not need to keep the brake pedal depressed for a long time or frequently apply the Electronic Parking Brake.

On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**driving mode**"Interface, can be opened/closed **Auto Hold**Function.



After Auto Hold is enabled, press the brake pedal. When the vehicle decelerates to a standstill, the Auto Hold function is automatically activated, and the instrument cluster displays Ⓐ Indicator light.

When the vehicle needs to start moving, simply depress the accelerator pedal to release Auto Hold.

When Auto Hold is active, if any of the following situations occurs, Auto Hold automatically exits and enables the Electronic Parking Brake:

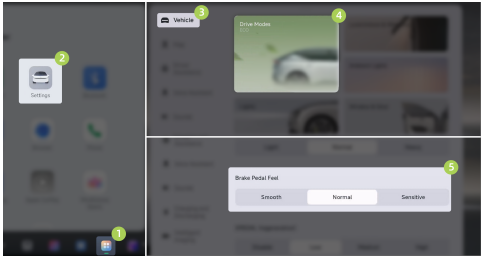
- The driver unfastens the seat belt.
- Open the driver-side door.
- Exceeded Auto Hold operating time.
- Shift the gear to Park (P gear).

i Tips

AUTOHOLD can only be activated when the driver's door is closed, the driver's seat belt is fastened, and the gear is in D or R.

Brake Pedal Feel

On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**driving mode**"Interface, where Brake Pedal Feel can be set.

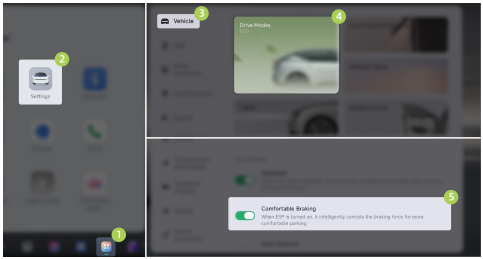


- **Gentle:**The braking power response is smooth, and the ride experience is more comfortable.
- **Moderate:**Brake power response is moderate, balancing driving pleasure and ride comfort.
- **Sensitive:**Braking response is quick, making driving control more confident and effortless.

Comfortable Braking

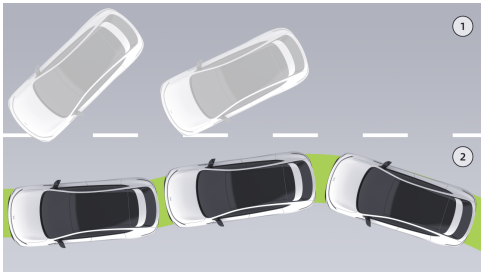
When the driver brakes, the vehicle may pitch forward (brake nodding). Comfortable Braking can intelligently and smoothly adjust the braking force to alleviate the vehicle's forward pitch, providing the driver and passengers with a more comfortable driving and riding experience.

On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**driving mode**"Interface, turn the Comfortable Braking function on/off.



Electronic Stability Program ESC

The Electronic Stability Program ESC can effectively reduce the risk of vehicle sideslip or tail swing and ensure vehicle driving stability by applying braking to one or more wheels and other means.



1. Turning off the ESC function: the vehicle is more likely to experience sideslip or fishtailing.
2. Enable the ESC function: can reduce the risk of vehicle sideslip or tail swing.

During daily driving, it is recommended that you always keep the ESC function enabled.

Slip-Start from Standstill

When the wheels spin in place (when starting on icy, snowy, muddy, or other road surfaces, or in other situations), you may temporarily turn off Electronic Stability Control. After freeing the vehicle, please turn on the Electronic Stability Control function again.

On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**driving mode**"Interface, where the ESC function can be turned on/off.

ESC Indicator Light

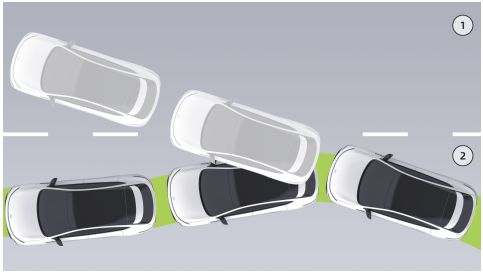
When the ESC function is turned off, the central control screen displays Indicator lamp.

The central control screen flashes continuously when ESC is actively intervening. Indicator light. When ESC malfunctions, this indicator light remains on.

warning

- The Electronic Stability Control is a safety assist function. When the Electronic Stability Program is turned off, the stability control applied to the vehicle will be reduced. Do not turn off the Electronic Stability Control except in special situations (such as freeing a stuck vehicle).
- The Electronic Stability Control cannot handle all situations or road conditions. The driver is always responsible for operating the vehicle safely and prudently, and for complying with applicable laws and traffic regulations.
- If the ESC malfunctions, immediately contact an XPENG service center for inspection and repair.

Anti-lock Braking System ABS



1. For vehicles not equipped with ABS, if the front wheels lock, the vehicle may lose steering capability. If the rear wheels lock, the vehicle may fishtail.
2. For vehicles equipped with ABS, ABS prevents wheel lockup when maximum braking force is applied. Under most road conditions, it can improve the vehicle's steering control performance during emergency braking.

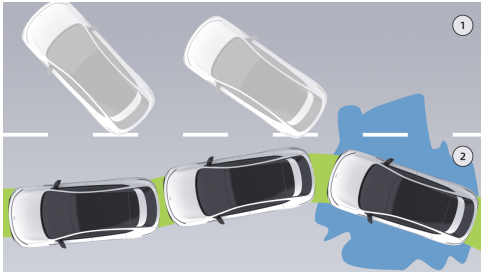
In an emergency, you can fully depress the brake pedal to apply braking to the vehicle. ABS changes the brake pressure applied to each wheel according to the available braking force, preventing wheel lockup and ensuring a safe stop.

When ABS intervenes, vibration of the brake pedal may be felt. Do not panic; drive subjectively according to the road conditions.

warning

The driver should always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle ahead and be aware of hazardous situations while driving. Although ABS can improve braking distance, it cannot overcome the laws of physics, nor can it prevent dangers caused by tire skidding (for example, when a layer of water between the road surface and the tires prevents the tires from directly contacting the road surface).

Distributed Traction Control System dTCS



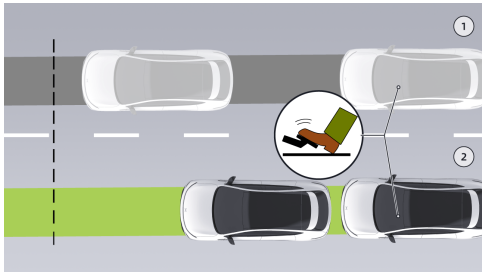
1. For vehicles not equipped with dTCS, the drive wheels will slip when the vehicle starts or accelerates rapidly on slippery road surfaces such as ice and snow.
2. For vehicles equipped with dTCS, dTCS controls brake pressure and vehicle torque output to minimize wheel spin to the greatest extent possible.

Electronic Brakeforce Distribution EBD

EBD is a part of ABS. During normal vehicle braking, EBD balances the distribution of braking force between the front and rear wheels according to the vehicle load.

EBD appropriately distributes the force generated by the braking system to the four wheels according to the adhesion conditions between each wheel and the ground, so that the braking force can achieve optimum efficiency, significantly shorten the braking distance, maintain vehicle stability during braking, and improve driving safety.

Brake Assist System EBA



1. For vehicles not equipped with EBA, during emergency braking, it is not possible to depress the brake pedal with sufficient force within a short period of time, and the braking system does not generate the maximum braking force, resulting in an increased braking distance and a higher risk of accidents.
2. For vehicles equipped with EBA, in an emergency, quickly depress and hold the brake pedal, and EBA will generate a braking

pressure greater than that during normal braking, enabling the braking system to produce, in the shortest possible time, the pressure required for the vehicle's maximum deceleration, thereby obtaining the shortest braking distance.

Secondary Collision Mitigation Braking System MCB

After the first collision of the vehicle (triggering airbag deployment), MCB actively applies braking to the vehicle to reduce the vehicle speed or stop the vehicle, thereby reducing the probability and severity of secondary collision accidents.

Tips

- This function is enabled by default and cannot be turned off.
- After the vehicle stops, EPB engagement will be requested and the transmission will be shifted into P gear.

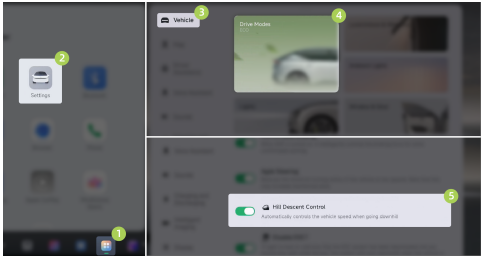
caution

A fault in the brake system pressure build-up function will cause an MCB function fault.

Hill Descent Assist HDC

HDC can actively brake the vehicle when the vehicle is descending a slope, ensuring that the driver can drive down a steep slope safely at a constant speed.

On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**driving mode**"Interface, where HDC Hill Descent Control can be turned on/off.



After the HDC function is enabled, when driving on a downhill road section, the hill descent control function is automatically activated, and the instrument cluster displays Indicator light. At this time, the system will automatically control the downhill speed.

The HDC function can be activated only when all of the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle speed is greater than 8 km/h but does not exceed 35 km/h.
- A slope with a gradient greater than or equal to 5%.
- Brake disc temperature is normal.
- The ESC system is normal.

warning

HDC can actively keep the vehicle's speed down, but not beyond the dynamics, and for safety reasons, the driver should follow the actual conditions of the vehicle. Apply the brakes in a timely manner to avoid an accident when the vehicle is downhill too quickly.

Hill Start Assist HHC

Hill start assist can help you automatically maintain brake pressure for a short time (about 2 seconds) between releasing the brake pedal and pressing the accelerator pedal when starting on a slope greater than 5%, preventing the vehicle from rolling backward.

warning

The HHC is capable of providing brake assistance, but not exceeding the rules of kinematics, and for safety reasons, the driver

should, depending on the vehicle, Apply the brakes in a timely manner to avoid an accident when the vehicle is rolling off a slope.

High-Speed Tire Blowout Stability Control

Introduction

The high-speed tire blowout stability control function is applicable to the Combo where a single tire blowout occurs, or the front and rear tires on the same side blow out simultaneously, while the vehicle is driving at high speed.

When a tire blowout occurs while the vehicle is traveling at high speed, the system will quickly respond to changes in the vehicle posture, automatically turn on the hazard warning lights, and reduce the vehicle speed to a safe speed, so as to assist the driver in maintaining stable vehicle driving, and prompt the vehicle to pull over and stop safely.

High-speed Tire Blowout Stability Control Operating Conditions:

- All vehicle components are operating normally.
- During straight-line driving, the vehicle's maximum speed must not exceed 170 km/h.
- When the vehicle is driving on a curve, its maximum speed must not exceed 80 km/h.

Operation

1. When driving the vehicle manually, if a front tire on one side blows out, or the front and rear tires on the same side blow out simultaneously, the high-speed tire blowout stability control function will be triggered. The system will automatically turn on the hazard warning lights and automatically reduce the vehicle speed to a safe speed. The central control screen will display the specific tire blowout position and text prompts, and issue a voice prompt.
   - When a tire blowout occurs and the vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h, the system will

limit the vehicle's maximum speed to 60 km/h.

- When a tire blowout occurs and the vehicle speed is below 60 km/h, the system will limit the vehicle's maximum speed to 25 km/h.

2. Please hold the steering wheel firmly. After the vehicle speed decreases to a safe speed, the central control screen will remind you through text prompts and voice prompts to safely pull over and park the vehicle at the roadside. After parking, shift into P.
3. After observing the surroundings and confirming that there is no risk, the driver and passengers in the vehicle shall move to a safe position outside the vehicle, place a warning triangle behind the vehicle in accordance with regulatory requirements to prevent secondary accidents, and contact 小鹏汽车 to request roadside assistance service.

Tips

- When the vehicle's speed drops to a safe speed after a tire blow, the vehicle will no longer be able to accelerate beyond that safe speed. To remove the safe speed limit, the vehicle can be powered down and then powered back up before the restriction can be lifted.
- The hazard warning lamps will switch on automatically when the high speed flat tire stability control function is triggered. You can manually turn off the hazard warning lights after you have confirmed that the surrounding environment is not at risk.
- When high speed flat tire stability control is triggered, the steering wheel will become heavier and more effort will be required to turn the steering wheel to assist the driver in maintaining a steady vehicle before safely stopping. To return steering feel to the pre-blow condition, the vehicle can be powered down and then re-powered and restored.

Warnings, Limitations and Precautions

- High-speed tire blowout stability control is a driver assistance function. It cannot handle all traffic, weather, and road conditions, and it does not function properly in all situations. Affected by various factors, this function may fail, the vehicle may in some situations exhibit behavior that does not meet expectations, or its response may be untimely.
- After a tire blowout, the driver should firmly grip the steering wheel and control the driving direction of the vehicle. It is strictly prohibited to turn the steering wheel sharply, because sharply turning the steering wheel may cause the vehicle to lose control.
- Please remain attentive at all times while driving. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for safe driving and must comply with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

Four-Wheel Drive System*

Introduction

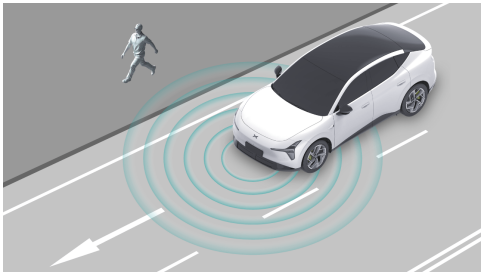
The vehicle drive system is Timely Four-wheel Drive and does not require manual operation. The system intelligently switches between two-wheel drive mode and four-wheel drive mode according to the vehicle operating conditions.

When the vehicle is driving on a relatively good road surface, in order to ensure driving comfort and economy, the vehicle will preferentially use two-wheel drive mode, and switch to four-wheel drive mode when the driver has a high power demand; when the vehicle is driving on wet and slippery roads, muddy roads, icy and snowy roads, sandy roads, or complex off-road surfaces, as well as under conditions such as medium- and high-speed acceleration and high-dynamic cornering, the Timely Four-wheel Drive system can intervene in a timely manner and, through intelligent torque distribution, ensure the traction of all four wheels, achieve optimal passability and

safety, and ensure the stability and comfort of vehicle driving.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System AVAS

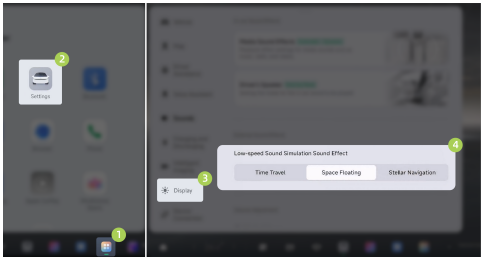
Function Overview



When the vehicle is driving at a speed lower than 30 km/h, it emits a simulated sound to alert nearby pedestrians and vehicles to safety.

Center Control Screen Settings Items

On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**Sound**"Interface, where you can set the exterior low-speed simulated sound effect.



Vehicle Use Recommendations

Driving Precautions

For your safety and that of your passengers, the following checks must be performed on the vehicle before each trip:

- Check whether there are obstacles around the vehicle.
- Check whether there is any abnormal fluid accumulation under the vehicle (air conditioner water is normal).
- Check whether each tire has abnormal wear and whether the tire pressure is normal.
- Check whether the shipped items are securely loaded.
- Check whether the vehicle tools are carried.
- Check whether the wiper system is operating properly.
- Check whether the vehicle lighting system is functioning properly.
- Check whether the windows are clear and whether the mirrors provide a good field of view.
- Check whether the seats and seat belts are functioning properly.
- Check the vehicle driving range and whether there are warning messages in the center display indicator lights.
- Check whether there is any debris interfering with the brake pedal and accelerator pedal area.

Please ensure that all of the above aspects meet the requirements; otherwise, your driving safety will be affected. If you need assistance, please promptly contact the XPENG service center.

warning

Do not drive the vehicle while wearing high heels or slippers.

Long-distance driving

Before long-distance driving, please be sure to pay attention to the following items:

- To ensure your travel safety, please check the vehicle condition before long-distance driving.
- Plan the travel route in advance to ensure that the vehicle has sufficient driving range.
- Observe traffic rules, take regular breaks, and do not drive distracted.

- Bring sufficient water and necessary food, and replenish energy in a timely manner.

Night Driving

At night, the field of view is shorter. When you drive the vehicle at night, be sure to pay attention to the following:

- Do not drive while fatigued.
- Before driving, check whether the horn and the vehicle lighting system are functioning properly.
- Pay attention to the road conditions within the headlight illumination range.
- Use the high and low beam headlights correctly.
- Do not look directly at the headlamps of oncoming vehicles.
- To avoid a collision with the vehicle ahead caused by untimely reaction in an emergency, appropriately increase the following distance.
- Avoid overtaking at night whenever possible. If overtaking is necessary, do so only after confirming that the surrounding conditions and road environment permit it.
- When visibility is affected, drive cautiously at low speed, pay attention to the surroundings and road environment, and be ready to brake at any time in an emergency.

Household Vehicle Precautions

Child Passenger

When traveling with children, to ensure their safety while riding in the vehicle, please be sure to note the following:

- Never allow children to ride in the vehicle without protection.
- Do not leave children alone in the vehicle.
- Do not ride with a child in your arms.
- Do not allow children to stand inside the vehicle, kneel on the seats, or extend any part of their body out of the window.
- When children are seated in the rear row, it is recommended to enable the child lock for the

doors to prevent children from opening the doors by mistake.

- Children under 12 years old (or shorter than 1.5 m) should not ride in the front passenger seat.
- Children under 12 years old (or shorter than 1.5 m) must use a suitable child safety seat when riding in the vehicle, maintain a correct sitting posture, and fasten the seat belt.
- If a rear-facing child safety seat is installed on the rear seat of the vehicle, it is necessary to appropriately move the corresponding front seat forward; if a forward-facing child safety seat is installed on the rear seat of the vehicle, it may be necessary to adjust the height position of the seat head restraint.
- If your vehicle is equipped with the driver's audio system, you can enable Private Mode while the child is resting to prevent music, navigation broadcasts, etc. from waking the child.

Elderly Passenger Travel

When traveling with elderly passengers, to ensure their safety while riding, please be sure to note the following:

- Please ensure that elderly passengers maintain a correct sitting posture and fasten their seat belts.
- Do not leave elderly people alone in the vehicle.
- Open the window or Air Conditioner moderately to keep the air inside the vehicle fresh, which can prevent elderly people from experiencing symptoms such as headache and dizziness.
- When the vehicle encounters potholes or bends, please slow down and pass through slowly to avoid large swaying movements that may cause symptoms such as dizziness and palpitations in the elderly.
- When an elderly person is seated in the rear row, it is recommended to enable the child

lock for the doors to avoid the elderly person opening the door by mistake.

- If your vehicle is equipped with the driver's audio system, you can enable Private Mode while an elderly person is resting to prevent music, navigation announcements, etc. from waking them up.

Pet Travel

When traveling with pets, to ensure their safety while riding in the vehicle, please be sure to note the following:

- Do not leave pets alone in the vehicle.
- Do not allow pets to sit in the front row, so as not to obstruct the line of sight.
- Properly secure pets while driving, for example by using an appropriate pet carrier.
- Secure your pet before opening the door to avoid accidents involving the pet.
- Avoid fully opening the windows for ventilation as much as possible, and close the windows near the pet to prevent the pet from sticking its head out of the window and causing an accident.

Special Combo Vehicle Use

Travel in Rainy Weather

When driving in rainy weather, your field of view may be obstructed. Please be sure to note the following:

- Ensure that the vehicle wiper function and wiper blades operate properly.
- Ensure that the vehicle lighting system is functioning properly.
- Ensure the tire pressure is normal.
- Ensure that the vehicle braking system is functioning properly.
- Turn on the rear fog light to alert road users behind you.

Driving Through Water

When driving the vehicle through water, to avoid vehicle damage or functional failure, be sure to pay attention to the following:

- Before driving through water, reduce speed or stop to observe the water level. The water depth must not be higher than the lower edge of the vehicle body. When the water depth or road conditions are unclear, the vehicle must detour. Do not force the vehicle through.
- When driving through water, do not stop; keep driving at a low speed (vehicle speed must not exceed 10 km/h).
- After driving through water, gently apply the brakes to remove water and restore braking performance. Except in emergency situations, avoid emergency braking as much as possible.
- After driving through water, perform the following checks immediately when the vehicle is safe:
- Lightly depress the brake pedal. The heat generated by friction can dry the brake pads and check whether the brakes are working properly.
- Check whether the horn is working.
- Turn the steering wheel to check whether the power steering is functioning properly.
- Check whether the exterior lights are working properly.

warning

- Before wading the vehicle, check the water depth to ensure the vehicle is safe to pass through.
- Do not wade for long periods of time to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- Do not continue to use the vehicle and contact the Xpeng Automobile Service Centre immediately after water ingress is detected, to avoid personal injury or vehicle damage due to mechanical damage to the power battery or high voltage safety.

Travel in Cold Weather

When traveling in cold weather, to avoid traffic accidents and ensure your comfortable ride, please be sure to note the following:

- In cold weather, you can turn on the in-vehicle Air Conditioner heating function in advance via the mobile app.
- Turn on the front/rear windshield defrosting (mirror heating) function in time while the vehicle is driving.
- If driving on icy, rainy, or snowy roads, anti-skid chains should also be installed.
- When the vehicle is driven on icy or snowy roads, be sure to reduce the vehicle speed and drive carefully, and avoid operations such as emergency braking, rapid acceleration, or sharp steering as much as possible, otherwise it may cause the vehicle to go out of control and lead to a traffic accident.
- When driving on roads in winter, replace all four wheels with winter tires at the same time, and all four wheels must use winter tires of the same diameter, brand, construction, and tread pattern.
- If the road surface is icy, snow-covered, or in weather conditions such as low-temperature rain or snow, it is recommended to park the vehicle on a gentle slope and shift the gear to P gear. If necessary, place wheel chocks.

Travel in Hot Weather

When traveling in hot weather, to ensure passenger comfort, you can perform the following operations:

- In hot weather, you can turn on the vehicle Air Conditioner cooling function in advance through the mobile app.
- Before entering the vehicle, please open the windows for ventilation to disperse the hot air inside the vehicle.
- When a passenger is seated, promptly turn on the seat ventilation function.
- Turn on the Air Conditioner. When the Air Conditioner is just turned on, switch to Fresh Air first to allow the hot air inside the vehicle to dissipate fully, then switch to Recirculate to retain the cool air and reduce the temperature quickly.

High-Altitude Driving

When driving in plateau and mountainous areas, due to environmental influences such as geographic conditions and varying altitudes, vehicle performance may differ greatly. Please note the following:

- Prepare oxygen, medications, and other equipment needed for high-altitude sickness.
- Before the vehicle goes up or down a long slope, check the condition of the brakes, steering, drivetrain, and wheels.
- After entering high-altitude areas, check the tire pressure frequently, and lower the tire pressure appropriately if necessary.
- Frequent braking by repeatedly depressing the brake pedal will cause the temperature of the brake fluid, brake discs, and brake pads to rise, reducing braking performance and, in severe cases, may lead to brake failure.
- Due to the impact of plateau environments, the vehicle driving range may be reduced. Pay timely attention to the vehicle status.

Driving on Smooth/Slippery Roads

On smooth road surfaces such as epoxy flooring, emery flooring, and tiled roads, the coefficient of adhesion is extremely low. Especially when there are water stains, the coefficient of adhesion is even lower and may even approach that of an icy surface. When driving on smooth or slippery road surfaces, please note the following:

- The vehicle is prone to skidding. Reduce speed and drive slowly, and avoid operations such as sudden acceleration, sudden braking, or sharply turning the steering wheel.
- Braking distance becomes longer. Maintain a sufficient following distance and pay attention to road conditions at all times to avoid rear-end collisions or other accidents.
- The vehicle can easily go out of control. Overtake with caution, and do not overtake blindly or accelerate sharply during overtaking.

Trailer Mode*

Introduction

Your vehicle is capable of towing a caravan, and this function can be used only after Trailer Mode is enabled on the center display. When towing a caravan, the driver must meet the corresponding driving qualification requirements.

Before deciding to tow a caravan, you should first check the regulations regarding motor vehicles in your area. Since regulations vary by region, you need to select a caravan of appropriate specifications and consult your local service provider before towing.

caution

- When towing a caravan, please comply with the relevant local laws and regulations. Unauthorized modifications are strictly prohibited.
- During the new vehicle break-in period, do not tow a caravan.
- When not towing a caravan, stow the towing device.
- Towing a caravan equipped with an electric service brake is not permitted.

Driving Instructions

Towing a caravan will affect your vehicle's handling performance, braking performance, etc. For your safety and that of your passengers, to ensure safe caravan towing, please follow the driving recommendations below:

- Start smoothly and avoid rapid acceleration and emergency braking, especially when driving on slippery road surfaces, as skidding may cause the vehicle to go out of control. Crosswinds and rough roads may cause the vehicle to sway, seriously affecting vehicle control. Under any circumstances, as soon as you notice even slight signs of vehicle sway, hold the steering wheel firmly with both hands and immediately reduce the vehicle speed slowly. Do not attempt to eliminate the sway by increasing the vehicle speed.

- Avoid operating the tractor without load while the trailer is loaded as much as possible. If this cannot be avoided, drive at a low speed due to unreasonable load distribution.
- When towing a caravan, the vehicle's braking distance will increase. Therefore, increase the driving distance from the vehicle in front.

Status Indicator Light

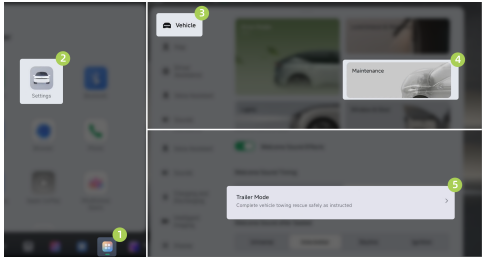
The trailer wiring harness is normal, and the ESP function is normal.

The trailer wiring harness is normal, but the Electronic Stability Program may malfunction, making Trailer Mode unavailable.

Trailer wiring harness malfunction, trailer turn signal malfunction, Electronic Stability Program malfunction, Trailer Mode cannot be used normally.

Opening and Closing

Turn On



- When the vehicle is in P gear, on the central control screen “ →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Maintenance**”Interface, can be opened/closed “**Trailer Mode**”。

caution

- A secondary confirmation is required each time Trailer Mode for a caravan is enabled, and it must be performed while in P gear.

- After Trailer Mode for caravans is enabled, all other assisted driving functions cannot be enabled except the AEB and FCW functions.

The trailer caravan mode cannot be enabled when the following situations occur:

- The vehicle is not in P gear.
- Electronic Stability Program malfunction.
- Lock mode during after-sales sensor calibration.
- When Lift Mode or Shipping Mode is enabled.

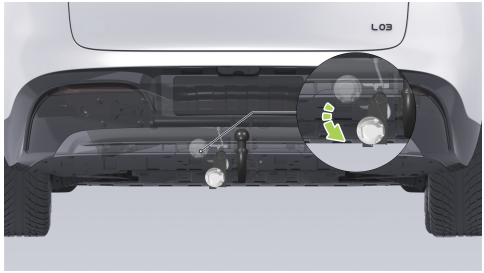
caution

Towing mode must be switched on when towing, otherwise damage to the vehicle may occur.

Close

After disconnecting the connection between the caravan and the tow hook and disconnecting the power take-off connector of the towed caravan, tap the central control screen to exit Trailer Mode.

Trailer RV power take-off connector

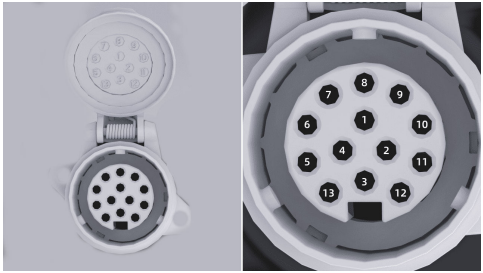


The caravan power take-off connector is installed beside the tow hook and must be manually rotated downward during use.

caution

When the power take-off connector is not connected to the trailer caravan interface, do not use a high-pressure water gun to clean

the electrical connector directly, as water may enter the connector and cause damage.



The electrical connector equipped on this vehicle is a 13-pin wiring socket, and the corresponding standard for the power outlet is ISO 11446:2004. The specific pin functions are as follows:

Pin Number	Color	Function
1	brown and white	Left Turn Signal
2	blue	rear fog light or reversing light
3	black	Ground wire
4	white and red	Right Turn Signal
5	yellow-green	Right Driving Light
6	Grayish yellow	Brake Light
7	green and white	Left Driving Light
8	blue-red	Reverse Light
9	red	Connect the battery

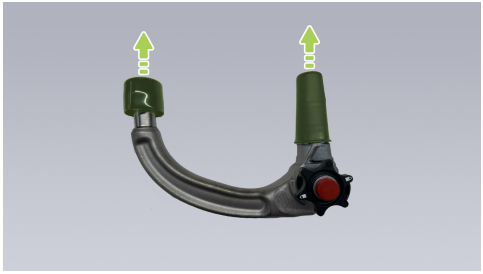
10	black	Battery or refrigerator
11	black	Ground wire
12	/	Spare
13	black	Ground wire

Manual Rear Towing Device

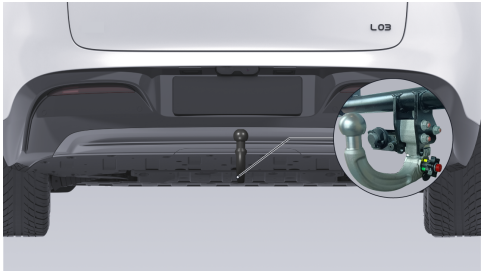
Pre-installation

1. The manual rear towing device is located in the trunk tow hook storage bag. Remove it when you need to use it.

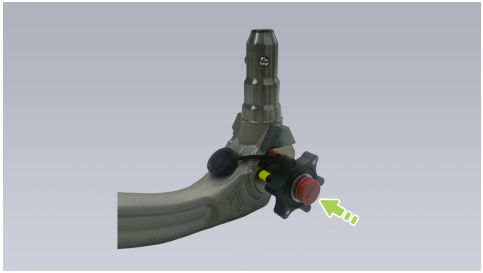
2. Remove the ball joint protective cover.



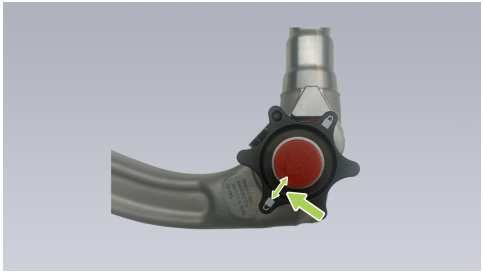
3. The crossmember with mounting bracket for the manual rear towing device is located at the rear of the vehicle, as shown in the figure below after installation.



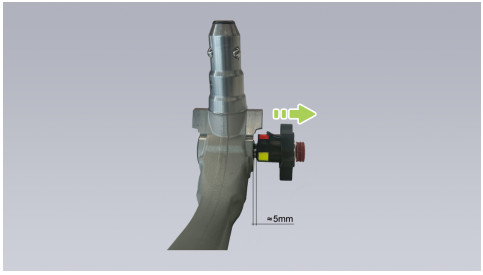
4. Before installing the manual rear towing device, ensure that it is in the pre-installed state. If the key is not inserted into the lock cylinder, insert the key in the direction of the arrow shown in the figure.



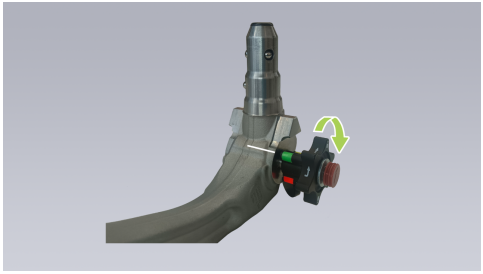
5. Turn the key so that the arrow on the key aligns with the unlock icon on the handle.



6. Pull the handle to the right by hand so that a 5 mm gap is created between the rear towing device and the handle.

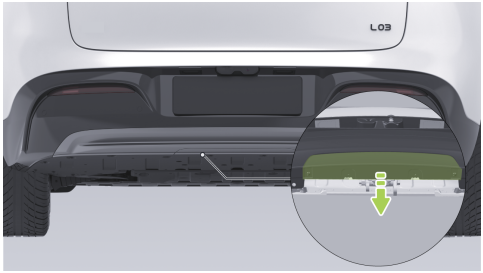


7. Keep the handle in the pulled position and turn the handle in the direction of the arrow until a click is heard. At this time, the green mark on the handle is aligned with the protruding position of the manual rear towing device, indicating that the pre-installation step is completed.



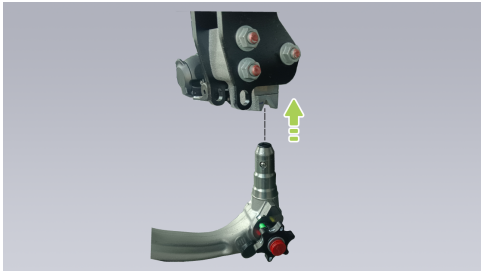
Installation

1. Use a suitable tool to remove the rear tow hook cover.



2. Remove the dust cover at the lower end of the cross member.

3. Insert the manual rear towing device into the crossmember connecting sleeve in the direction indicated by the arrow.



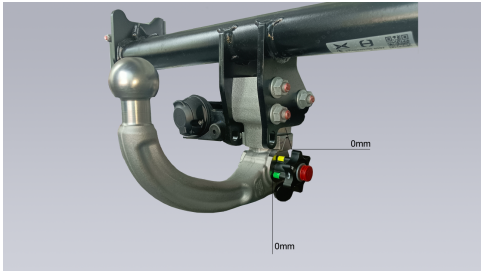
warning

- During insertion, ensure that hands are kept away from the handle area to prevent potential pinching hazards and avoid the risk of injury.

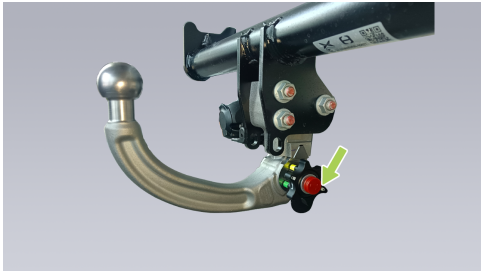
Locked state

1. When the distance between the handle and the end face of the manual rear towing device

is 0 mm, and the gap between the wedge surface of the towing hook and the wedge surface of the crossmember connecting sleeve is 0 mm, it can be determined that the manual rear towing device is in the locked position.



2. Turn the key until the arrow on the end face of the key points to the lock position, then remove the key and place it into the inner pocket of the towing hook storage bag.



3. Securely install the protective cover onto the keyhole.

caution

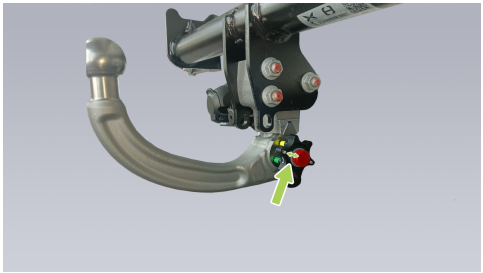
- Before driving with a trailer or load carrier, check whether the ball head is securely fastened; otherwise, the vehicle may become unstable during operation and an accident may occur.
- By shaking the ball head, confirm that it has snapped into place. If the ball head is not securely installed, check the following items:
  - The handle is flush-mounted on the manual rear towing device.
  - The lock is locked, and the key has been removed.

  If all conditions are met and the manually installed towing device is still not secured, please go to an after-sales service station for inspection.
- After installing the tow hook, even when a caravan is not attached, the obstacle distance value displayed by the reversing radar is greater than the actual distance.

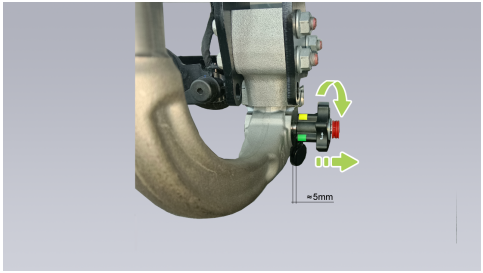
When reversing, pay attention to the extension distance of the tow hook.

Removal

1. Insert the key and turn it to the unlock position.

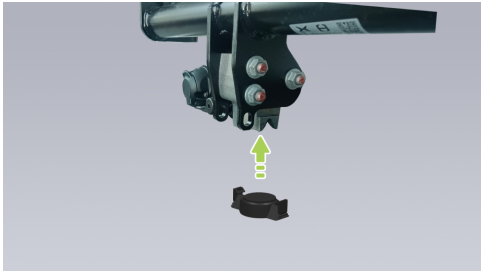


2. Pull the handle by hand to create a 5 mm gap between the rear towing device and the handle, and turn the handle in the direction of the arrow.

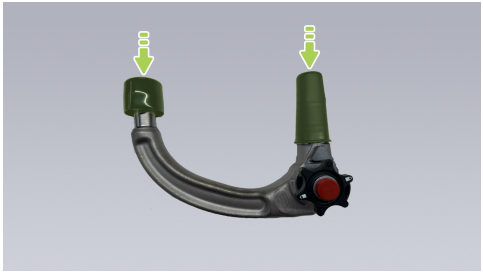


3. When the manual rear towing device is detached from the crossbeam connecting sleeve, firmly support the manual rear towing device during detachment.

4. Reinstall the dust cover of the manual rear towing device.



5. Reinstall the ball joint boot.



6. Return the manual tow hitch to the tow hook storage bag and store it in the designated fixed position under the trunk floor cover.

warning

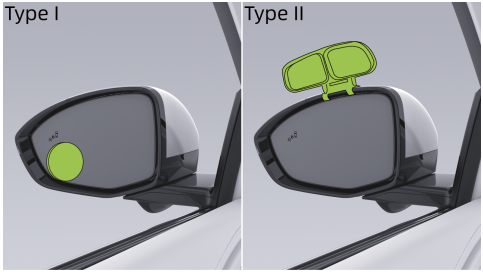
- The manual rear towing device is heavy. When disengaging it, support it firmly to prevent personal injury caused by falling.
- Be sure to ensure that the dust cover is installed in place; otherwise, if foreign matter such as sand or mud enters the inside of the connecting sleeve, the towing hook may be unable to be installed.

Maintenance Precautions

- Keep the ball joint and locating part clean.
- Regularly lubricate the inside of the crossmember coupling sleeve, the sliding surfaces, and the steel balls on the locating journal of the detachable ball head with resin-free lubricating oil or grease.
- Before using a high-pressure sprayer or high-pressure cleaning equipment on the vehicle, remove the detachable tow ball and insert the dust cap into the crossmember connection sleeve.
- Do not use a high-pressure jet or high-pressure cleaning equipment to clean the ball joint.

Mirrors and Brackets

The Side Mirrors of the towing vehicle shall comply with regulatory requirements. If they do not, install suitable trailer rearview mirrors.



Type 1

Adhere to the surface of the Side Mirrors;

Type 2

Install the bracket clamp on the mirror frame.

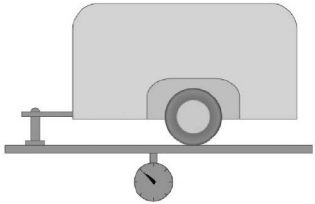
Technical Parameters

The vehicle's towing capacity will depend on vehicle specifications, load, road conditions, trailer specifications, etc. To ensure driving safety, do not drive at excessive speed or with an overload. For specific parameters, please refer to the table below.

Item	Data
Maximum permissible towing mass (braked) **[kg]**	1500
Maximum permissible towing mass (unbraked) **[kg]**	750
Maximum Tongue Load **[kg]**	75
Maximum Overall Dimensions of Passenger Vehicle Combination (Length Width Height) **[mm]**	14500*2550*4000

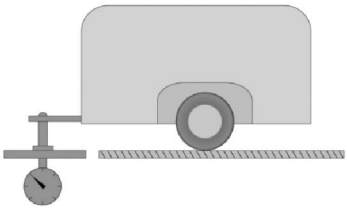
Dimensional limits for center-axle trailers permitted for towing (length, width, height) **[mm]**	12000*2550*4000
Maximum Dimensional Limit of Trailer Rear Overhang **[mm]**	3500
Electrical Connector	13-pin standard connector compliant with ISO11446:2004 standard
Ball Joint Connection	Complies with the dimensional requirements for ECE R55 A CLASS ball heads

Maximum Permissible Towing Mass



The towing mass refers to the sum of the weight of the trailer and the cargo in the trailer.

Maximum tongue load



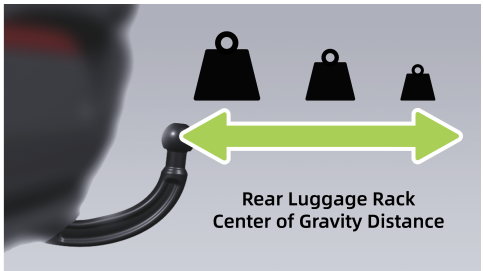
The maximum tongue load refers to the maximum vertical load that the connection point between the trailer and the tow hitch can bear.

Trailer Tail Lamp Power Limit

The power of the trailer tail lights does not exceed the values specified below:

- Left/right position lamp: 24 W.
- Left/right turn signal lamp: 24 W.
- rear fog light: 42W.
- Reversing lamp: 42 W.
- Brake light: 42 W.

Rear Luggage Load Capacity



1. If the center of gravity is less than 30 cm from the center of the tow ball, the total weight of the luggage and carrier must not exceed 75 kg.

2. If the center of gravity is less than 60 cm from the center of the tow ball, the total weight of the luggage and carrier must not exceed 35 kg.
3. If the center of gravity is 60 cm - 70 cm from the center of the tow ball, the total weight of the luggage and carrier must not exceed 10 kg.
4. If the center of gravity is greater than 70 cm from the center of the tow ball, the use of a tow bar for luggage and carriers is strictly prohibited.

Driving Precautions

Vehicle Start and Driving

Before driving, ensure that the tire pressure, lights, and connection devices of the tractor and trailer are normal. After connecting the trailer, please enable it on the central control screen. "**Trailer Mode**"。

Load the trailer cargo safely, ensure that the cargo is securely fixed on the trailer, and ensure that the trailer remains level; otherwise, do not drive the vehicle.

Start smoothly and avoid rapid acceleration and emergency braking, especially when driving on slippery road surfaces, as skidding may cause the vehicle to go out of control.

Crosswinds and rough roads may cause the vehicle to sway, seriously affecting vehicle control. Under any circumstances, as soon as you notice any slight sign of vehicle swaying, hold the steering wheel firmly with both hands and immediately reduce the vehicle speed slowly. Do not attempt to eliminate the swaying by increasing the vehicle speed.

Avoid operating the tractor without load while the trailer is loaded as much as possible. If this cannot be avoided, drive at low speed due to improper load distribution.

Braking

When towing a trailer, the vehicle's braking distance will increase. Therefore, increase the distance from the vehicle ahead.

Overtaking

When towing a trailer, the vehicle body length plus the trailer becomes longer, so when overtaking, a longer overtaking distance is required before returning to the original driving lane.

Reverse Driving

Reversing while towing a trailer is different from normal reversing, is relatively difficult, and requires special caution and additional practice.

When reversing, hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Turn your hand to the left to steer the trailer to the left, and turn it to the right to steer the trailer to the right. Be sure to reverse at low speed. If possible, ask another person to assist.

Turn

When towing a trailer, make turns smoothly, avoid bumps or sudden maneuvers as much as possible, and activate the turn signal in advance. When turning, the turning radius must be larger than when not towing a trailer. Only in this way can the trailer avoid hitting curbs, road signs, trees, or other objects.

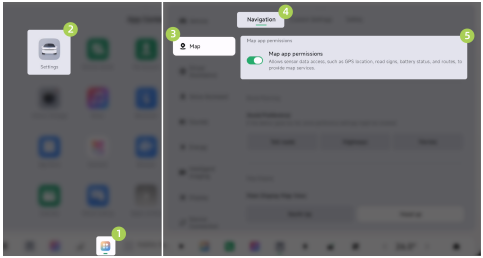
Driving on Slopes

When driving with a trailer on a relatively steep or long slope, reduce speed in advance. Determine the driving speed according to the trailer weight and the slope gradient.

Avoid parking on a slope as much as possible. If it cannot be avoided, place wheel chocks under the tires of the tractor and trailer, and apply the parking brake.

Navigation Settings

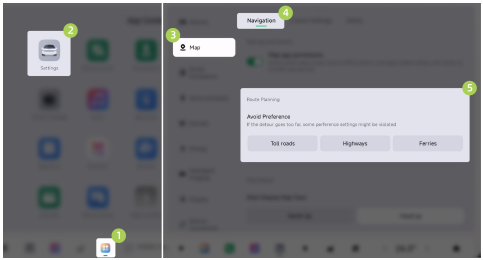
Map Application Permissions



On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**Map**→**Navigation**”On this screen, you can enable or disable permissions for the map application.

- **Map Application Permissions:**Allow the map application to access sensor data such as GPS location information, landmark information, battery status, and routes in order to provide map services.
- **Enable permissions:**When the switch is in the unauthorized off state, tap the switch and read the content in the "Google Maps Data Privacy Notice and Terms" pop-up. Tap "Accept" to enable map application permissions, and all map settings will return to an operable state; tap "Decline" to keep the permissions off, and all map settings will be reset.
- **Disable permissions:**When the switch is in the authorized on state, tap the switch and read the content in the pop-up window. Tap "Keep On" to keep the permission enabled; tap "Revoke" to disable the map application permission, and all map settings will be reset.

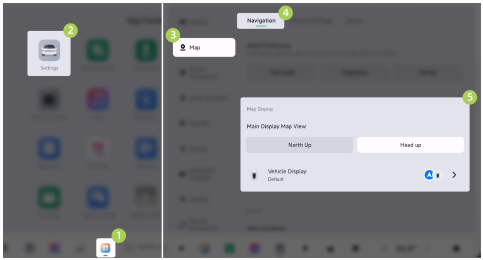
Route Planning



On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**Map**→**Navigation**”On this screen, you can set route planning as needed.

Route Avoidance Preferences: The buttons support multiple selection. Click to select. By default, none are selected. In preferences such as “Toll Road,” “Highway,” and “Ferry,” you can select one or more avoidance preferences.

Map Display

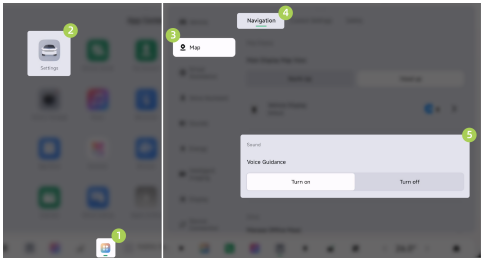


On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**Map**→**Navigation**”On the interface, you can set the map display mode as needed.

- **Large Screen Map View:**You can select the map display orientation on the center display.
- **Front of vehicle facing uphill:**The vehicle's current driving direction always faces the top of the screen. This option is the default setting.
- **North Up:**The map always keeps true north oriented toward the top of the screen.

- **Smart Scale:**When enabled, the system will automatically adjust the map scale according to different usage scenarios to display an appropriate map range. This function is enabled by default.
- **Emblem Style:**You can set the vehicle display style on the map. Tap "Vehicle Icon Style" to enter the settings screen, then select any of the following options:
  - **Default vehicle emblem:**Display the default vehicle icon on the map.
  - **Arrow emblem:**The vehicle is indicated on the map by an arrow icon.

Sound

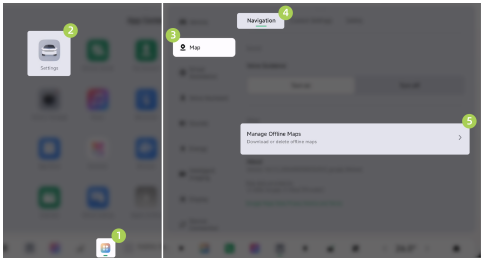


Tap the central control screen in sequence. " →**Settings**→**Map**→**Navigation**"You can set navigation voice announcements as needed.

Voice Announcement: You can choose whether to play voice guidance during navigation.

- On: Play voice guidance during navigation. This option is the default setting.
- Off: Voice guidance is not played during navigation.

Manage Offline Maps



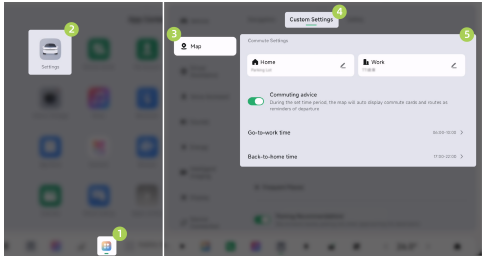
Tap the central control screen in sequence. “ →**Settings**→**Map**→**Navigation**”, tap “Offline Map Management” to enter the offline map management screen.

Offline Map Management: Offline maps can be downloaded or deleted as needed.

1. Download: Select the desired region and download the corresponding offline map.
2. Delete: You can delete offline maps that are no longer needed to free up storage space.

Personalized Settings

Commute Settings

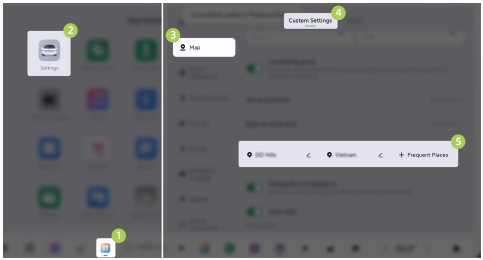


On the central control screen “ →**Settings**→**Map**→**Custom Settings**”On the interface, you can set the home address, company address, and commuting function as needed.

- Home Address: You can view, add, and manage (edit and delete) home addresses.

- Add home address: Tap “ **Home** ”Enter your home address on the map to search for and add your home address.
- Edit Home Address: After the home address is set successfully, tap the existing home address. “ ”Tap the icon. In the pop-up window, tap Edit to search again and add a new home address.
- Delete home address: After the home address is set successfully, click the existing home address's “ ”Icon. In the pop-up window, tap Delete. After reading and acknowledging the content of the pop-up window, you can delete the existing home address.
- Company Address: You can view, add, and manage (edit and delete) company addresses.
- Add company address: Click “ **Work** ”Enter the company address on the map to search for and add the company address.
- Edit company address: After the company address is set successfully, click the existing company address's “ ”Tap the icon. In the pop-up window, tap Edit to search again for and add a new company address.
- Delete company address: After successfully setting the company address, click the existing company address's “ ”Icon. In the pop-up window, tap Delete. After reading and acknowledging the content of the pop-up window, the existing company address can be deleted.
- Commute Function: After it is enabled, within the set time period, the desktop automatically displays the commute card to prompt departure.
- Working hours: You can set working time periods as needed.
- Off-duty time: You can set the off-duty time period as needed.

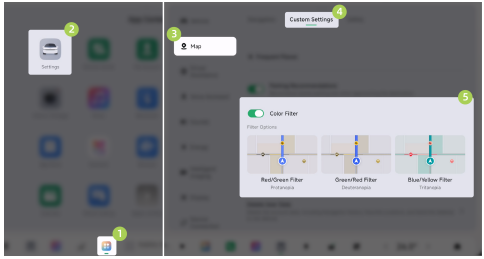
Frequently Used Locations



On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**Map**→**Custom Settings**”On this screen, you can manage frequently visited places.

- Add frequent destinations: Tap “**Frequent Places**”Enter an address on the map to search for and add the address of a frequently visited place.
- Edit frequent locations: Select the frequent location to be updated. “ ”Tap the icon. In the pop-up window, tap Edit to search again and add a new frequent destination.
- Delete frequent place: Select the frequent place to be updated. “ ”Icon. In the pop-up window, tap Delete. After reading and acknowledging the content of the pop-up window, the selected frequent destination can be deleted.

Color Filter



On the central control screen “ →**Settings**→**Map**→**Custom Settings**→**Color**

Filter"Interface, where you can enable the color filter and select the filter mode.

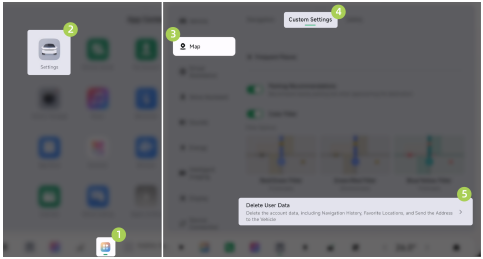
The color filter helps users with different color vision needs distinguish map elements more clearly by adjusting the color display of the map interface. After enabling, you can on "**Filter Options**"Select one of the following modes:

- Red/Green Filter (Protanopia) : Suitable for users with limited ability to distinguish red.
- Green/Red Filter (Deuteranopia) : Suitable for users with limited ability to distinguish green.
- Blue/Yellow Filter (Tritanopia): Suitable for users with limited ability to distinguish blue and yellow.

Tips

"**Color Filter**"The switch is off by default, and no filter mode is selected by default. After this function is turned off, the map will return to the standard color display.

Delete User Data



Tap the central control screen in sequence. " →**Settins→Map→Custom Settings→Delete User Data**"After reading and acknowledging the pop-up content, you can delete data on the account such as navigation history, favorite locations, and addresses sent to the vehicle.

Safety

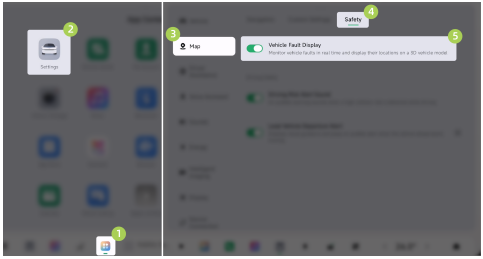
Vehicle Malfunction Display

When the vehicle is in P gear, the vehicle can monitor common vehicle body malfunctions in real time (such as abnormal tire pressure), and mark the specific malfunction location on the 3D body with a red indicator on the SR interface.

warning

The vehicle fault display only supports monitoring some common basic faults of the vehicle. Please do not rely on this function to monitor vehicle faults. If you discover any abnormalities in the vehicle, please contact the Xpeng Motors Service Center in a timely manner for resolution.

Center Display Settings Items



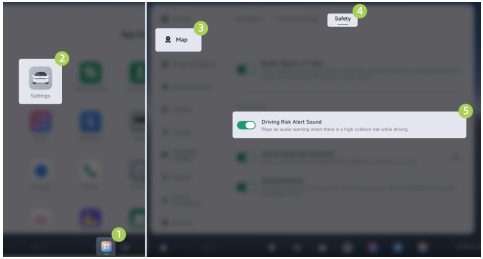
On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**Map**→**Safety**"The interface can turn Vehicle Fault Display on/off.

Driving Risk Alert Sound

When assisted driving is not enabled and the vehicle is being driven in D Gear, if surrounding dynamic obstacles are close to the vehicle or there is a potential safety risk, the SR interface will provide a warning alert.

Medium-risk alert obstacles will turn red, and high-risk alert obstacles will turn red and be accompanied by an alert sound.

Center Display Settings Items



On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**Map**→**Safety**"On the interface, you can turn Driving Risk Alert Sound on/off.

Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

The Driving Risk Alert Sound is for warning and reminder purposes only. The driver is responsible for observing the surrounding environment and making decisions accordingly.

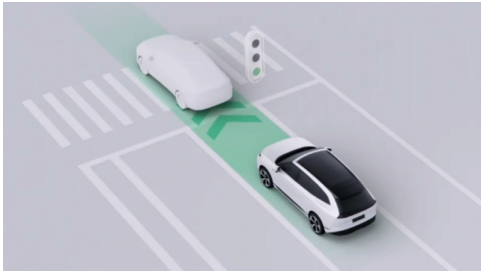
warning

The Driving Risk Alert Sound may not be triggered under the following conditions, including but not limited to:

- Radar or camera restricted.
- On roads with sharp curves.
- When driving on roads with poor road conditions.

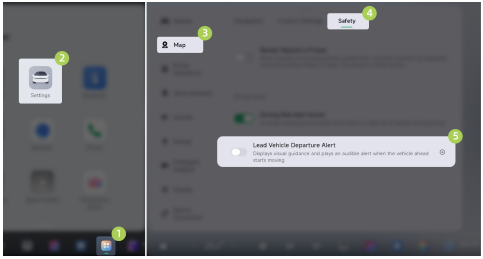
The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all conditions that affect the normal operation of the Driving Risk Alert Sound.

Preceding Vehicle Starting Reminder



When driving assistance is not enabled and the vehicle is being driven in D Gear, if in a congested road section, after the preceding vehicle moves forward a certain distance, the SR interface will display an animated effect and emit a prompt tone to remind the driver to start driving.

Center Display Settings Items



On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**Map**→**Safety**"On the interface, you can turn Lead Vehicle Departure Alert on/off.

Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

warning

The Front Launch Alert may not be triggered if:

- There are pedestrians, bicycles, motorcycles, etc. in front of you.
- No vehicles ahead.
- The vehicle is in gear other than D.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 0 km/h.
- The vehicle in front is a long distance from the vehicle in front.
- The front and rear vehicle are stationary for a short period of time.

warning

The front drive away alert can be inhibited under certain conditions, including but not limited to the following:

- Poor visibility at night.
- Poor visibility due to bad weather such as heavy rain, heavy snow, fog, sand, etc.
- Intense light, back lighting, water reflective, extreme light contrast.
- Camera restricted.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all situations that may affect the normal operation of Preceding Vehicle Starting Reminder.

360° Panoramic Image AVM

Function Overview

The 360° panoramic image (AVM) uses the surround-view cameras around the vehicle to capture the surroundings of the vehicle and display them on the central control screen.

The surround view cameras are installed above the front and rear license plates and below the left and right side mirrors.

warning

AVM is an assistance function and can only provide reference; it cannot replace the driver's observation of the surrounding environment. AVM cannot handle all traffic, weather, and road conditions. As the driver of the vehicle, you are responsible for driving safety. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury may result.

Status Indicator Light

Startup Safety Assist Fault

Startup Safety Assist Off

- When reversing and starting, if the ultrasonic radar malfunctions, the central control screen will light up Indicator light, please contact a XIAOPENG Service Center.
- When reversing to start, when the ultrasonic radar is not enabled, the central control screen will light up Indicator light, please contact a XIAOPENG Service Center.

Turn AVM On/Off

You can turn on the AVM function in any of the following ways:

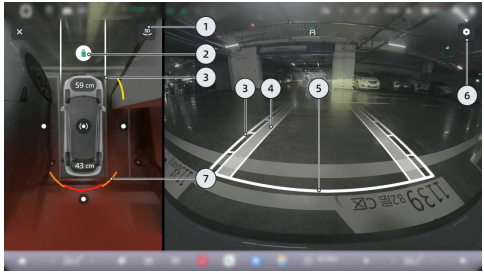
- When the vehicle gear is shifted to reverse gear (R gear), AVM turns on automatically.

- Tap the bottom taskbar on the center display. Icon (such as Settings).
- Turn on AVM by voice command, for example, say keywords such as “Turn on 360 panoramic image”.
- When the steering wheel shortcut key on the central control screen is set to “**Enable/ Disable 360 Camera**”When available, it can be opened using the steering wheel shortcut button.

You can turn off the AVM function in any of the following ways:

- On the 360 Camera screen, tap the upper left corner , 360 Camera can be turned off.
- Turn off AVM by voice command, for example, say keywords such as “Turn off 360 panoramic image”.
- When the steering wheel shortcut key on the central control screen is set to “**Enable/ Disable 360 Camera**”When active, it can be turned off using the steering wheel shortcut button.

2D Mode Interface



1. Switch between 3D/2D modes.
2. View switching icon.
   - In 2D mode, you can use the vehicle model to Switch to the front, rear, left, right, and wheel hub views.
   - If there is no operation on the screen within 5 seconds, the icon will be automatically hidden. Tap the view area to display it again.
3. Dynamic Guide Line

- The vehicle width is indicated by two thin white lines.
- In the front/rear view, the distance between the vehicle and the object is indicated by segmented scale lines.
- The distances indicated by each scale line from near to far are approximately: 0.6 m, 1 m, and 1.5 m respectively.

4. Tire Tread Surface
   - Indicates the wheel travel path.
5. Safety Stop Line
   - Indicates a position approximately 0.3 m from the vehicle.

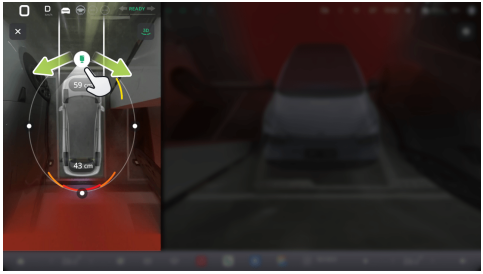
> **warning**
>
> When the safety stop line comes into contact with an obstacle, stop the vehicle.

6. Imaging Settings

   Tap " ⚙ "Will jump to "**Intelligent Imaging**"Page, where settings related to imaging functions can be configured.

7. Radar Warning
   - Simulated display based on the distance and direction of obstacles.
   - When displayed in white, the distance is relatively far.
   - When displayed in red, the distance is already very close.
   - The distance between the vehicle and the nearest obstacle will also be displayed numerically at the front and rear of the vehicle.

3D Mode Interface



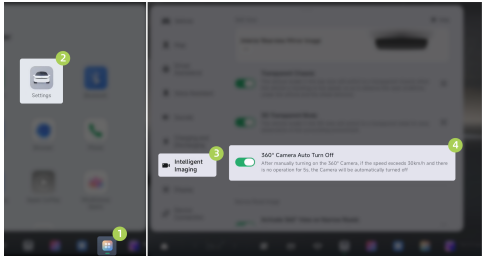
After switching to 3D mode, the system will integrate the 3D virtual vehicle model into the real environmental image.

Slide around the circular ring on the left-side vehicle model Or directly rotate the vehicle model on the right side to achieve 360° free rotation.

If there is no operation within 5 seconds, the screen will automatically hide the ring and icons.

Tap the top view area to display the ring and icons again.

360 Camera Auto Off



On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**Intelligent Imaging**”Interface, can be opened/closed “**360 Camera Auto Off**”。

After this function is enabled, if 360 Camera is turned on manually, when the speed exceeds 30 km/h and there is no operation for 5 seconds, 360 Camera will automatically turn off.

Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

caution

If the camera malfunctions while reversing, the AVM screen will display the following conditions:

- A single camera has malfunctioned, and a single image is blacked out.
- When multiple cameras malfunction or the system malfunctions, the entire screen is black.

warning

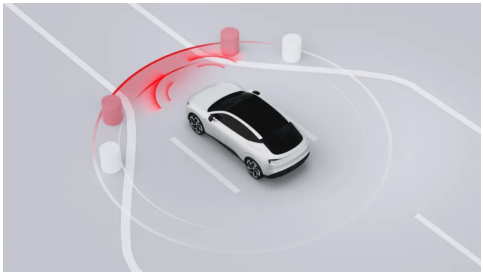
Objects in the AVM picture are deformed from actual objects. AVM may not work in the following scenarios:

- Camera restricted.
- Camera blocked (dust, cover, etc.) or poor weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, heavy snow, heavy fog).

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all situations that affect the normal operation of AVM.

Activate Panoramic Image on Narrow Roads

Function Overview



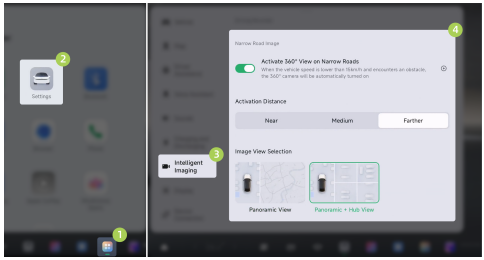
When the vehicle is in D Gear and the vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h, if obstacles are detected on both sides at the front and rear of the vehicle, the vehicle will activate Activate

Panoramic Image on Narrow Roads to assist driving.

warning

Activate Panoramic Image on Narrow Roads is an auxiliary function and can only provide reference; it cannot replace the driver's observation of the surrounding environment. Activate Panoramic Image on Narrow Roads cannot cope with all traffic, weather, and road conditions. You, as the driver of the vehicle, are responsible for driving safety. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury may result.

Turn On/Off Activate Panoramic Image on Narrow Roads



Tap on the center control screen in sequence. "→**Settings**→**Intelligent Imaging**"Interface, can be opened/closed "**Activate Panoramic Image on Narrow Roads**"You can also select the activation distance and image view angle according to your driving habits.

- The activation distance options are Near, approximately 50 cm; Medium, approximately 60 cm; and Far, approximately 75 cm.

- Selectable Camera View “**Panoramic View**”or “**Panoramic + Wheel Hub View**”。

Activate Side Rear Image When Turning*

Function Overview

When the vehicle is in D Gear and the turn signal is turned on, the vehicle automatically displays the corresponding side rear image to facilitate viewing of the side rear blind spot and assist driving.

warning

Rear View on the steering active side is an assistance function for reference only and does not replace the driver's view of the surrounding environment. You are responsible for driving safely as the driver of the vehicle, and do not rely on this feature to control the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in injury.

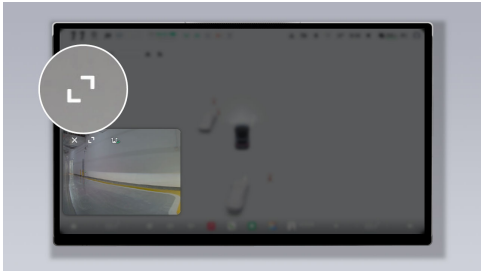
Turn On/Off Activate Side Rear Image When Turning

On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**Intelligent Imaging**"Interface, can be opened/closed "**Activate Side Rear Image When Turning**", and the steering image position can be selected.

Tips

The steering image position is displayed on the large screen by default, for the HUD display, select the steering image position as HUD.

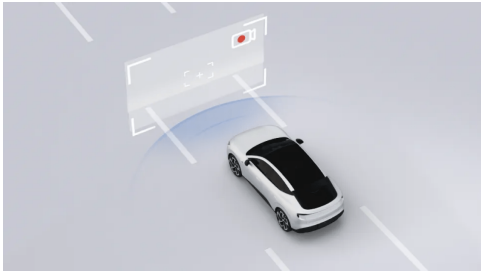
Adjust the center display position



The image can be dragged to different positions. On the image screen, tap , the image can be zoomed in/out.

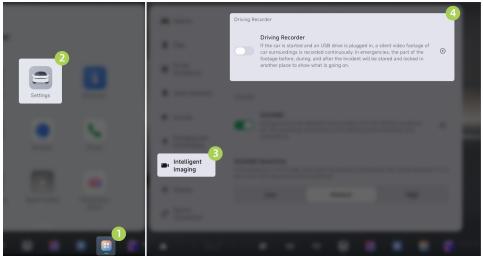
Driving Recorder*

Function Overview



The Driving Recorder function can record videos during vehicle driving and store the videos on a USB drive. The video files can be used for users to review past information when needed, or to assist in collecting evidence in the event of an accident.

Turn Driving Recorder On/Off



Tap the central control screen in sequence. “ →**Settings**→**Intelligent Imaging**”Interface, can be opened/closed “**Driving Recorder**”。

Recording View*

Driving Recorder can be selected for recording “**Front View**”or “**Front+Surround View**”。

i Tips

- “**Surround View**”Record the surround-view image at the corresponding moment. If related functions such as 360 Camera/

9

reversing image are being used during recording, “**Surround View**”The image of the corresponding view will be recorded.

- “**Main View + Surround View**”Can simultaneously record the views in front of the vehicle and around it, but will occupy more storage space.

Emergency Driving Recording

Automatic trigger: on the central control screen “**Driving Recorder**”When the function is enabled and in the recording state, the vehicle will automatically record an emergency video and save it when a collision risk event is detected.

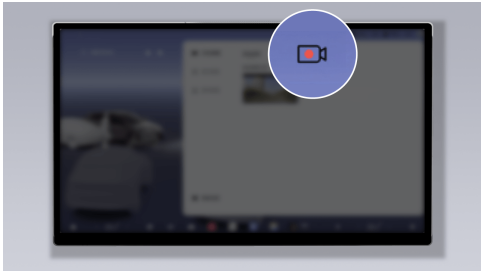
Manual Trigger:

- On the center control screen “**Driving Recorder**”When the function is enabled and in the recording state, you can tap the top status bar of the center display screen Icon, tap in the pop-up window “**Emergency Recording**”Emergency video recording.

Tips

- “**Surround View**”Record the around-view image at the corresponding moment. If related functions such as 360 Camera/ reversing image are being used during recording, “**Surround View**”The image from the corresponding view will be recorded.
- “**Main View + Surround View**”Can simultaneously record the front-of-vehicle view and surrounding views, but will use more storage space.

View Driving Recorder status



Tap the top status bar on the center display. The icon allows you to view the Driving Recorder status.

	Driving Recorder enabled and in recording status
	Emergency recording is in progress.
	When the Driving Recorder is off
	Driving Recorder is unavailable and the USB drive needs to be checked.

View Driving Recorder on the center display

On the center control screen " →**Driving Recorder**→**Emergency Recording or Loop Recording**"On the interface, you can view emergency recordings or loop recordings. You can also select the desired Driving Recorder to send to your phone or delete the unnecessary Driving Recorder.

caution

For your safety, it is recommended that you view the Driving Recorder while the vehicle is parked.

Export Driving Recorder to Phone

1. On the center control screen " →**Driving Recorder→Emergency Recording and Loop Recording**"Interface, tap "**Select**"Press the button to enter selection mode.
2. Select the video to be transferred.
3. Tap to send to phone " "Icon (You can also tap Send to Phone on the video details screen icon) to enter the file transfer interface. During video loading and processing, tap "**Cancel Sending**"Video sending will be canceled. After video loading is completed, a QR code pop-up window will appear.
4. After the XPENG App pop-up window appears, tap "**Receive**", and the file can be transferred to the phone system album.

Tips

- After the scan is successful and the transfer process is enabled, the QR code pop-up disappears, and the system automatically enters the background transfer process. During file transfer, you can still view videos, but operations such as deleting or sending to phone are not available.
- During file transfer, the XPENG App must remain on the transfer screen to avoid interrupting the connection.
- During file transfer, the mobile device network is temporarily unavailable and will be restored after the transfer is completed and the connection is disconnected.

Install External Storage Device

The video data of the Driving Recorder will be stored in the vehicle's external storage device (USB flash drive). If the USB flash drive is not installed, the Driving Recorder function will not operate properly.

The front USB media source port and Type-C power port of the center armrest box have data transmission capability. After inserting a USB flash drive, the Driving Recorder function can be used.

The driving recorder recognizes only one USB flash drive at a time. Each time the vehicle is powered on, priority is given to the USB flash drive used before Power Off. If the USB flash drive used before Power Off is not recognized within 3 seconds after power-on, the first recognized USB flash drive in the reading sequence will be used as the active USB flash drive.

Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

- Driving Recorder saves each video segment for about 1 minute by default. During recording, if operations such as vehicle lock and Power Off, USB drive ejection, video deletion, or formatting are performed, recording will be interrupted. Driving Recorder will save the recorded video and then start recording a new video segment. The video may be less than 1 minute.
- During the Driving Recorder process, please avoid emergency Power Off as much as possible. Emergency Power Off will cause the

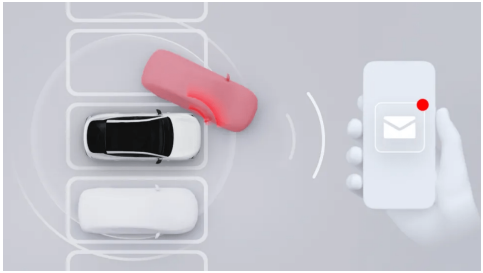
video being recorded to be unable to be saved.

- The Driving Recorder video is stored on an independent USB flash drive. Do not remove the USB flash drive directly. If you need to remove it, first on the central control screen " → **Driving Recorder→Storage Management**"Interface, tap "**Safety Pop-up**"Otherwise, the video being recorded may be lost, and the USB flash drive may be damaged, as well as the video data may be damaged or lost. Please try to avoid using adapter plugs, docking stations, etc., as they can easily cause loose connections.
- When Driving Recorder is enabled, videos will be recorded in a loop, and when the storage is full, the earliest videos will be overwritten. To prevent important videos from being overwritten, export important videos to other devices such as a mobile phone or computer in a timely manner when necessary.
- To better meet technical standards, please select a USB drive with 32 GB or above, USB 2.0 or above, and a write speed above 10 MB/s.
- Only USB drives with partition formats FAT16, FAT32, or NTFS are supported. For USB drives not in the above formats, it is recommended to proactively format the USB drive once. Formatting will delete all files in the USB drive. Please save important data before formatting.
- A USB flash drive has a fixed number of write/erase cycles and a fixed service life, and is a consumable item. If the USB flash drive has been used for more than half a year and video reading is found to be very slow or videos are frequently lost, replace it with a brand-new USB flash drive.
- While the vehicle is in motion, for your driving safety, please view video content with caution.
- The video for the Driving Recorder function uses the H.265 codec format.

HEVC Advance™

XGUARD

Function Overview

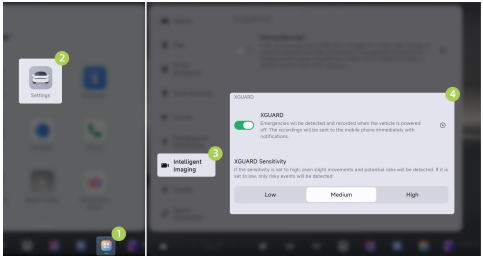


After being enabled, this function will continuously monitor the environment around the vehicle after lock and Power Off. When it detects a person continuously approaching or abnormal vibration, it will issue an alarm (the central control screen lights up and the vehicle lights flash) and record videos before and after the risk, effectively recording potential safety hazards and malicious damage. For vibration events, it will also promptly inform the user through mobile App push notifications and desensitized high-risk XGUARD recordings for timely reminders.

You can perform the following operations for XGUARD:

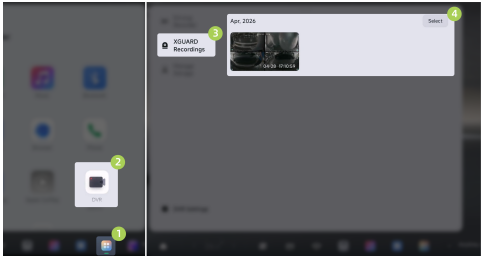
- Turn XGUARD on/off and configure it via the central control screen.
- View XGUARD footage on the center display.
- Turn XGUARD on/off via the mobile app.
- View high-risk sentinel recordings through the mobile app.

Turn XGUARD On/Off and Configure It via the Center Display



On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**Intelligent Imaging**”Interface, can be opened/closed “**XGUARD**”, set XGUARD sensitivity.

View XGUARD recordings on the center display



On the central control screen “ →**Driving Recorder**→**Sentry Recording**”On the interface, you can view the original XGUARD recordings. You can also select the desired XGUARD recordings to send to your phone or delete the unnecessary XGUARD recordings.

Tips

- When low-risk events take up more than 30GB or 90% of total system space, historical low-risk events are cycled to

9

ensure timely recording of new events and high-risk events are permanently saved.

- If too much space may cause recording to fail, please go to the **Storage screen**of the central control screen to clean up.

caution

For your safety, it is recommended that you watch XGUARD recordings while the vehicle is parked.

Export XGUARD recordings to phone

1. On the center control screen " →**Driving Recorder→Sentry Recording**"Interface, tap "**Select**"Press the button to enter selection mode.
2. Select the video to be transferred.
3. Tap to send to phone " "Icon (you can also tap Send to Phone on the video details screen icon) to enter the file transfer interface. During video loading and processing, tap "**Cancel Sending**"Video sending will be canceled. After video loading processing is completed, a QR code pop-up window will appear.
4. After the XPENG App pop-up window appears, tap "**Receive**", and the file can be transferred to the phone system album.

Tips

- After the scan is successful and the transfer process is enabled, the QR code pop-up disappears, and the system automatically enters the background transfer process. During file transfer, you can still view videos, but operations such as deleting or sending to phone are not available.
- During file transfer, the XPENG App must remain on the transfer screen to avoid interrupting the connection.
- During file transfer, the mobile device network is temporarily unavailable and will be restored after the transfer is completed and the connection is disconnected.

Turn on/off and view XGUARD via the mobile app

In the mobile app "**XPENG**"Interface, where you can turn XGUARD on/off, remotely view images around the vehicle (available only to the vehicle owner), and view de-identified high-risk XGUARD recordings.

1. Turn XGUARD on/off.
2. Remotely view the images around the vehicle: You can view desensitized real-time images around the vehicle.

caution

- There may be a delay in the picture when the camera switches.
- The remote view requires vehicle traffic and cannot be used after the traffic is used.

3. View XGUARD recordings: You can view desensitized high-risk XGUARD recordings.

- When enabling the mobile app notification permission, the mobile app will push XGUARD recordings through notifications.
- If the vehicle network is poor, the upload may fail or the notification may be delayed (but it will still be saved locally).

Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

caution

- When Sentinel mode is used, the system accesses the camera permissions to detect the vehicle's surroundings. Please use Sentinel mode in compliance with local laws and regulations and the camera usage requirements of the location where you are located, and assume all corresponding responsibilities.
- When Sentinel mode is switched on, the vehicle security alarm may also be activated when the vehicle is subjected to an intrusion such as pry doors, prying the boot.
- Sentinel mode is only active during single-exit when switched on, and functions are

automatically switched off when the vehicle is powered on.

- Sentinel mode consumes a certain amount of vehicle power, switch on if necessary.
- Battery power is continuously consumed during Sentinel mode operation and automatically exits Sentinel mode when the vehicle range is below 50 km.
- The video of the mobile App will clear automatically after 7 days, please check it in time, the high-risk recordings of the central control screen can be saved permanently.

Cabin Imaging OMS*

Function Overview

The in-cabin imaging OMS captures the in-cabin environment through the in-vehicle camera and displays it on the central control screen. You can take photos or record videos to capture memorable moments in the cabin, and you can also view the in-cabin imaging in real time on the central control screen.

You can perform the following operations on the in-cabin image:

- Turn the in-vehicle camera on/off via the center display.
- View the cabin image through the central control screen.
- View or transfer the in-cabin image album through the center display.

Turn the in-vehicle camera on/off via the center control screen

On the central control screen “ →**Settings**→**General**→**Safety and Privacy**”Interface, can be opened/closed “**In-vehicle Camera**”, all in-vehicle cameras will be disabled after it is turned off. You can also tap the arrow icon on the right to turn it on/off in the pop-up window “**OMS Camera**”Function. When turned off, the in-vehicle camera will be disabled.

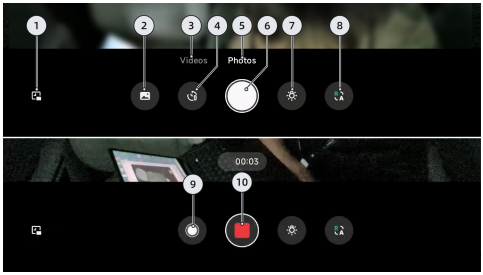
i Tips

The in-vehicle camera is disabled by default. When enabling the in-vehicle camera for the first time, an authorization request prompt is displayed.

View cabin images on the center display

On the central control screen “ →**Cabin Imaging**”On the interface, you can view the cabin image.

While driving, do not continuously look at the in-cabin image on the center control screen, otherwise you may fail to see pedestrians, objects, etc. on the road ahead of the vehicle. You can wake up XPENG and say your command, for example: take an in-cabin photo, record an in-cabin video. Will be enabled “**Cabin Imaging**”Open the app and take photos or record videos.



1. The screen is reduced to floating window mode.
2. Open Album.
3. Video mode.
4. Timed photo capture (displayed only in photo mode. After timed photo capture is enabled, tap the Capture Now button, and a photo will be taken after a 3-second countdown).
5. Photo mode.
6. Take a photo/video immediately.
7. reading light switch (after turning on, the vehicle's reading lights illuminate).
8. Infrared night vision effect switch.
9. Take a photo immediately (while recording, tap Take a photo immediately).
10. Stop recording (displayed during recording).

Tips

- When tapping "Take Photo/Record Now", shooting may fail if the system storage space is insufficient. Please promptly go to the center display "Settings → General → Storage Space" screen to clean up.

- The maximum duration of a single recording is 10 minutes. When the recording reaches 10 minutes, recording stops automatically.
- When entering the cabin imaging application, the default mode is photo mode.

at “**Cabin Imaging**”Interface, tap The display can be reduced to a floating window state. You can drag the floating window to different positions on the screen. At this time, only the cabin image can be viewed, and the photo or recording functions cannot be used.

In floating window state, tap , Back “**Cabin Imaging**”Application interface. Tap , turn off the in-cabin camera.

Tips

During recording, switching to the floating window state may cause the recording to be interrupted.

View or transfer the in-cabin image album through the center display.

On the central control screen “ →**Cabin Camera**”On the interface, you can view the recorded videos or pictures. You can also select the desired videos or pictures to send to your phone or delete the videos or pictures that are not needed.

caution

For your safety, it is recommended that you view images and videos while the vehicle is parked.

Export Cabin Video to Phone

1. On the center control screen “ →**Cabin Imaging**→**Album**”Interface, tap “**Select**”Press the button to enter selection mode.
2. Select the video or image to be transferred.
3. Tap to send to phone “ ”Icon (you can also tap Send to Phone on the video details screen icon) to enter the file transfer interface. During video loading and processing, tap “**Cancel Sending**”Video sending will be canceled. After video loading processing is completed, a QR code pop-up window will appear.
4. After the XPENG App pop-up window appears, tap "Accept" to transfer the file to the phone system Album.

Tips

- After the scan is successful and the transfer process is enabled, the QR code pop-up disappears, and the system automatically enters the background transfer process. During file transfer, you can still view videos, but operations such as deleting or sending to phone are not available.
- During file transfer, the XPENG App must remain on the transfer screen to avoid interrupting the connection.
- During file transfer, the mobile device network is temporarily unavailable and will

be restored after the transfer is completed and the connection is disconnected.

Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

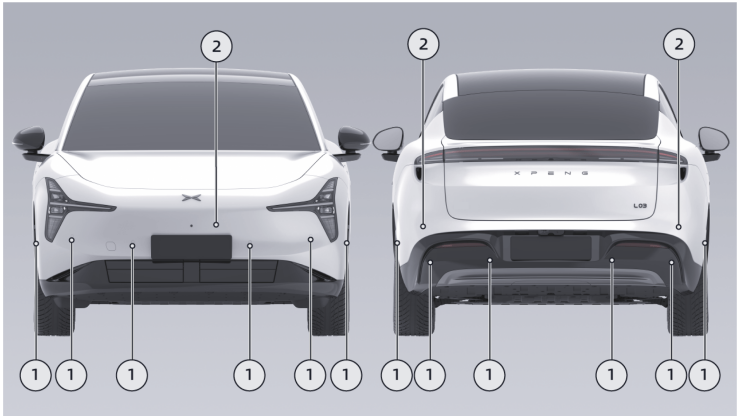
caution

- During OMS recording, avoid emergency Power Off as much as possible. Emergency Power Off will cause the video being recorded to be unable to be saved.
- When the OMS camera temperature is too high, the OMS function will be unavailable.
- Keep the in-vehicle camera clean. If there is any dirt, clean it promptly.
- If the cabin image cannot be displayed properly, promptly contact a XIAOPENG Motors Service Center for inspection and repair.

Assisted Driving Overview

Assisted Driving Components

Radar

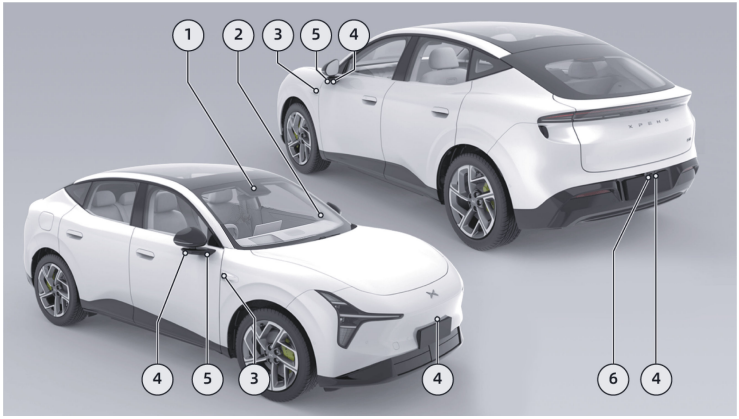


1. Ultrasonic Radar	2. Millimeter-Wave Radar

To ensure normal radar operation:

- Keep the radar surface clean, free of foreign matter such as ice, snow, standing water, and dust.
- If foreign matter is found adhering to the radar surface, wipe it with a soft cloth or clean it with water (low water pressure).

camera



1. Front-view Camera	4. Surround View Camera
2. DSM Camera	5. Front Side Camera*

3. Side Rear Camera*	6. Rearview Camera*

To ensure the camera operates properly:

- Keep the camera surface clean, free of foreign matter such as ice, snow, standing water, and dust.
- Please keep the front windshield clean.
- The windshield in front of the camera must be kept clean, and there must be no object blocking between the camera and the windshield.
- When foreign matter is found adhering to the camera surface, wipe it with a soft cloth or clean it with water (low water pressure).

warning

If the radar and camera functions are limited, the assisted driving functions will be unable to be enabled or function normally.

General Precautions

Limitations of Radar and Camera

Tips

Before each use of the driving assistance function, ensure that the surfaces of the radar and cameras are clean and unobstructed.

warning

The following conditions can cause the radar/camera to fail to recognize the target, delay in recognition, or incorrect identification:

- The radar or camera is obscured or dirty, such as by snow, frost, rain, Foreign objects such as water, dirt, etc. are attached.
- Faulty radar, camera or associated component.
- Severe weather, such as rain, snow, fog, etc.
- Road bumps or other causes cause the vehicle to rock.
- There is interference from the same frequency of acoustic Boeing sources around the vehicle.
- Objects in the vehicle's vicinity that can cause the sonic to reflect incorrectly.
- The target detected by the radar is attached to substances that absorb sound waves, such as snowflakes, foams, cotton objects, etc.
- The detected object is too small.
- In rare exceptional cases, false alarms may occur on some metal barriers, green belts, cement walls, etc.
- When the ambient brightness changes, such as tunnel entry or exit.
- Large shadows cast by buildings, landscapes or large vehicles.
- The vehicle has crashed and the radar or camera mounting position has been changed.
- High light, such as oncoming headlights or direct sunlight.

- Dark surroundings such as night, dawn, dusk, Tunnels, etc.

warning

The following target radar/cameras are not recognized:

- Special vehicles, such as vehicles with a covered rear, damaged vehicles, or vehicles of irregular shape.
- When you encounter animals, traffic lights, walls and other unknown obstacles in your route.
- Some metal barriers, green belts, cement walls, etc.
- Road test facilities, cone drums, crash buckets, tripods, Small construction plates, etc.
- Static obstacles, such as traffic cones, buckets, traffic columns, warning triangle or other roadblock).
- Static objects, such as slow or stationary sweeper, rolling accident truck, large stones, Tripods, separation belts, pedestrians crossing the road, etc.

Adaptive Cruise Control ACC

Function Overview

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) can control the vehicle speed of the host vehicle according to the set cruising speed value and following distance interval.

- When ACC detects that the driving speed of the vehicle ahead is lower than the set cruise speed value, the vehicle will automatically decelerate to ensure an appropriate distance from the vehicle ahead.
- If the vehicle ahead accelerates and its driving speed exceeds the cruise speed setting, or if you change lanes and there is no other slower vehicle ahead, Adaptive Cruise Control will control the vehicle to automatically resume the cruise speed.

ACC also has the Adaptive Curve Cruise (ATC) function. ATC obtains the curvature of the road ahead through the camera and map. When ACC is enabled and the vehicle follows the lane line or a preceding vehicle through a curve, ATC improves comfort and stability when cornering by adjusting the vehicle speed.

i Tips

When ACC actively decelerates to maintain distance from the vehicle ahead, the brake lights will illuminate. When ACC actively accelerates, the accelerator pedal will not move.

warning

ACC is only an assisted driving function and cannot respond to all traffic, weather, and road conditions. As the driver of the vehicle, you are responsible for driving safety. Please hold the steering wheel firmly at all times and observe the road conditions. If danger arises, take over promptly. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury or even death may result.

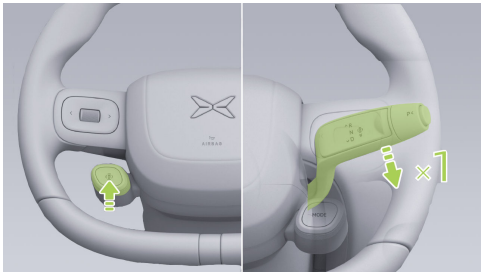
Status Indicator Light

ACC unavailable.	
ACC can be activated when the ACC activation conditions are met.	
ACC is activated.	
The maximum speed limit value of ACC/LCC, and any function is activated.	
The maximum speed limit value of ACC/LCC, and neither is activated.	
A system fault exists.	

Activate ACC

After enabling the ACC function, you can activate the ACC function by following these steps:

1. When ACC can be activated, the HUD and the central control screen display Indicator light.
2. ACC can be activated in the following ways:



- Press the left intelligent driving control button to activate ACC.

- Push the shift lever downward to the end once briefly, or push it downward to the end and hold for 1 second to activate ACC.

After ACC is activated, in the HUD, instrument cluster screen, and central control screen (80 MAX) The indicator illuminates, accompanied by a voice prompt.

ACC can be activated when the following conditions are met simultaneously:

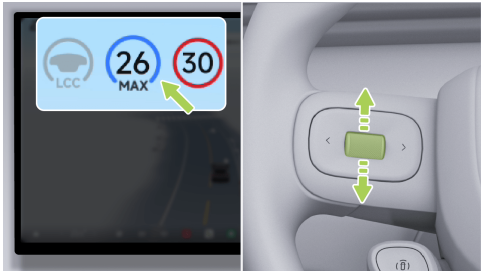
- The gear is in forward gear (D Gear).
- The driver fastens the seat belt.
- No fatigued driving.
- tire pressure normal.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The doors, front hood, and trunk are not open.
- The body stability control has been enabled.
- ESP not activated, Anti-lock Braking System not activated.
- The ACC-related components are functioning properly, and the field of view is clear.

Tips

- When there is a vehicle within 2 m ahead, the ACC function can be activated within the range of 0-130 km/h. When there is no vehicle ahead, the ACC function can be activated within the range of 15-130 km/h.
- When the ACC function is activated, if the vehicle speed is below 30 km/h, the set ACC cruising speed value is 30 km/h; if the vehicle speed is 30-130 km/h, the current vehicle speed is the set ACC cruising speed value.

Set Maximum Cruise Speed

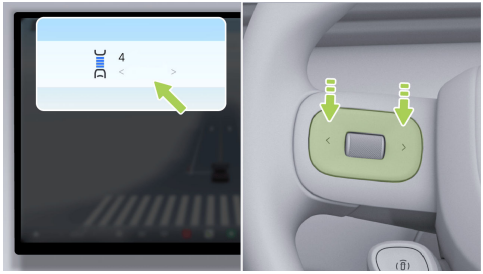
When ACC is activated, you can use the left steering wheel scroll wheel or the speed assistance SAS to set the maximum cruise speed.



- Slowly scroll the wheel; the maximum cruise speed changes by 1 km/h.
- Quickly scroll the wheel, and the maximum cruise speed changes by 5 km/h.

You can also press the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed, then push the gear selector down and hold it to set the current vehicle speed as the new cruise speed. If you do not push the gear selector down and hold it, after releasing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will decelerate to the previously set speed and continue cruising.

Set Following Distance



When ACC is activated, the left/right buttons on the left side of the steering wheel can be used to set the following distance, with 5 levels available for selection.

i Tips

When setting the following distance, the central control screen will display the distance level.

warning

- If the set following distance interval is too low, you may not have enough time to react in the event of an unexpected situation.
- You are always responsible for maintaining a safe distance and speed, and for braking in time when necessary.

Tips

- The following distance interval is not a fixed distance; the actual distance to the vehicle ahead will vary with vehicle speed.
- When driving on slippery roads, please select a larger following distance interval.

Exit ACC

After the ACC function is activated, you can exit the ACC function in any of the following ways:

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Push the gear selector upward.

warning

If any of the following conditions occur (including but not limited to), ACC will automatically exit. After ACC automatically exits, you must take over the vehicle to ensure safe driving.

- Any door, the front hood, or the trunk is opened.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt.
- Brake system performance decreases or malfunctions.
- Enable the Electronic Parking Brake.
- The wheels lose traction.
- The vehicle speed exceeds the set speed, and the duration exceeds the designed time.
- Shift the gear to Reverse (R) or Park (P).
- The body stability control is activated, turned off, or malfunctioning.
- The intelligent driving camera on the front windshield is covered by dust, rain, ice, snow, or other contaminants.

- A fault occurs in another related system.

Alerts and Takeover

warning

- If the vehicle issues a takeover request via SR interface, voice announcement, etc., take over immediately.
- In the event of a hazard, or in the event of a situation requiring a takeover, take over immediately and do not wait for the vehicle to issue a takeover request.

Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

Please read all sections in this manual related to ACC. You should understand these limitations before using the function.

ACC is designed for driving comfort and convenience and is not a collision warning or avoidance system. The driver is responsible for remaining alert at all times, driving safely, and maintaining control of the vehicle. Never rely on the system to sufficiently reduce vehicle speed to avoid a collision. Be sure to observe the road conditions ahead and be prepared to take corrective action at any time, otherwise serious injury or death may result.

You are responsible for determining and always maintaining a safe following distance. Never rely entirely on ACC to maintain an accurate or appropriate following distance.

warning

ACC is a driving aid and cannot handle all traffic, weather and road conditions, do not use or switch ACC on in the following scenarios:

- Road with varying conditions such as twists and turns (s-bends, continuous u-bends, etc.).
- Roads that are in poor condition, such as icy or slippery roads.
- In bad weather conditions, such as heavy rain, heavy snow, heavy fog, etc. Urban roads.

warning

ACC does not respond fully in the following special conditions, difficult road conditions, poor weather or light conditions, be sure to be concerned with the environment and conditions. Be alert, always place your hand on the steering wheel and take over the vehicle at any time, including but not limited to:

- Suddenly another vehicle moves quickly or at a close range to the front of the vehicle.
- When adjacent lane vehicles have only part of the body cut into front of the vehicle (especially large vehicles such as buses, trucks, etc.).
- The vehicle ahead slows down suddenly.
- Make a U-turn or drive in through the vehicle.
- When driving in tunnels or at night, when trucks, buses, or vehicles with oversized loads are in the side lane.
- When approaching or cornering through a road, there are multiple vehicles in parallel.
- For stationary vehicles or objects, such as obstacles to the road surface, especially if the vehicle ahead leaves your driving lane causing the vehicle or object ahead to be stationary.
- On an uphill section.
- Increase ground speed when descending a hill, when the vehicle exceeds a set speed or road speed limit.

warning

ACC is unable to fully recognize and respond to the following environments and targets, it is important to keep an eye on the environment and road conditions and take over the vehicle in a timely manner to ensure safe driving in the following scenarios. This includes, but is not limited to:

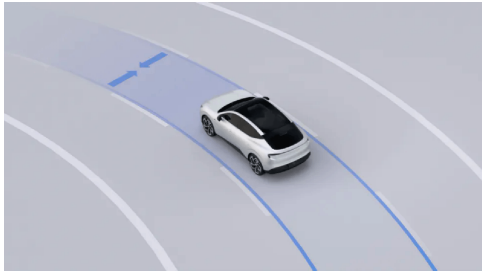
- The following targets are encountered in front of the drive, including but not limited to:
  - People, animals. Traffic lights.

  - Walls, roadblocks.
  - Two-wheelers (bicycles, motorcycles, electric cars, etc.), three-wheelers.
  - Other non-vehicle objects.
  - Target in sensor blind area.
- Vehicle or object on the other side of the ramp.
- In the event of a vehicle traveling in opposite directions.
- When the vehicle in front is fitted with an object that protrudes beyond its body.
- In the event of construction, accidents, etc.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all situations that affect the normal operation of ACC.

Lane Centering Control LCC

Function Overview



LCC is a comfort-oriented driving assistance function that can assist the driver in controlling the steering wheel and keep the vehicle centered in the current lane to the greatest extent possible.

When LCC is activated, LCC assists the driver in controlling the steering wheel, and keeps the vehicle centered in the current lane to the greatest extent possible on straight roads and

roads with standard curvature where the lane lines on both sides are clearly visible.

warning

LCC is only an assisted driving function and cannot respond to all traffic, weather, and road conditions. As the driver of the vehicle, you are responsible for driving safety. Please hold the steering wheel firmly at all times and observe the road conditions. If danger occurs, take over promptly. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury or death may result.

Status Indicator Light

LCC unavailable.

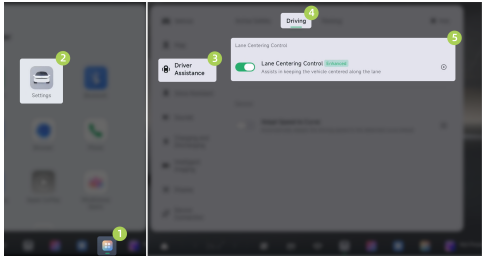
When the LCC activation conditions are met, LCC can be activated.

LCC is activated.

LCC exit will be delayed.

A system fault exists.

Open and Close



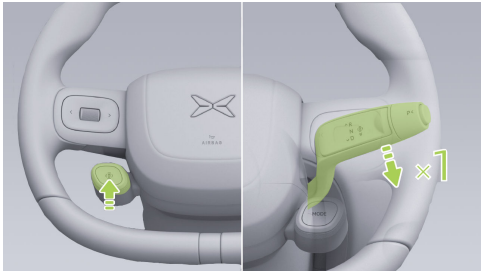
On the center control screen "→**Settings**→**driving assistance**→**Driving Combo**"On the interface, you can select assisted driving functions.

- Not enabled: Disable the assisted driving function.
- Lane Centering Control: Enable the Lane Centering Control function.

Activate LCC

After enabling the LCC function, you can activate the LCC function by following these steps:

1. When LCC can be activated, in the HUD and the central control screen The indicator illuminates.
2. LCC can be activated in the following ways:



- Press the left intelligent driving control button to activate LCC.
- Push the gear selector all the way down once to activate LCC.

After LCC is activated, in the HUD, instrument cluster screen, and central control screen, The indicator illuminates, accompanied by a voice prompt.

i Tips

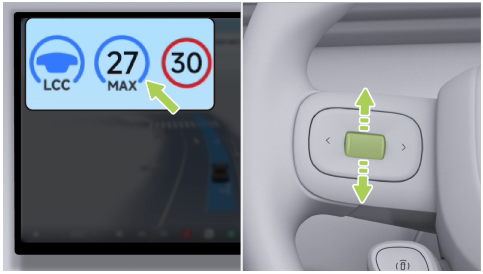
LCC can be activated when the following conditions are met:

- The components related to LCC are functioning properly and the view is clear.
- The lane markings are clearly visible.
- The wipers are not set to high-speed wiping.
- The brake pedal is not being pressed.
- The vehicle speed meets the requirements:
  - The vehicle speed is less than 100 km/h on urban roads or less than 130 km/h on urban expressways.

- There are no safety risks, including but not limited to:
  - The seat belt is fastened correctly.
  - Both hands are holding the steering wheel firmly.
  - All doors are closed.
  - Tire pressure is normal.
  - Functions such as ABS and AEB are not activated.
  - You are not driving while fatigued.

If any of the above conditions are not met, LCC cannot be activated.

Set Maximum Cruise Speed



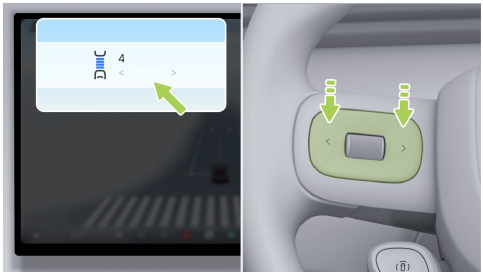
When LCC is activated, you can use the left scroll wheel on the steering wheel or the speed assistance SAS to set the maximum cruise speed.

- Slowly scroll the wheel; the maximum cruise speed changes by 1 km/h.
- Quickly scroll the wheel; the maximum cruise speed changes by 5 km/h.

You can also press the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed, then push the shift

lever downward and hold it to set the current vehicle speed as the new cruise speed. If you do not push and hold the shift lever, when you release the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will decelerate to the previously set speed and continue cruising.

Set Following Distance



When LCC is activated, the left/right buttons on the left side of the steering wheel can be used to set the following distance, with 5 levels available for selection.

i Tips

When the follow distance is set, the center screen displays the gear position of the gap.

warning

- If the set following distance interval is too low, there may not be enough time to react in the event of an unexpected situation.
- You are always responsible for maintaining a safe distance and speed, and for braking in time when necessary.

Hands-Off Detection Reminder

During the function use process, the system will detect in real time the driver's status of holding the steering wheel. If the driver releases the steering wheel for a certain period of time, the system will issue "**Please keep your hands on the steering wheel.**"A prompt is displayed and accompanied by an audible alert. At this time, the driver should grasp the steering wheel again to clear the alarm.

If the driver still does not hold the steering wheel, the system will progressively intensify the hands-off reminder through visual, audible, and tactile reminder methods. When the continuous hands-off duration reaches the specified time, the system will issue "**Take Over Immediately**"Reminder: At this time, the driver should immediately respond to the vehicle takeover request and promptly control the vehicle's driving direction. In the current driving cycle, if a manual vehicle takeover request is triggered due to hands being off the steering wheel for a long time, the driving assistance function will not be available for use during this trip. It can be used again only after driving to a safe area and restarting the vehicle.

warning

- The hands-off detection reminder is only an auxiliary function and cannot replace the driver's judgment of takeover timing. The driver should remain attentive while driving and respond promptly to reminder messages issued by the system.
- As the driver of the vehicle, the driver is responsible for safe driving. During driving, comply with traffic regulations, consciously keep both hands on the steering wheel throughout the entire driving process, and do not use any means to deceive the hands-off detection system.

Alerts and Takeover

warning

- If the vehicle issues a takeover request through the SR interface, voice announcements, or other means, take over immediately.
- If a hazard is detected, or a Combo requiring takeover occurs, take over immediately. Do not wait for the vehicle to issue a takeover request.

When LCC is activated, control can be taken over in the following ways:

- Press the accelerator pedal: temporarily take over vehicle speed.

- Press the brake pedal: exit LCC.
- Push the gear selector lever upward: exit LCC.
- Press the left intelligent driving control button: exit LCC.

If the vehicle's current status does not meet the LCC activation conditions, LCC will exit directly. Please be prepared to take over:

- The lane markings are unclear.
- Turn the steering wheel.

Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

Please read all content in this manual المتعلقة بـ LCC; you should understand these limitations before using the function.

LCC is designed for driving comfort and convenience and cannot respond to sudden dangerous situations. The driver is responsible for remaining alert at all times, driving safely, and maintaining control of the vehicle. Never rely on the system to respond to sudden emergency situations. Be sure to observe the road conditions ahead and be prepared to take corrective action at any time, otherwise serious injury or even death may result.

warning

The LCC cannot handle all traffic, road conditions and weather, do not use or turn on the LCC in the following scenarios:

- Road with varying conditions, such as twists and turns.
- At the junction or divergence of the road.
- Roads that have been constructed or modified.
- When lane line disappears or disconnects.
- When the lane line is blurred, disappeared, or covered.
- A road with a sharp change in lane direction ahead, such as road divergence, lane merging, sudden lane width increase or decrease.
- Roads that are in poor condition, such as bumps, ice or slippery roads.
- Urban roads.

- At a traffic intersection.
- When the vehicle ahead steers or a vehicle is moving in front of the vehicle.
- A section where pedestrians or cyclists may be present.
- In bad weather, such as rain, snow, fog.
- When the vehicle is in poor condition, for example: Abnormal four wheel alignment, abnormal tire pressures, etc.

warning

The LCC does not respond fully in the following special conditions, complex road sections, weather or poor lighting conditions, be sure to look out for the environment and conditions. Be alert, always place your hand on the steering wheel and take over the vehicle at any time, including but not limited to:

- Special road conditions or complex road sections:
  - On a sloping road, or on a downhill section.
  - High speed turns or sharp turns.
  - The intersection has a road/road/zebra line/arrow scene.
  - No lane line or excessive wear or blockage, overwriting, or disappearance of lane lines.
  - Temporary adjustment or rapid change due to road construction (e.g., lane forking, crossing or merging).
  - Special lane change scenarios such as lane diversions, diverting, diverting zones, lane widening, etc.
  - There are text or traffic signs on the surface of the road or dense text, traffic signs, asphalt oil, brake marks in the driveway, Tyre marks, ruts, etc.
  - Driveway is too wide or narrow.
  - The boundary of the road separated by ice cones, water horses, cement mounds, etc.
- Complicated road conditions:

- On congested roads.
- Pedestrians or cyclists' roads may appear.
- When other vehicles are moving in front of the vehicle.
- Suddenly a vehicle quickly changes lanes close to the front of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle ahead leaves the lane.
- The vehicle in front is blocking the camera's view or blocking the lane line.
- Large vehicles such as trucks, buses, etc. are on the side or in front.

• Poor weather or lighting conditions:

- Objects or landscape features are projected onto the driveway to form large shadows.
- When bright light, such as oncoming headlamp light or direct sunlight, prevents the camera from seeing its sights.
- Windshield glass blocks the camera's field of view (mist, dirt, stickers, etc.). -
- When there is a large lateral air flow or high wind on one side of the vehicle.

• Radar or camera restricted:

- Radar restricted.
- Camera restricted.
- Radar or camera blocked (dust, cover, etc.) or poor weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, heavy snow, heavy fog).

warning

The LCC cannot fully identify and respond to the following environments and targets, it is important to pay attention to the environment and road conditions, take over the vehicle in a timely manner in the following scenarios to ensure safe driving. This includes, but is not limited to:

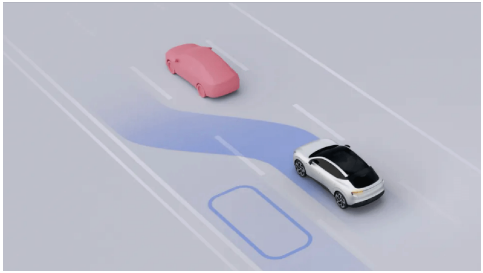
- Reliance on the system.
- Used when lane lines are not clear or light conditions are poor.
- Used in environments where pedestrians, cyclists or animals are heavy.

- Remove both hands from the steering wheel.
- Line of sight off the road.
- When there are guardrails, barriers or curb stones on one side of the road.
- The LCC will occasionally be able to assist the vehicle when secondary steering is not required or when you do not intend to steer, due to lack of clarity and irregularity in the lane line or other lines or objects on the surface of the lane that resemble a lane line, and you should take over the vehicle in time.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not exhaustively describe all situations that affect the normal operation of LCC.

Assisted Lane Change ALC*

Function Overview



When LCC is activated, turn on the turn signal, and ALC can assist the driver in changing lanes.

warning

ALC is only an assisted driving function and cannot respond to all traffic, weather, and road conditions. As the driver of the vehicle, you are responsible for driving safety. Please keep both hands on the steering wheel throughout the entire process and observe the road conditions. If danger arises, take over promptly. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury or even death may result.

Open and Close

On the center control screen "→**Settings→driving assistance→Driving Combo**"Interface, you can turn the assisted lane change on/off.

Using ALC

1. Check the lane change environment and confirm that the lane change is safe.
2. Turn on the corresponding side lane change light/turn signal.
3. If the ALC lane change conditions are met, ALC will assist the driver in changing lanes. If the lane change conditions are not met, a prompt will be displayed through the SR interface.

Tips

- The ALC can only change lanes one at a time, to change lanes again, switch on the opposite side of the traffic light/turn signal again.
- ALC cannot change lanes across lines.
- Once the ALC is initiated, it will look for the right time for the scene to change lanes, and when it is canceled, The SR screen displays the "**lane change canceled**"as a reminder.
- The traffic/turn signals will switch off automatically when the lane change is completed or canceled using the ALC.

Alerts and Takeover

warning

- If the vehicle issues a takeover request via SR interface, voice announcement, etc., take over immediately.
- In the event of a hazard, or in the event of a situation requiring a takeover, take over immediately and do not wait for the vehicle to issue a takeover request.

After ALC is activated, the lane change can be canceled by the following operations:

- Turn the steering wheel: cancel the lane change and temporarily take over steering. When the conditions are met, LCC is reactivated.
- Press the brake pedal: cancel the lane change and exit LCC.

Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

ALC is an assisted driving function and cannot achieve autonomous driving. When ALC is activated, the driver still needs to always observe whether the lane change environment is safe, so as to take over the vehicle in time when there is a potential danger.

ALC is designed for driving comfort and convenience and cannot respond to sudden dangerous situations. The driver is responsible for remaining alert at all times, driving safely, and

maintaining control of the vehicle. Never rely on the system to respond to sudden emergencies. Be sure to observe the road conditions ahead and be prepared to take corrective action at any time, otherwise serious injury or death may result.

ALC may unexpectedly deactivate at any time for unknown reasons. Be sure to observe road safety conditions and be prepared to take appropriate measures. The driver is always responsible for lane change safety.

warning

Read all of the information about ALC in this manual and you should be aware of these limitations before using the feature.

- The ALC cannot handle all traffic, weather and road conditions and must not operate in bad weather (e.g. rain, snow, fog weather) and where pedestrians or cyclists may be present.
- Do not use the ALC when a vehicle is in front of or adjacent to the side of the vehicle, as it may collide with other vehicles.
- During the use of the ALC, if other vehicles change lane at the same time and the same lane as the vehicle is about to change lane, the function cannot avoid the risk of collision at this time, the driver should always observe the changing lane environment safe and timely intervention in vehicle control. The driver is solely responsible for safely changing lanes to avoid collisions.
- Do not use the ALC when the vehicle is in poor condition, for example: Abnormal four wheel alignment, abnormal tire pressures, etc.
- Do not use the ALC on ramps, commutes, or diverts on highways or other roads.
- Use ALC with caution on cornering, the system may not support lane change assist.
- Do not use the ALC on urban roads or in difficult conditions.
- Do not use the ALC on tight curves, bumps, ice, or slippery surfaces, where the system is unable to stabilize on lane change assist.

- The ALC occasionally recognizes a condition that allows lane change as not allowing lane change, which requires you to change lanes manually.
- ALC may not be able to accurately detect traffic changes on high traffic sections, use ALC with caution.
- Do not use ALC on lanes marked as solid or other road sections with restricted traffic changes.
- When using the ALC, the driver must take over immediately if another vehicle approaches the vehicle quickly, and the ALC cannot avoid a possible collision.
- Do not use the ALC when there are other vehicles in the side rear blind area of this vehicle or in the lane of a traffic change.
- There are sharp turns on the road, or the road is in poor condition, such as rough, slippery or icy roads.
- On a sloping road.
- Pedestrians or cyclists' roads may appear.
- Dark (poor lighting) or poor visibility (due to heavy rain, snow, heavy fog, etc.).
- When bright light, such as oncoming headlamp light or direct sunlight, prevents the camera from seeing its sights.
- Windshield glass blocks the camera's field of view (mist, dirt, stickers, etc.).
- Excessive wear or blockage of lane lines, overwriting, overlap of old and new markings, temporary adjustment or rapid change due to road construction (e.g. driveways are split, crossed or merged).
- Objects or landscape features are projected onto the driveway to form large shadows.
- Warning cones, warning signs or other objects are placed on the surface of the road.
- Radar restricted.
- Radar or camera blocked (dust, cover, etc.) or poor weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, heavy snow, heavy fog).

- Performance can be compromised when there is large lateral air flow or strong wind on one side of the vehicle, which is not suitable for ALC use.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not exhaustively describe all situations that affect the normal operation of ALC.

Forward Rear Radar Warning

Introduction

During parking and low-speed driving, the ultrasonic radar can detect the distance between the vehicle and surrounding obstacles, and provide alerts through the SR interface and alert sounds.

caution

- When a red bar is displayed, the obstacle is close to the vehicle and requires extra attention.
- As the distance of the vehicle from the obstacle decreases, the frequency of the warning tone will increase gradually.

Tips

- The radar will only warn you if your vehicle is in D gear at a speed of less than 12 km/h; there is no speed limit for the radar alarm when you are in R gear.
- Radar alerts even if the obstacle is soft (such as tall weeds) and does not damage the vehicle.

Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

caution

When the radar malfunctions, the central control screen will display the text prompt "Parking malfunction, please contact customer service". Please go to an XPENG Service Center for repair.

warning

Radar alerts may not work correctly in the following scenarios:

-
- The vehicle approaches the obstacle at a faster speed.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all situations that may affect the normal operation of the radar warning.

Assisted Parking APA

Introduction

APA can assist the driver in parking into and exiting perpendicular parking spaces, parallel parking spaces, and angled parking spaces, with or without parking space lines, and supports the following activation methods:

- Central Control Screen
- Phone Key
- Remote Key

warning

APA is only a driving aid and cannot handle all traffic, weather and conditions, and you, as the driver of your vehicle, are responsible for driving safety. Please hold the steering wheel all the way, observe the road, and take over in case of danger. Do not rely on this feature to control the vehicle, as injury or death may result.

Status Indicator Light

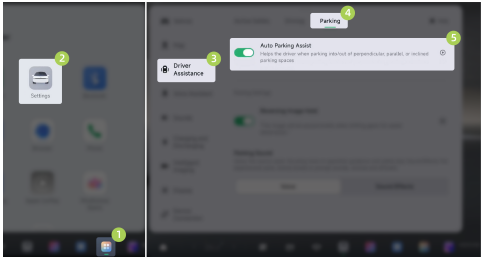
APA can be activated

APA Activated

APA Unavailable

Operation

Open and Close



On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**driving assistance**→**Parking Combo**"On the interface, you can turn parking assist on/off.

Using APA

1. Parking mode can be entered using any of the following methods:
   - Automatic switching. When the vehicle enters a parking environment such as an underground garage, it automatically enters parking mode.
   - Press the steering wheel shortcut button.
   - Tap the central control screen "**I want to park**"。
   - Speak directly "**Hello XPENG, I want to park.**"。
2. Drive to search for the target parking space.

> **Tips**
>
> - Please keep the lateral distance between the vehicle and the parking space between 1 and 2 meters while finding a parking space.
> - When searching for a parking space, the vehicle speed should not exceed 24 km/h.

3. When the target parking space is highlighted, depress the brake pedal and tap the target parking space on the center display to select it.

4. At this time, you can park into the parking space by using the following methods:

   Central Control Screen:

   - Tap the central control screen's "**Start Parking**", then release the brake pedal.
   - Tap the upper right corner of the parking card ···You can select the parking-in orientation. After confirming the parking-in orientation, click again. "**Start Parking**", then release the brake pedal.

   Phone Key: Shift into P gear, get out of the vehicle and close the door properly, open the Intelligent Parking module in the mobile app, tap "**Remote Parking**", wait until the vehicle Side Mirrors fold and the hazard lights turn on, then tap "**Start Parking In**"。

i Tips

- When parking a space with the mobile key, the vehicle automatically shifts to P, locking the vehicle down.
- When parking a parking space with the mobile phone key, the mobile phone needs to remain near the vehicle or the function will exit.

Remote Parking Entry: Tap on the center display "**Remote Parking**"When the pop-up window appears, after selecting the start method, the occupants in the vehicle may leave the vehicle with their mobile phones. The vehicle turns on the hazard warning lights and then starts automatic parking.

If selected "**Automatically Start Parking After Leaving the Vehicle**"Passengers inside the vehicle may then take their mobile phones and exit the vehicle. After exiting, close all doors and keep a certain distance away. The vehicle turns on the hazard warning lights and then starts automatic parking.

If selected "**Confirm Outside the Vehicle to Start Parking In**"Occupants in the vehicle can then leave the vehicle carrying the mobile phone. After exiting the vehicle, close all

doors and trigger it by either of the following methods:

- Cover the side rear camera at the fender for 3 seconds. The vehicle turns on the hazard warning lights, and then starts automatic parking.

i Tips

This mode is dependent on ambient brightness, if the ambient conditions do not support it. The vehicle broadcast "**cannot be initiated by blocking the camera at this time**". Please activate the feature with the App.

- Tap the App notification to activate the function. The vehicle turns on the hazard warning lights and then starts automatic parking.

i Tips

- Before using Park Away, make sure notification permission is turned on for the mobile app.
- Keep observing the vehicle's surroundings when parking begins, while keeping Bluetooth on and waiting for the vehicle to be electrically locked before leaving.

Alerts and Takeover

warning

- If the vehicle sends a takeover request via a meter, voice announcement, etc., take over immediately.
- In the event of a hazard, or in the event of a situation requiring a takeover, take over immediately and do not wait for the vehicle to issue a takeover request.
- Make sure that no one is in the vehicle before parking a space using the Remote Key */Mobile App.
- When using Park Exit, exit the vehicle and close the door, check for children or other important items left behind in the rear seats.

When APA is activated, it can be paused in the following ways:

- Center display parking: You can press the brake pedal at any time to pause APA.
- Remote key parking: Briefly press any button on the smart key.
- Phone Key Parking: Tap on the mobile app page's “**Pause**”Button.

After confirming safety, APA can be restored through the following operations:

- Center display parking: Tap on the center display “**Continue**”。
- Remote key parking: Double-press the parking button on the remote key.
- Phone Key Parking: Tap in the mobile app “**Continue**”。

APA Exit Conditions:

- Manually turn the steering wheel.
- Press the brake pedal to shift.
- APA paused for more than 30 seconds without resuming.
- The APA has been paused 3 times due to a door being opened, the accelerator pedal being depressed, or the brake pedal being depressed.
- Remote parking-in: Parking can be aborted by opening the door, tapping End Parking in the App, pressing any button on the remote key, or tapping the vehicle lock button in the App.

Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

warning

Do not use APA in the following scenarios:

- The road is a ramp.
- One or more ultrasonic sensors, the Surround Camera is dirty or obstructed (e.g. sludge, snow or water hanging).
- Poor weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, heavy snow, heavy fog, etc.).
- The road surface is uneven, icy or slippery.

- Kerb material is not a stone or the curb cannot be detected.
- There are poor surfaces (e.g., cliffs, high platforms, sidewalks facing the street, etc.).
- Fitted with anti-slip chains or spare wheels.
- The loaded object protrudes from the vehicle.
- Either side of the left or right exterior mirrors is damaged or in an incorrect position.
- Parking spaces on narrow streets, or narrow parking spaces.
- Modifications to the vehicle or vehicle repairs carried out at a non-XPENG Automobile Service Center affect the normal functioning of the vehicle.

warning

In the following scenarios, the APA may not be able to take security measures and should take over the vehicle immediately:

- When the instrument or the central control screen sends you a takeover request.
- When APA exits unexpectedly.
- Vehicles, pedestrians and objects were encountered during parking and automatic avoidance or braking was not completed in time.

warning

APA may have the following situations, please note the takeover:

- Obstruction above and above exterior mirror height.
- Dangling, small, and small-width obstructions.
- A target in a camera or radar blind spot.
- Pedestrians or animals.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all situations that may affect the normal operation of APA.

Auto Exit Parking Assist AEP

Introduction

After using APA to park the vehicle in a parking space, if the vehicle has not been moved, you can use the following methods to exit the parking space:

- Center display: After entering the vehicle, close the doors properly, shift to R gear, and tap on the center display. “**Start Exit Parking**”。
- Remote key: Press and hold the parking button on the remote key. After the vehicle Side Mirrors fold and the hazard warning lights turn on, double-press the parking button on the remote key.
- Phone Key: Open the mobile app, tap “**Remote Parking**”, wait until the vehicle Side Mirrors fold and the hazard warning lights turn on, then tap “**Start Exit Parking**”。

i Tips

To access the Park Out feature, log in to the owner's account number on the central control screen and turn on the super smart park switch.

warning

- AEP is only a driving aid and cannot handle all traffic, weather and conditions, and you, as the driver of your vehicle, are responsible for driving safely. Please hold the steering wheel all the way, observe the road, and take over in case of danger. Do not rely on this feature to control the vehicle, as injury or death may result.
- The APA warnings, alarms and takeovers, etc., also apply to AEP.

Custom Parking*

Function Overview

After enabling the APA assisted parking function, in a scenario without parking space lines, you can also select “**custom parking**”Method: park the vehicle in the designated position:

1. Tap the lower left corner of the center display. “**Custom parking available**”, a white parking space box will appear in the right-side view.

> **Tips**
>
> You can also wake up XPENG and state your command, for example: enable custom parking, exit custom parking.

2. Place the custom parking space box in a safe and suitable position:
   - You can adjust the position by dragging the white parking space box, adjust the angle by dragging the rotation icon at the top of the parking space box, or draw a straight line to quickly generate a parking space box.
   - You can also tap to enable the AI calibration function (when the custom parking space box is close to boundary objects such as curbs and walls, the parking space box will automatically adjust to an appropriate position with reference to these boundary objects), and the system will assist the driver in fine-tuning the position of the parking space box.

> **caution**
>
> When placing a custom parking space, observe the surrounding parking environment and place the parking space in a safe and suitable location. Avoid placing in situations that are too narrow, have other objects, are not flat on the ground, are adjacent to steps, or are otherwise restricted to the system.

3. After the adjustment is completed, when the white parking space frame changes to blue, it

indicates that the parking space is parkable. If the parking space frame does not change to blue, readjust the parking space to an appropriate position.

4. After confirming the target parking space, tap while depressing the brake pedal. “**Start parking**”。
5. Release the brake pedal and the steering wheel according to the prompts on the center display, and APA will control the vehicle to begin parking.

i Tips

During parking, the driver can switch to the front/rear view or 360°panoramic view by tapping the icon in the upper left corner of the right view. The driver should always pay attention to the surrounding hazards and vehicle conditions, timely intervention or take over of the vehicle if necessary, to ensure safe parking.

6. After parking is completed, the vehicle automatically shifts to P gear and provides a prompt. “**Parking completed**”。

warning

- Custom parking is only an assisted driving function and cannot respond to all traffic, weather, and road conditions. You, as the driver of the vehicle, are responsible for driving safety. Please keep both hands on the steering wheel throughout the entire process and observe the road conditions. In case of danger, take over promptly. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury or even death may result.
- Warnings and precautions, alerts and takeover, etc. of APA also apply to custom parking.

Remote Vehicle Summons*

Introduction

You can use the remote key*/phone key to control the vehicle to move forward or backward, making it easier for the vehicle to enter or exit narrow parking spaces where people cannot get in or out smoothly.

Tips

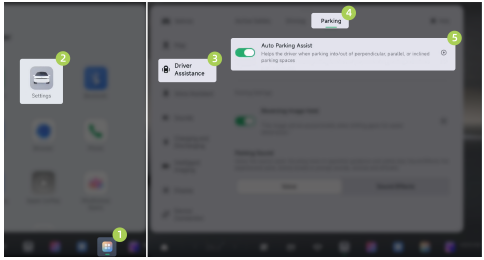
Direct Summon has an obstacle avoidance function, which can be actively suspended if an obstacle is encountered.

warning

Direct Call is only a driving aid and cannot handle all traffic, weather and road conditions, and you, as the driver of your vehicle, are responsible for driving safely. Do not rely on this feature to control the vehicle, as injury or death may result.

Operation

Open and Close



On the central control screen "→**Settings→driving assistance→Parking Combo**"Interface, where assisted parking can be turned on/off.

Phone Key Remote Vehicle Summons

1. Open the mobile app and tap "**My XPENG→Remote Vehicle Summons**", the vehicle Side Mirrors fold, and the hazard lights turn on.

Tips

- When the current network condition is good, the 360 Camera will automatically start in the mobile App. However, due to network latency, the actual situation may differ from the image displayed in the mobile App. Please observe the surrounding parking environment.
- After the 360 Camera is activated, when there is an obstacle in the vehicle's direction of travel, the corresponding radar warning will be displayed in the mobile App according to the distance to the obstacle:
  - When white is displayed, the distance is relatively far.
  - When red is displayed, the distance is very close.
  - The distance between the vehicle and the nearest obstacle is also displayed numerically at the front and rear of the vehicle.

2. Press and hold the switch to control the vehicle to move forward or backward. Release the switch and the vehicle will stop moving.
3. While the vehicle is moving forward or reversing, follow the prompts in the mobile App, read and understand the safety statement, and then tap "Confirm" to disable the vehicle's detection of side obstacles, so that it can pass through narrow environments.

caution

After Side Collision Detection is turned off, continuing to use Remote Vehicle Summons will pose a risk of vehicle collision. Always pay attention to the environment around the vehicle. You can release the "Forward/Reverse" button at any time to stop the vehicle and avoid a collision.

4. After entering or driving out of the parking space, tap Back to exit the function.

Warnings and Takeover

warning

In the event of a hazard or a situation requiring a takeover, the function should be suspended immediately and never wait for the avoidance to trigger.

Remote Vehicle Summons will exit under the following circumstances:

- The phone key is too far from the vehicle.
- The bluetooth connection between the mobile phone and the vehicle is disconnected.
- Obstacle avoidance is triggered 3 times during a single use.
- No control of the vehicle moving forward or backward for more than 30 seconds.

Warnings, Cautions, and Limitations

warning

Do not use a straight call in the following scenarios:

- One or more ultrasonic sensors, the Surround Camera is dirty or obstructed (e.g. sludge, snow or water hanging).
- Poor weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, heavy snow, heavy fog, etc.).
- The road surface is uneven, icy or slippery.
- The road is a ramp.

warning

In the following scenarios, a direct call may not be safe and the vehicle should be taken over immediately:

- You are prompted to take over the vehicle.
- Vehicles, pedestrians and objects are encountered during parking and active avoidance or braking is not completed in time.
- Straight Summon unexpectedly exits.

warning

Do not perform the following when using a straight call:

- Line of sight away from vehicle.
- Fully rely on direct calling for parking.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all situations that affect the normal operation of Remote Vehicle Summons.

Reversing Assist*

Function Overview

Reversing Assist is a function that assists the driver in reversing along the original path. When entering difficult road conditions such as dead ends or narrow roads, Reversing Assist can be used to get out of trouble.

caution

Reversing Assist has obstacle avoidance functionality. If an obstacle is encountered, it will actively pause.

warning

Reversing Assist is only a driving assistance function and cannot handle all traffic, weather, and road conditions. As the driver of the vehicle, you are responsible for driving safety. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise an accident may occur.

Open and Close

On the central control screen "→**Settings→driving assistance→Parking Combo**"On the interface, you can turn parking assist on/off.

Using Reversing Assist

1. Drive forward at a speed below 30 km/h, and the system will automatically and silently memorize the latest valid path.
2. Stop the vehicle and shift into R gear.
3. At this time, Reversing Assist can be performed in the following ways:

- Tap the center display screen “**Reversing Assist Available**”Button.
- Tap the upper right corner of the parking card ···, Select “**Reversing Assist**”。

4. The system displays the distance of the valid route. Press and hold the brake pedal, fasten the seat belt, and tap the center display. “**Start Reversing Assist**”Button.
5. Release the brake pedal, and the system will automatically reverse at low speed along the valid path.

caution

- A drive path in D below 30km/h is likely to be recorded as a valid path up to 100m.
- Prior to activating follow-through, reversing, turning the steering wheel too far or driving on a hill will clear a valid route.

Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

warning

Do not use follow-through reversing in the following scenarios:

- The road is a ramp.
- One or more ultrasonic sensors, the Surround Camera is dirty or obstructed (e.g. sludge, snow or water hanging).
- Poor weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, heavy snow, heavy fog, etc.).
- The road surface is uneven, icy or slippery.
- There are poor surfaces (e.g., cliffs, high platforms, sidewalks facing the street, etc.).

warning

Following situations where a trailing reversing maneuver may not be safe, take over the vehicle immediately:

- The system prompts to take over the vehicle.
- When reversing unexpectedly exits.

- Vehicles, pedestrians and objects are encountered during reversing and automatic avoidance or braking is not completed in time.

warning

Take care of the takeover as you may experience the following when using trailing trails:

- Obstruction above and above exterior mirror height.
- Dangling, small, and small-width obstructions.
- A target in a camera or radar blind spot.
- Suddenly approaching a pedestrian or animal.

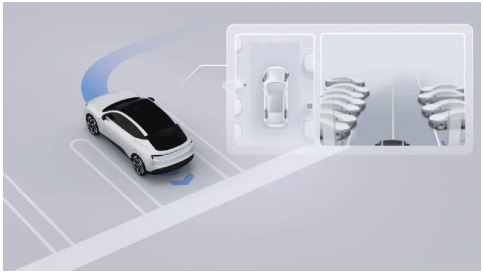
warning

Reversing Assist is only a driving assistance function and cannot respond to all traffic, weather, and road conditions. You, as the driver of the vehicle, are responsible for driving safety. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise an accident may occur.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all situations that may affect the normal operation of Reversing Assist.

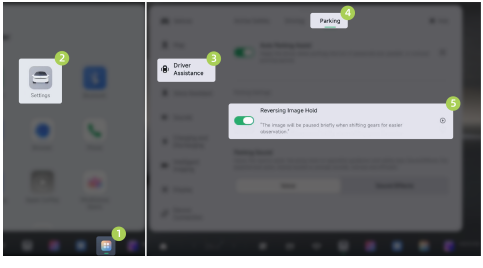
Reversing Image Hold During Gear Shift

Function Introduction



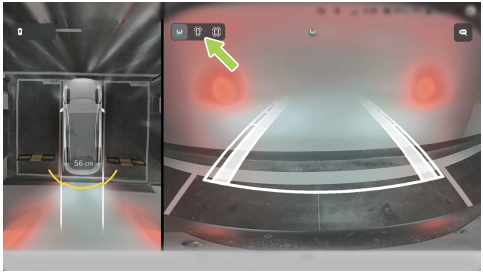
After the function is enabled, when the gear is switched from R gear to D Gear, the 360 Camera switches to the front view. Switching the gear to P gear or when the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h will automatically exit the 360 Camera.

Center Display Settings Items

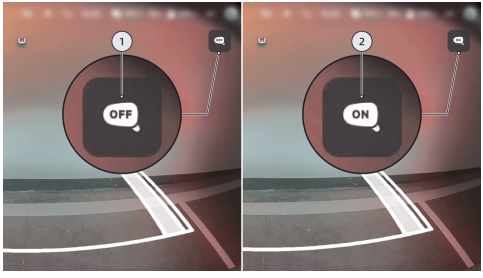


On the center control screen
“ →**Settings→driving assistance→Parking Combo**”Interface, can be opened/closed “**Reversing Image Hold**”。

Wheel Hub View Switching During Reversing



When reversing, you can tap the wheel hub view switching icon on the central control screen to switch between the rear view, front wheel hub view, and front and rear wheel hub view.

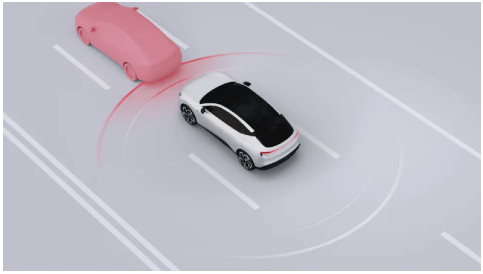


When reversing, you can tap the Mirror Fold icon on the center display to fold or unfold the Side Mirrors.

1. : Indicates that the Side Mirrors are in the unfolded state.
2. : Indicates that the Side Mirrors are in the folded state.

Forward Collision Warning FCW and AEB

Function Overview



The Forward Collision Warning function includes Forward Collision Warning (FCW) and Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB), which can reduce the risk of vehicle collision or reduce the vehicle speed at collision, improving driving safety.

warning

Forward Collision Warning does not operate when the vehicle is in reverse gear.

When the function detects a collision risk, it will provide an alert through the SR interface and a prompt sound.

warning

- For pedestrians and two-wheeled vehicles, FCW operates when the vehicle speed is approximately 10–85 km/h.
- For the vehicle, FCW operates when this vehicle's speed is approximately between 10 and 150 km/h.
- When the vehicle issues a warning, the driver should take immediate action and must not wait for AEB to intervene.

If the risk further increases and the driver still does not brake or the braking force is too small, the vehicle will brake actively to mitigate the damage of the collision.

warning

- For pedestrians and two-wheeled vehicles, AEB operates when the vehicle speed is approximately 4–85 km/h.
- For moving, stationary, or slowly moving vehicles, AEB operates when the vehicle speed is approximately 4–150 km/h.
- If AEB brings the vehicle to a stop, the vehicle will remain stationary briefly, and the driver should take over braking as soon as possible.
- During the process in which AEB intervenes in vehicle braking, if the driver depresses the accelerator pedal, braking may be interrupted.
- If the driver or passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the AEB function will be disabled.

warning

- Forward Collision Warning is an aid that does not work in all driving, traffic, weather and road conditions. There is no substitute for focused driving and accurate judgment, and the driver is fully responsible for driving safety. Always observe the road conditions while driving and do not rely on forward collision warnings to warn or avoid possible collisions. A number of factors can degrade or affect performance, resulting in unnecessary, inaccurate or ineffective warnings, brake interventions or missed warnings. Reliance on Forward Collision Warning to warn of potential collisions and avoid possible serious personal or even death.
- Autonomous Emergency Braking is not designed to prevent collisions. It can only minimize the impact of a frontal impact by attempting to reduce the road speed at most. Relying on Autonomous Emergency Braking to avoid collisions can cause serious injury or death.

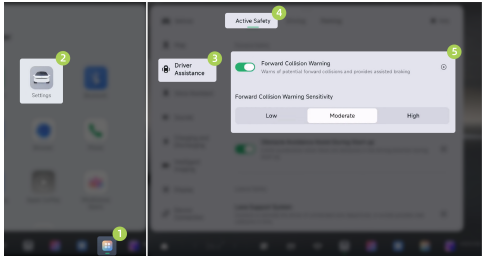
Status Indicator Light

Forward Collision Warning Off

Forward Collision Warning malfunction

Open and Close

On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**driving assistance**→**Active Safety**"On the interface, you can turn Forward Collision Warning on/off. After the function is turned on, you can set the sensitivity of Forward Collision Warning.



Tips

Forward Collision Warning is automatically enabled each time you drive. For your safety, it is recommended to keep it enabled at all times.

Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

Before using Forward Collision Warning, the driver should refer to this chapter to understand the relevant functional usage guidelines and limitations.

warning

Do not rely solely on the forward collision warning feature in the following scenarios, which may be limited or inoperable:

- Radar or camera restricted.
- Dark or poor visibility. For example, poor lighting conditions, heavy rain, heavy snow, heavy fog, etc.
- When strong light is obstructing the camera's view. For example, oncoming headlamp light or direct sunlight.
- Windshield glass blocks the camera's field of view (mist, dirt, stickers, etc.).
- Reversing vehicles ahead.
- The vehicle is driven on large bends or in poor road conditions.
- The target appears suddenly. For example, there is a sudden rapid movement of another vehicle or a close movement to the front of the vehicle.
- Insufficient target overlap (coincidence of front and rear width of front).
- Driver brakes, deep accelerator pedal, fast or large steering wheel operation.
- There is a stationary vehicle at the exit and exit of the bend.
- Driving around a bend, the approaching vehicle slows down suddenly.
- A vehicle overtaking from the front at a corner.
- Passing a stationary roadside target or overtaking when changing lanes.
- Front vehicles change lane after braking.
- The vehicle passes through a speed strip, a ground leak, or an iron gate in the garage.
- When the vehicle passes over viaducts, footbridges, under signs.
- When the vehicle passes through viaduct joints, metal barriers at the roadside, etc.
- Traffic lights ahead, water from a sprinkler, splashing water, iron posts on the road, Steel

tubes in the sky, floating plastic bags, rolling cans on the road, underground parking, Highway tolls, manholes, etc.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all situations that affect the normal operation of FCW and AEB.

Blind Spot Detection BSD and LCA

Function Overview

Blind Spot Detection includes blind spot monitoring warning and lane change warning, and can monitor the lanes on both sides of the vehicle and provide a reminder when there is a risk during lane changing.

When the vehicle is in D gear and the vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h, if there is a vehicle in the vehicle blind spot, or there is a rapidly approaching vehicle behind the blind spot, the warning light on the corresponding Side Mirror remains steadily on. At this time, if the lane change indicator or turn signal on the

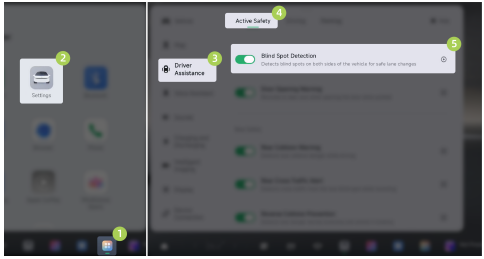
corresponding side is turned on, the warning light on the Side Mirror changes to flashing as a reminder.

warning

Blind Spot Safety Assist is a driving aid and cannot deal with all traffic, weather and conditions, and is not a substitute for driver focus and accurate judgment. It is also not intended to replace the use of interior and exterior mirrors. You, as the driver of the vehicle, are responsible for driving safely and it is always the driver's responsibility to change lanes safely. Do not rely on this feature to control the vehicle, as injury or death may result.

Open and Close

On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**driving assistance**→**Active Safety**" Interface, where Blind Spot Detection can be turned on/off.



Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

warning

The blind area safety assist may not work in the following scenarios:

- Radar restricted.
- Sharp bends.
- When reversing.
- Large moving metal objects are present in the blind area.

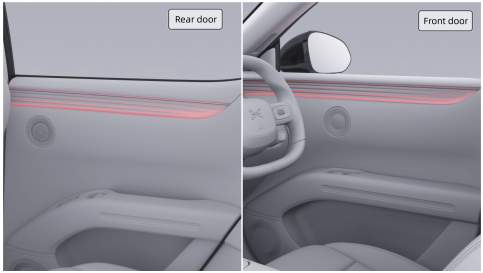
The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all situations that affect the normal operation of Blind Spot Detection.

Door Opening Warning DOW

Function Overview

When there is a collision risk while opening the door, DOW can alert the driver and passengers.

When the vehicle speed is 0–5 km/h and a vehicle, pedestrian, or two-wheeled vehicle is approaching at a certain speed within the detection range, DOW triggers a level-1 warning, that is, a reminder is given by the warning light on the corresponding side Side Mirror remaining steadily illuminated.



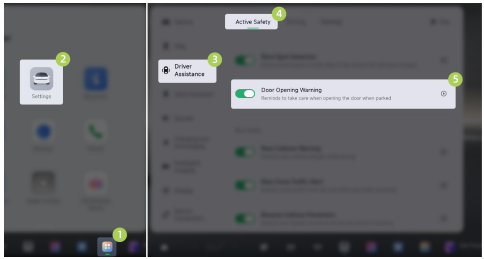
If the driver or passengers still open the corresponding side door, a level-2 alarm will be triggered, accompanied by reminders through the SR interface, warning sound, and flashing door Ambient Lights.

warning

RCW is only a driving assistance function and cannot handle all traffic, weather, and road conditions. It cannot replace the driver's attentive driving and accurate judgment, nor can it replace the use of the Rearview Mirror and Side Mirrors. As the driver of the vehicle, you are responsible for driving safety. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury or even death may result.

Open and Close

On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**driving assistance**→**Active Safety**" interface, you can turn Door Opening Warning on/off.



Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

warning

DOW may not work in the following scenarios:

- Radar restricted.
- Smaller targets or stationary targets.
- Target speed too fast or steering behavior. For example: The target vehicle changes lanes directly behind the host vehicle, and other vehicles suddenly change lanes directly behind the host vehicle and are now in the monitoring area.
- Other vehicles, cyclists that appear directly behind the vehicle.
- The vehicle is parked at a corner or near a wall.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all conditions that affect the normal operation of DOW.

Rear Collision Warning RCW

Function Overview

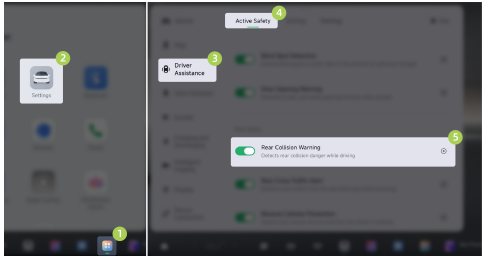
When the vehicle is moving forward at a speed of 15-160 km/h, if RCW detects that a rear vehicle may collide with your vehicle from behind, it will alert the driver through audible and visual signals, and activate the hazard warning lights to remind the driver of the rear vehicle to pay attention to braking, so as to ensure driving safety.

warning

RCW is only a driving assistance function and cannot handle all traffic, weather, and road conditions. It cannot replace the driver's attentive driving and accurate judgment, nor can it replace the use of the interior Rearview Mirror and exterior side mirrors. As the driver of the vehicle, you are responsible for driving safety. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury or even death may result.

Open and Close

On the center control screen "→**Settings**→**driving assistance**→**Active Safety**"Interface, where Rear Collision Warning can be turned on/off.



Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

warning

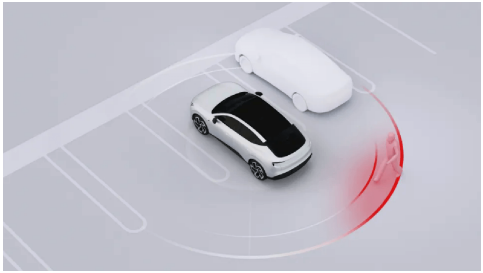
In the following scenarios, the RCW may not function properly:

- Radar restricted.
- Object detection speed is too fast.
- Large moving metal objects are present in the blind area.
- Sharp bends.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all conditions that affect the normal operation of RCW.

Reverse Collision Prevention RAEB

Function Overview



The Reverse Collision Prevention function can identify the risk of a collision behind the vehicle while reversing, issue an alarm, and assist braking.

When the vehicle is in reverse gear (R) and the vehicle speed is between 0 and 18 km/h, if a pedestrian approaching at a certain speed is detected within the detection range and there is a collision risk, RAEB provides an alert through the SR interface and a prompt sound.

If the risk further increases and the driver still does not brake or the braking force is too small, RAEB will assist braking to reduce or avoid injuries caused by vehicle collisions.

warning

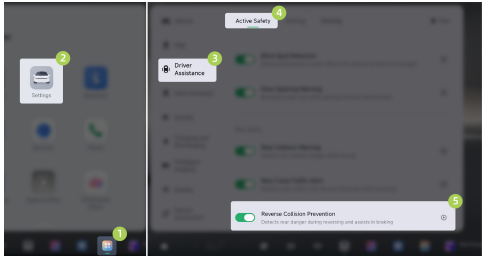
RCTA is only a driving assistance function and cannot respond to all traffic, weather, and road conditions. It cannot replace the driver's attentive driving and accurate judgment, nor can it replace the use of the Rearview Mirror and Side Mirrors. Never take risks while driving because the system improves comfort. Reversing in a safe manner is always the driver's responsibility. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury or even death may result.

warning

RCTA is only a driving assistance function and cannot handle all traffic, weather, and road conditions. It cannot replace the driver's attentive driving and accurate judgment, nor can it replace the use of the Rearview Mirror and Side Mirrors. Never take risks while driving because the system has improved comfort. Reversing the vehicle safely is always the driver's responsibility. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury or even death may result.

Open and Close

On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**driving assistance**→**Active Safety**"On the interface, you can turn Reverse Collision Prevention on/off.



Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

warning

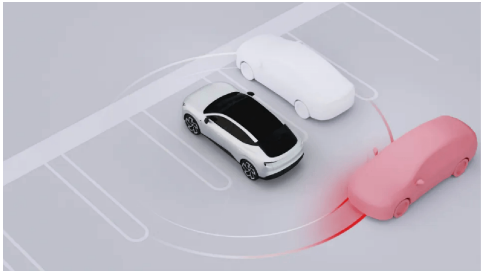
RAEB may not function properly in all cases and may cause unnecessary, untimely or ineffective warnings for a variety of reasons. Or omit warnings, such as:

- Radar restricted.
- Large moving metal objects in blind spot area.
- The object to be detected moves too fast.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all conditions that affect the normal operation of RAEB.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert RCTA

Function Overview



When the reversing field of view is limited, RCTA can alert the driver to approaching vehicles in the blind spots on both sides at the rear.

When the vehicle is in R gear or N gear, and the reversing speed is 2–15 km/h, if a vehicle, pedestrian, or two-wheeled vehicle is approaching at a certain speed within the detection range and there is a collision risk, RCTA is activated and provides an alert through the SR interface and a prompt sound.

warning

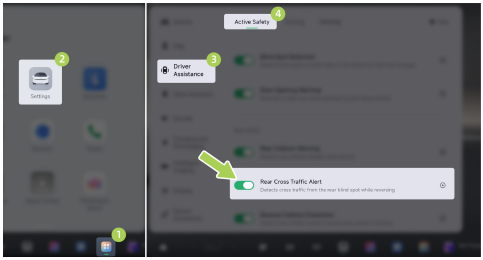
RCTA is only a driving assistance function and cannot handle all traffic, weather, and road conditions. It cannot replace the driver's attentive driving and accurate judgment, nor can it replace the use of the Rearview Mirror and Side Mirrors. Never take risks while driving because the system has improved comfort. Reversing the vehicle safely is always the driver's responsibility. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury or even death may result.

Open and Close

On the center control screen

" →**Settings**→**driving assistance**→**Active**

Safety"Interface, where Rear Cross Traffic Alert can be turned on/off.



Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

warning

Do not use RCTA in the following scenarios:

- Limited field of view.
- Traffic conditions are complex, such as high traffic roads, crossing multiple carriageways.

warning

RCTA may not work in the following scenarios:

- Radar restricted.
- Object detection speed is too fast.
- Large moving metal objects are present in the blind area.

warning

RCTA may have the following conditions:

- Travellers and two-wheelers are not accurately identified.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all conditions that affect the normal operation of RCTA.

Startup Safety Assist

Function Overview

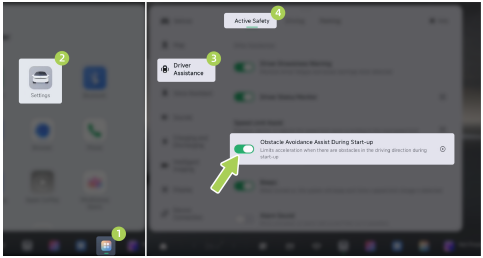
When the vehicle starts, if an obstacle is detected in the driving direction and the driver depresses the accelerator pedal too quickly, Startup Safety Assist will limit vehicle Power Response to avoid a collision with the obstacle caused by excessively rapid acceleration of the electric vehicle.

warning

LSS is only a driving assistance function and cannot respond to all traffic, weather, and road conditions. It cannot replace the driver's attentive driving and accurate judgment. As the driver of the vehicle, you are responsible for driving safety. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury or even death may result.

Open and Close

On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**driving assistance**→**Active Safety**" On the interface, you can turn Startup Safety Assist on/off.



Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

warning

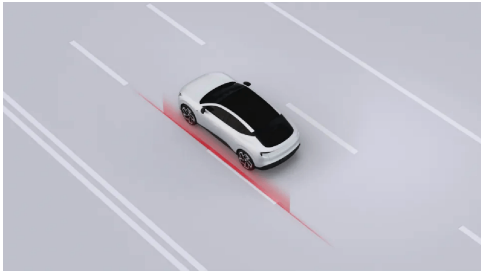
Drive-away Avoidance Assist does not always work in a variety of situations, and may cause unnecessary, inaccurate, or ineffective warnings or omissions for a variety of reasons, such as:

- Radar restricted.
- Large moving metal objects are present in the blind area.
- Object detection speed is too fast.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all situations that may affect the normal operation of Startup Safety Assist.

Lane Departure Assist LSS

Function Overview



The LSS includes Lane Departure Warning (LDW), Lane Keeping Assist (LKA), and lane emergency keeping assist (ELK), and can alert and correct unintentional lane departure or

possible lateral collisions during emergency avoidance.

warning

LSS is only a driving assistance function and cannot respond to all traffic, weather, and road conditions. It cannot replace the driver's attentive driving and accurate judgment. You, as the vehicle driver, are responsible for driving safety. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury or even death may result.

If Warning Mode is selected, only LDW is enabled. If Correction Mode is selected, LDW, LKA, and ELK are all enabled:

- LDW: When the vehicle speed is 60~120 km/h and the vehicle departs from the lane without the turn signal in the same direction being activated, the function provides reminders through the SR interface, prompt tones, and steering wheel vibration until the driver corrects the vehicle position.

warning

The LDW only alerts and does not correct the vehicle back into the lane, correct the vehicle position in time for the LDW alarm.

- LKA: When the vehicle speed is 60–120 km/h and the vehicle departs from the lane without the turn signal in the same direction being activated, LKA provides a reminder through the SR interface and an audible prompt, and intervenes in steering wheel control to correct the vehicle back into the lane.
- ELK: When the vehicle speed is 60–120 km/h and a collision with a road edge, an oncoming vehicle, or an overtaking vehicle is imminent, ELK provides a reminder through the SR interface and prompt tone, and intervenes in steering wheel control to perform emergency avoidance.

caution

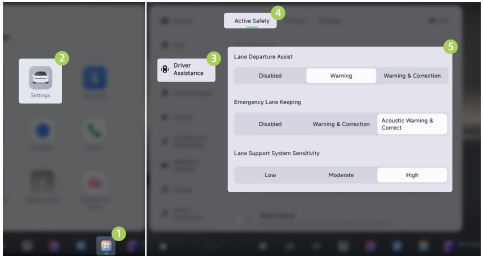
- When the turn signal is on or the driver has a clear intention to turn (e.g. turning the steering wheel quickly, braking, accelerating

with a deep accelerator pedal, turning the hazard warning lights on, etc.), Lane Departure Assist will not alert or intervene in lane departure.

- Both the wipers and the dual flashing lamps inhibit the activation of the function.

Set LSS

On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**driving assistance**→**Active Safety**"On the interface, you can set the mode and sensitivity of the Lane Departure Assist function.



Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

warning

LSS may not work in the following scenarios:

Special road conditions or complex road sections:

- Excessive wear on lane lines, overlapping old and new markings, temporary adjustments or rapid changes due to road construction (e.g., lane bifurcation, traverse or merge).

Poor weather or lighting conditions:

- When there is a large lateral air flow or high wind on one side of the vehicle.
- Dark (poor lighting) or poor visibility (due to heavy rain, snow, heavy fog, etc.).
- When bright light, such as oncoming headlamp light or direct sunlight, prevents the camera from seeing its sights.
- Objects or landscape features are projected onto the driveway to form large shadows.

- Lane line could not be recognized or incorrectly identified due to light causes, such as strong light causing lane line reflections, bad weather, poor visibility at night or lack of light, etc.

Camera Restricted:

- Camera restricted.
- When the camera is blocked (dust, cover, etc.).
- When there is a vehicle ahead that may obstruct the camera's view.

warning

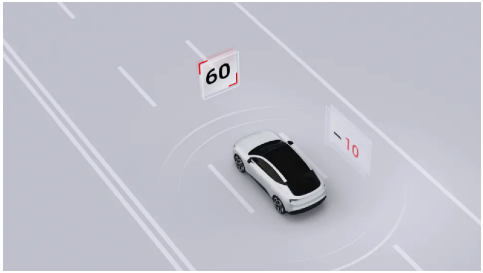
LSS may have the following conditions:

- Pre-warning or braking without risk of collision.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all situations that affect the normal operation of LSS.

Traffic Sign Recognition TSR

Function Overview



TSR can recognize speed limit signs on the road and obtain speed limit information in combination with navigation, display it on the SR interface, and provide a reminder when the vehicle is overspeeding.

Speed Limit Reminder

TSR can recognize speed limits from speed limit signs and speed cameras, and provide reminders through different icons:

Speed limit indicated by speed limit sign

Speed Camera Speed Limit

Exceeding the speed indicated by the speed limit sign

No Speed Limit Sign Speed Limit

Map not in cruise status

i Tips

TSR can recognize the following signs: speed limit signs, variable speed limit signs, end of speed limit signs, zone speed limit signs, multi-lane speed limit signs, multiple speed limit signs, and highway exit ramp speed limit signs.

i Tips

When the vehicle is stopped in P gear for more than 5 minutes or there is continuously no GPS signal, the indicator light showing that the map has not entered cruise status will be displayed. This is a normal prompt and not a vehicle malfunction.

Overspeed Alarm

When TSR detects the road speed limit:

- Manual driving, LCC driving assistance: when the road speed limit is ≥ 60 km/h and the vehicle is overspeeding by about 20%, the speed limit icon on the SR interface flashes 3 times as a reminder.

⚠ warning

TSR is only a driving assistance function and cannot respond to all traffic, weather, and road

conditions. As the driver of the vehicle, you are responsible for driving safety. Do not rely on this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury or even death may result.

Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

warning

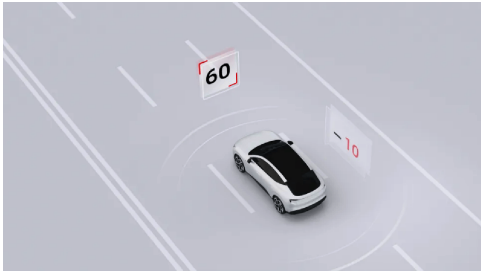
In the following scenarios, TSR may not work:

- Radar or camera restricted.
- When road or speed limit signs have recently changed.
- When traffic signs are in poor condition.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all conditions that affect the normal operation of TSR.

Speed Assistance SAS

Function Overview



SAS can synchronize the maximum cruise speed with the road speed limit recognized by TSR.

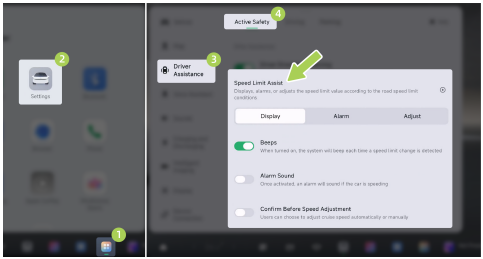
warning

SAS is only a driving assistance function and cannot respond to all traffic, weather, and road conditions. You, as the driver of the vehicle, are responsible for driving safety. Do not rely on

this function to control the vehicle, otherwise injury or even death may result.

Open and Close

On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**driving assistance**→**Active Safety**”On this screen, you can set the assistance mode of SAS.



Select Limit Assist → Display, only the icon flashes for alarm.

Select Limit Assist→Alarm →Beeps, the alarm sound will be given every time the speed limit changes.

i Tips

You can also tap on the central control screen. “ ”Enter the Control Center screen and tap “**Overspeed Alert Sound**”Button, turn Alarm sound on/off.

Select Intelligent Speed Limit Assist→Alarm →Alarm Sound, the alarm sound will be given every time the speed limit exceeds.

Speed Limit Assist select Adjust, and select Confirm Before Speed Adjustment on. If ACC/LCC is activated, each speed limit change requires driver confirmation before the speed limit can be executed.

With Speed Limit Assist set to Adjust and Confirm Before Speed Adjustment turned off, if ACC/LCC is activated, each speed limit change can be automatically executed without driver confirmation.

Warnings, Cautions and Limitations

warning

SAS may not be fully functional or may provide inaccurate information under the following conditions:

- Camera restricted.
- Recent changes in roads or speed limits, such as construction, regulations, etc.
- Poor traffic signs: Broken, faded, fuzzy or not placed as required, set.

caution

To maintain performance, regular updates are required. Map-based data is provided free of charge by the manufacturer to the vehicle owner every year. The vehicle owner needs to connect to the network for automatic updates. The update service continues until 7 years after the vehicle manufacturing date.

The above warnings, cautions, and limitations do not describe all conditions that affect the normal operation of SAS.

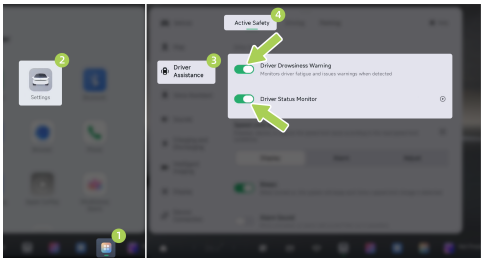
Driver Status Monitoring DSM

Function Overview

When the vehicle reaches a certain speed, the system will monitor the driver's status in real time through the in-vehicle camera, including fatigue, distraction, and making phone calls.

When the driver is fatigued or distracted, the system provides reminders through the SR interface and sound. When the driver remains fatigued or distracted for a long time, the system provides reminders through steering wheel vibration. In manual driving scenarios, the system also works in conjunction with the lane departure assist function and the Forward Collision Warning function to alert the user earlier to collision risks.

Open and Close



On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**driving assistance**→**Active Safety**”On the interface, DSM can be set to on or off.

i Tips

The DDW switch can only be switched off during each drive, after the alarm has been triggered.

Driver Drowsiness Warning (DDW)

DDW is used to monitor the driver's fatigue status. When the driver becomes fatigued, the system will issue an alarm to remind the driver to concentrate or take other actions to relieve fatigue, so as to avoid fatigued driving.

⚠ caution

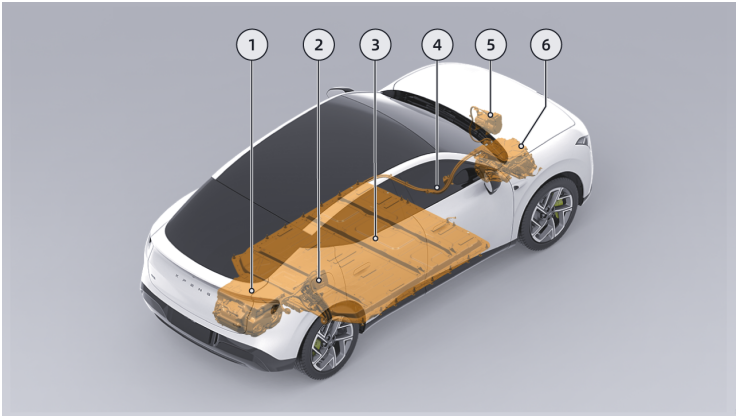
When DSM/DDW is in operation, the interior camera does not store or transmit personal privacy data such as audio and video.

warning

- When the DSM/DDW is switched off, the driver will not be able to be monitored for fatigue or distraction and warned that driving safety is compromised, please switch off carefully.
- DSM/DDW is an auxiliary function and must not rely on fatigue distraction reminders to deal with all scenarios, the driver must always maintain a view of the vehicle's control and road environment.
- Keep your eyes on the road and never drive tired. When the system prompts "Keep an eye on the road", ask the driver to adjust their driving behavior promptly or to find a service or safe place to stop and rest as soon as possible.

High-Voltage Components

Introduction



1. Rear Electric Drive System	4. High-Voltage Wiring Harness
2. charging port	5. Air Conditioner Compressor

3. Power Battery	6. Front Electric Drive System*

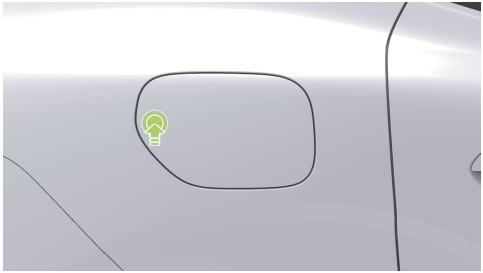
warning

Do not touch or remove the high voltage harness or the high voltage components connected to the high voltage harness, or there is a risk of electric shock.

Charging Port Lid Opening Closing

Open and close the charging port cover

Open the charging port cover

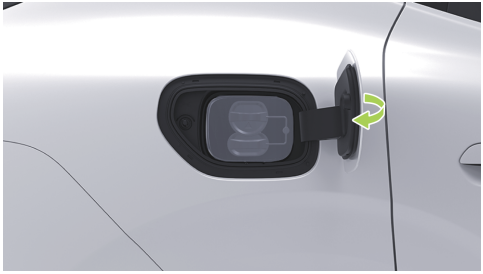


The charging port is located on the right rear side of the vehicle. When the vehicle is unlocked and the gear position is in P, press the middle area on the left side of the charging port cover to open the charging port cover.

caution

When washing the vehicle, avoid using a high-pressure water gun to spray the charging port lid switch area, otherwise the charging port lid may open.

Close the charging port cover



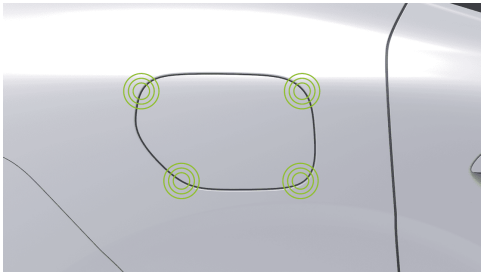
After charging is complete, push and close the charging port cover.

Tips

After charging is complete, place the dust cover back onto the charging port to prevent foreign objects from falling in.

Charging Port Cover De-icing

In cold weather, the charging port cover may freeze, causing the charging port cover to be unable to open. In this case, defrost it first.



1. Gently tap the four corners of the charging port cover with a suitable tool.
2. Use a hot towel wrung dry and lay it flat on the charging port cover panel to soften the ice.

If the charging port cover cannot be opened using the above methods, please contact a XIAOPENG service center for assistance.

warning

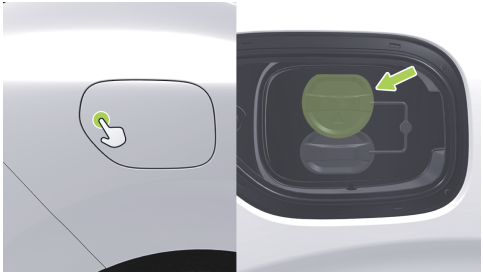
- Do not use highly corrosive liquids and pour the charging flap to avoid damage to the paint.
- Do not force the charging flap to damage the cap.

AC Charging Pile Charging Operation

AC slow charging port

The vehicle supports AC slow charging. You can charge the vehicle using an AC charging station or a portable charging gun.

Slow Charging Operation Guide



1. Open the charging port cover, and remove the seal cover of the AC charging port.

2. Insert the charging connector vertically into the AC charging port. A “click” sound indicates that the charging connector has been fully inserted into place.

After operating according to the instructions of the AC charging station (swiping the card or scanning the code), the vehicle starts charging.

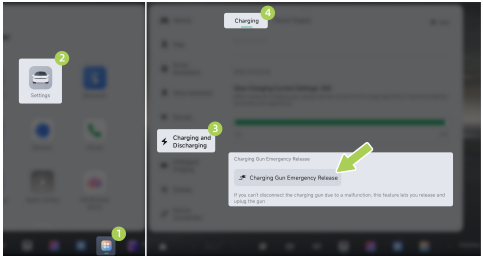
4. If you need to temporarily stop charging, first tap the "End Charging" button on the central control screen, and then unplug the charging gun.
5. Close the charging port sealing cap properly, and close the charging port cover.

warning

- Read the Charging/Discharge Precautions section carefully before performing quick charge operation.
- Charging or stopping must be done in strict accordance with the operating procedures of the charging pile. Do not plug or unplug the charge gun during charging.
- If a fault occurs during charging, the charging screen will pop up a fault indication, do not try charging again, contact the XPENG Automobile Service Centre immediately.
- In the event that the slow-charge gun fails to pull out, the gun can be unlocked using either the center screen emergency unlock switch or the boot emergency unlock pull ring.

Emergency Unlocking of the AC Charging Port

If the charging connector still cannot be unplugged after the vehicle has been unlocked multiple times, the charging connector can be unplugged as follows:



On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**Charging and Discharging**→**Charging**"Interface, tap "**Emergency Unlock of the Charging Connector**"You can manually unlock the charging connector before removing it. If charging is in progress, unlocking the charging connector will end charging in advance. Please confirm before proceeding.

Physical Emergency Unlock

If the charging connector still cannot be unplugged after multiple attempts using the emergency unlock button on the central control screen, fully insert the charging connector into place, and then unplug the charging connector by the following method:

1. Open the trunk and use an appropriate tool to open the trunk service cover panel.

2. Locate the emergency unlocking pull ring for the AC charging port, pull the ring, and after unlocking, remove the charging connector.

caution

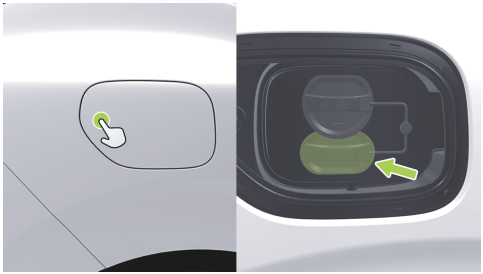
- After the vehicle has finished charging and the CID exits the 'charging/heating up' status display. Only use the emergency unlock pull ring to unlock the charge gun.
- The emergency unlocking of the ring by the charging port is suitable for use in emergency situations and frequent use may damage the emergency unlocking ring or the charging device.
- If you cannot unlock the charge gun using the emergency unlock ring of the charging port, please contact the XPENG Service Center in a timely manner.

DC Charging Operation

DC fast charging port

The vehicle supports DC fast charging. You can charge the vehicle using a GB standard DC charging station or an XPENG ultra-fast charging station.

Fast Charging Operation Guide



1. Open the charging port cover, first remove the seal cap of the AC slow charging port, then remove the seal cap of the DC fast charging port.

2. Insert the charging connector vertically into the fast charging port. A “click” sound indicates that the charging connector is fully inserted into place.
3. After following the instructions on the DC fast charging station (swiping a card or scanning a code), the vehicle starts charging.

4. If you need to temporarily stop charging, first tap the “End Charging” button on the central control screen, and then unplug the charging gun.
5. Close the charging port sealing cap properly, and close the charging port cover.

warning

- Read the Charging/Discharge Precautions section carefully before performing quick charge operation.
- Charging or stopping must be done in strict accordance with the operating procedures of the charging pile. Do not plug or unplug the charge gun during charging.
- If a fault occurs during charging, the charging screen will pop up a fault indication, do not try charging again, contact the XPENG Automobile Service Centre immediately.

Scheduled AC Charging

Function Overview

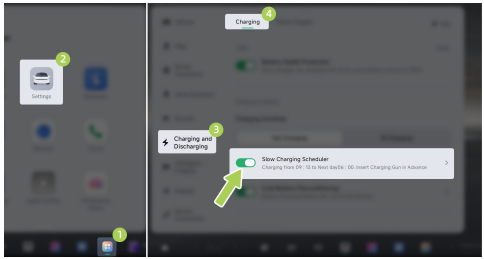
The vehicle is equipped with a scheduled slow charging function. You can set the charging start time and charging end time in advance through the central control screen and the mobile app. When the set charging start time is reached, the vehicle automatically starts charging; when the set end time is reached or the set charging limit is reached, the vehicle automatically stops charging.

Tips

You can set nighttime charging through the scheduled charging function and use off-peak nighttime electricity rates for charging to save charging costs.

Set via the center display screen

On the center control screen "→**Settings**→**Charging and Discharging**→**Charging**"On this screen, you can enable scheduled slow charging and set the charging time.



Tips

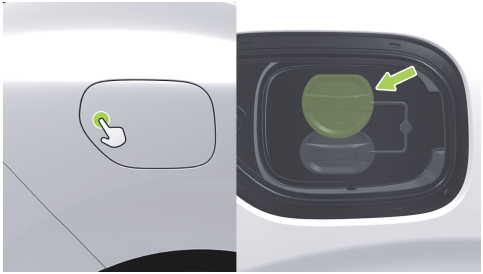
Before enabling the scheduled slow charging function on the central control screen, make sure that the charging pile scheduled charging function has been disabled in the mobile app; otherwise, scheduled charging will not be successful.

caution

- When preheating with a low-temperature battery, lock the vehicle after inserting the charger gun to prevent it from being pulled out by others.
- During charging, scheduled charging cannot be switched on, to switch on, end charging first.
- To use the scheduled charging function, insert the charging gun before the scheduled charging time, otherwise scheduled charging may fail.
- Xpeng Home Charging Pile also supports the Pile Scheduled Charging function, while opening the Home Charging Pile Scheduled Charging function and the Vehicle Scheduled Charging function, may cause the Scheduled Charging function to fail. It is recommended to switch on a scheduled charging function at the same time.

Scheduled Charging Operation

1. Set the charging start time and charging end time in advance through the center display.



Open the charging port cover, and remove the seal cap of the AC charging port.

Insert the charging connector vertically into the AC charging port. When you hear a “click,” it indicates that the charging connector is fully inserted into place.

Follow the instructions on the AC charging station (swipe the card or scan the code).

5. When the set charging start time is reached, the vehicle automatically starts charging; when the set end time is reached or the set charging limit is reached, the vehicle automatically stops charging. If charging needs to start in advance, tap the “Charge Now” button on the center display, and the vehicle starts charging.
6. If you need to temporarily stop charging, first tap the "End Charging" button on the central

control screen, and then unplug the charging gun. After unplugging the charging gun, close the charging port sealing cap and close the charging port cover.

warning

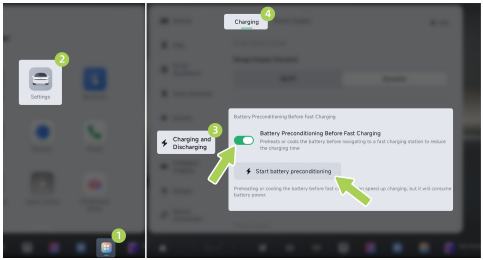
- Read the Charging/Discharge Precautions section carefully before performing quick charge operation.
- Charging or stopping must be done in strict accordance with the operating procedures of the charging pile. Do not plug or unplug the charge gun during charging.
- If a fault occurs during charging, the charging screen will pop up a fault indication, do not try charging again, contact the XPENG Automobile Service Centre immediately.
- In the event that the slow-charge gun fails to pull out, the gun can be unlocked using either the center screen emergency unlock switch or the boot emergency unlock pull ring.

Battery Thermal Insulation Before Fast Charging

Function Overview

The charging speed of the power battery is closely related to the battery temperature. If the power battery temperature is too high or too low, the charging speed of the power battery will be affected. Before charging the vehicle, keeping the battery temperature within the applicable range in advance can effectively shorten the charging time.

Function Settings



On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**Charging and Discharging**→**Charging**"interface, can be enabled "**Navigation Intelligent Heat Preservation**"or tap "**Start Heating Immediately**"Function.

- **Navigation Smart Heat Preservation**: After this function is enabled, when using the in-vehicle navigation to search for fast charging stations, the power battery temperature will be adjusted automatically.
- **Start Heat Preservation Immediately**: After manual tapping, the system will immediately adjust the power battery temperature.

Tips

- Use the battery keep-warm function before fast charging to reduce charging time but also to consume some power battery power if needed.
- Recommended charging operating ambient temperature: 0 to 45°C. When operating at temperatures below 0 °C, it is recommended to use the warm-up function before charging, otherwise it will cause slow charging.

Low-Temperature Battery Preheating

Function Overview

Battery performance is closely related to temperature. An appropriate battery temperature can improve the battery's output efficiency and service life. In cold weather, after the vehicle is

powered on, the battery will consume its own power to increase the battery temperature, which will reduce the vehicle's driving range.

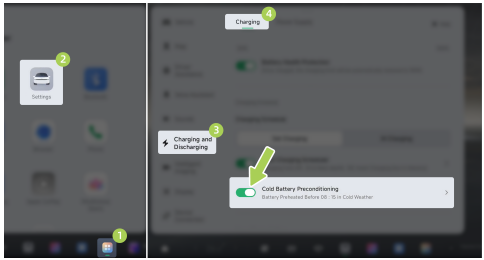
The low-temperature preheating function can increase the battery temperature by using the power from the AC charging station when the vehicle is connected to the AC charging connector, thereby extending the vehicle's driving range in cold environments. The low-temperature preheating function automatically stops operating when the power battery reaches a suitable temperature or when the set battery preheating completion time is reached.

Tips

Low-temperature battery preheating will slightly increase the power consumption of the charging pile. Please use it as needed. After preheating is completed, please use the vehicle as soon as possible. Prolonged parking will reduce the heating effect.

Set via the center display screen

On the central control screen "→**Settings**→**Charging and Discharging**→**Charging**"On this screen, you can turn low-temperature battery preheating on/off and set the preheating completion time.



caution

- If you are using slow charge scheduled charging at the same time, make sure that you set the preheating time later than the scheduled charge time.

- When preheating with a low temperature battery, plug in the gun and lock the vehicle to avoid the charge gun being pulled out by others.
- If the power battery temperature is high, the low temperature battery preheating function will not be activated.
- If the opening fails, check that the opening conditions for the function are met. Please contact the Xpeng Automobile Service Center in case of abnormal conditions.

Set via the mobile app

You can set the battery preheating function in the mobile app in the following ways:

- In the mobile app "**XPENG→More Functions**"Interface, tap "**Battery Preheating**", the low-temperature battery preheating can be turned on/off.
- In the mobile app "**XPENG→Charging Center**"On this screen, you can set the preheating completion time.

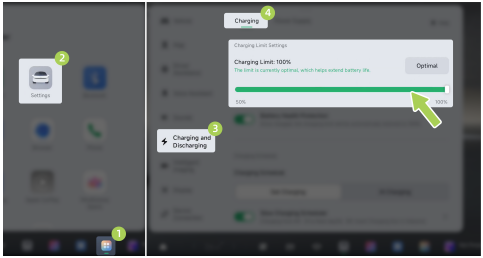
Charging Limit

Function Overview

The vehicle is equipped with a charging limit setting function. You can set the power battery charging limit through the central control screen and the mobile app. When the set charging limit is reached, the vehicle will automatically stop charging.

Set via the central control screen

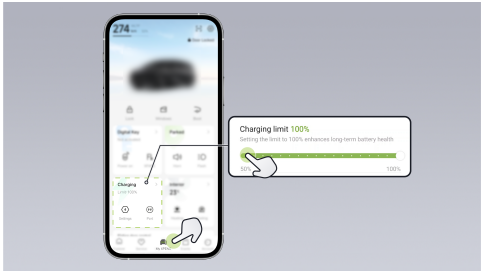
On the center control screen "**→Settings→Charging and Discharging→Charging**"On the interface, the charging limit can be set.



Tips

- To ensure charging speed and extend battery life, it is recommended to select "**Optimal**" as the charging limit when charging.
- If Battery Health Protection is enabled, after the vehicle is powered on again, the charging limit will revert to the default value: 90% for models equipped with ternary lithium batteries and 100% for models equipped with lithium iron phosphate batteries.

Set via the mobile app



In the mobile app "**XPENG→Charging Center**"On the interface, slide the progress bar to set the charging limit.

External Discharge V2L

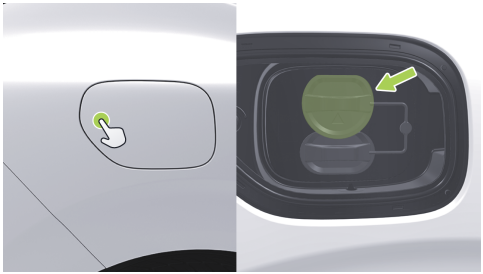
Function Overview

The vehicle is equipped with an AC charging and discharging function. After plugging the discharge device into the AC charging port,

it can supply power to household electrical appliances such as lighting and low-power ovens. Maximum power: 6 kW.

When using the external discharge function, pay attention to the vehicle's remaining battery level to avoid a situation where the remaining driving range is too low to return.

External Discharge Operation



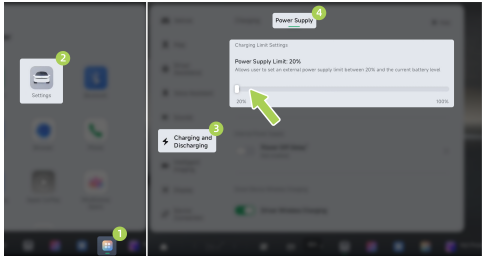
Open the charging port cover, and remove the seal cap of the AC slow charging port.

Connect the power strip socket to the discharge device.

Connect the discharge device to the AC charging port, and make sure it is securely plugged in. The vehicle starts automatic discharging.

Tips

- The power battery is less than 20% charged and cannot use the external discharge function. The vehicle automatically ends the power supply when the power level drops to 20% during the discharge process.
- External discharge equipment (discharge socket, etc.) is not standard and must be purchased.



4. According to trip requirements, on the central control screen " →**Settings**→**Charging and Discharging**→**Power Supply**"Interface, set the power supply limit value.

   Tips

   When the traction battery's state of charge falls below the preset power-supply limit, the vehicle will automatically stop external power output.

5. When discharging needs to be ended, first tap the central control screen "**End**"Press the button, then unplug the discharge device,

close the charging port sealing cap, and then close the charging port cover.

warning

- When the discharge job is to be completed, Please click the “**End**”button on the central control screen first. Then unplug the discharge device, otherwise damage to the vehicle may occur.
- Before using the discharge device, read the Charging/Discharge Precautions section carefully.

Charge Discharge Status Indicator

Charging Discharging Status

When the vehicle is in P gear, after the charging gun or external power supply equipment is connected, the central control screen will automatically display the charging/discharging SR interface. You can view the vehicle charging/discharging status through the SR interface on the central control screen.

Charging heating in progress: In low-temperature environments, the system will automatically heat the power battery to an appropriate temperature before charging.

Charging: The vehicle is charging the power battery through external charging equipment.

Charging Complete: Charging has ended. You can unplug the charging connector.

Charging Fault: A charging fault exists in the vehicle. Do not attempt to charge again. Contact XPENG Service Center immediately.

Scheduled Charging: A charging schedule has been set. Charging will start automatically when the set time is reached.

Power supply in progress: The vehicle is discharging power to the outside through the discharge equipment.

Power supply has stopped: Discharging has ended. You may unplug the discharge device.

Power Supply Fault: The vehicle has a discharge fault. Do not attempt to charge again. Please contact a XPENG Service Center immediately.

Charging and Discharging Precautions

Charging Precautions

To avoid personal injury or vehicle damage, be sure to observe the following precautions before charging the vehicle:

- Before charging, check the charging cable. Do not use a charging cable with damaged insulation or outer sheath.
- Before charging, ensure that there is no water or foreign matter in the charging port of the vehicle charging port, the power supply equipment, and the charging connection device, and that the metal terminals are free from rust or corrosion.
- Please charge in a relatively safe environment, avoid rain exposure and water immersion, and keep away from fire sources.
- Do not disassemble the charging gun, charging socket, or charging equipment, otherwise it may cause charging failure or even fire.
- Please select a dry and well-ventilated charging environment. Do not use the charging equipment in an environment where gasoline, paint, flammable items, or explosive items are used or stored.
- Do not use the charging cable in dark, damp, or wet areas.
- Never allow children to perform charging operations.
- Do not touch the charging port.
- In rainy weather, if there is no rain shelter, do not perform charging operations.
- If there is a sudden change in weather during charging (strong wind, rain or snow, thunderstorm), promptly check whether the

charging gun is secure and in a dry state; during thunder and lightning, it is prohibited to touch the charging cable and the vehicle body.

- If the area near the charging port becomes wet during charging, first disconnect the power supply under safe conditions, then disconnect the power supply side plug (do not touch the metal contacts of the charging plug with your hands or other parts of your body to avoid safety accidents), and then unplug the charging gun. If necessary, use insulated gloves, and contact a XIAOPENG Motors Service Center for confirmation as soon as possible.
- If you notice an unusual odor coming from the vehicle during charging, stop charging immediately.
- When charging, do not squeeze the charging cable.
- After charging is completed, do not disconnect the charging connection device with wet hands or while standing in accumulated water on the ground.
- Before driving the vehicle, ensure that the charging connection device has been disconnected from the vehicle charging port.
- When removing the charging connector from the charging station, hold the charging connector firmly with both hands to prevent the twisted charging cable from rebounding and striking a person, causing injury.
- When charging, the charging cable must be straightened and must not be twisted.
- If the charging equipment is corroded or damaged, such as deformation or misalignment of the metal terminals of the charging gun, deformation or cracking of the plastic body of the plug, or other abnormal conditions, charging is prohibited.
- In the event of an emergency during charging, press the emergency stop button on the charging equipment to stop charging.

- When inserting/removing the charging connector, unlock the vehicle, and insert/remove the charging connector vertically. Diagonal insertion and shaking are prohibited.
- After charging is completed, please make sure to close the charging port cover promptly to prevent rain, snow, or other foreign matter from entering.
- The vehicle may affect medical or implanted electronic devices during charging and discharging. Consult the electronic device manufacturer before charging.
- Due to deviations in different charging pile manufacturers' understanding of the national charging standards, as well as differences in the quality of charging pile product maintenance, charging may fail when using certain individual charging piles. If this occurs, please try reconnecting the charging connector or use a different charging pile for charging.

Discharge Precautions

To avoid personal injury or vehicle damage, be sure to observe the following precautions before performing discharge operations on the vehicle:

- It is strictly prohibited to modify the V2L discharge gun for use as a household power supply station, so as to avoid damaging the vehicle.
- Live operation is strictly prohibited; pay attention to safety inspection during operation.
- Do not operate with wet hands.
- Do not use the external discharge function if the externally connected electrical appliance or discharge equipment is damaged.
- Minors are strictly prohibited from touching or using the discharge equipment. Do not allow minors to approach it during use.
- Do not touch the pins of electrical appliance plugs or the sockets of discharge equipment.

Charging Port Foreign Matter Cleaning

Under normal use conditions, use a high-pressure air gun and a brush once a week to clean the charging port. If conditions do not permit, use a dust-free cloth or a cotton swab to clean the charging port and the charging gun.

warning

- Never touch the charger barrel and socket with sharp objects such as screwdrivers or tweezers to avoid damaging the socket and socket.
- When a foreign object enters deep into the charging base, it must be cleaned by a professional.

Range Display Information

Range Display Settings

Range Display Standard

The vehicle has three range display standards: WLTP, Dynamic, and NEDC. Under the same remaining vehicle battery level, if different range display standards are selected, the remaining range displayed by the vehicle will vary slightly.

On the central control screen "→**Settings**→**Charging and Discharging**→**Charging**"Interface, select the range display standard.

Range Display Calibration

Lithium iron phosphate batteries require calibration of the battery status through a full charge. When the status bar on the central control screen indicates "**Battery Status Requires Calibration**"When , please fully charge the battery to 100% as soon as possible to perform battery calibration. To maintain the

accuracy of the displayed pure electric range, it is recommended to perform calibration by fully charging at least once every two weeks.

Tips

To ensure charging safety, some brands of DC charging stations will automatically stop charging when the power battery is charged to about 95%. When the power battery needs calibration, it is recommended to use an official direct-operated charging station or an AC charging station.

User Account

Account Type

The vehicle supports login with multiple account types, with data isolated between multiple accounts, allowing you to enjoy a private personalized Cabin.

- Owner account: the account that is first bound to activate the vehicle during the vehicle handover process.
- Authorized account: Share the vehicle usage rights with others. The account used by the person with whom the rights are shared is called an authorized account.
- Visitor Mode: Only some functions such as the Air Conditioner and navigation can be used.

After logging in to the account, tap on the central control screen. “ ”, tap in the App Center “**Profile**”Go to the personal center screen to view the account login type.

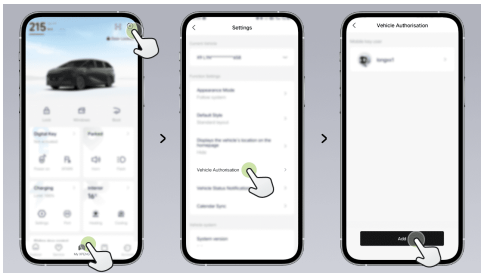
Log In to Account

When creating a Bluetooth key in the mobile APP, you can enable **Unlock the account to sync login to the central display**Function. After it is enabled, the account is logged in automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.

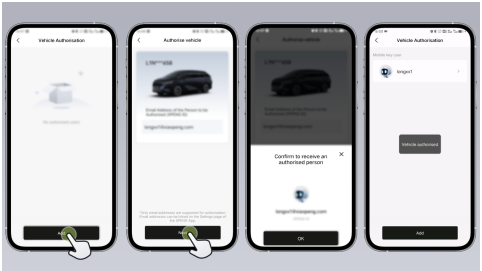
You can also tap the profile icon in the upper right corner of the center display, then log in to your XPENG App account on your phone and scan the code to log in.

Authorized account

Add Authorization Account



1. After the vehicle owner logs in to the XPENG App, tap in sequence. “**XPENG→Settings→Vehicle Authorization→Add**”。



2. Select the Authorization type as “**Phone Key**”Enter the authorized person's email address and set the validity period as needed to share the vehicle usage rights with relatives and friends.

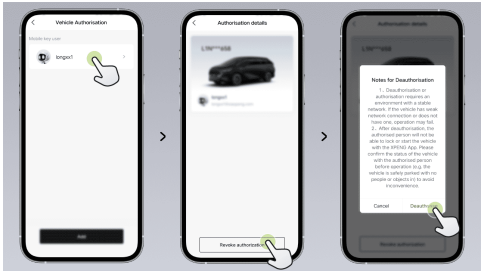
After the authorized user logs in to the XPENG App, they can create a Bluetooth key or use remote Vehicle Control functions. Authorization supports up to 5 friends or family members.

Authorization Account Permission Management

1. After the vehicle owner logs in to the XPENG App, tap in sequence. “**XPENG→Settings→Vehicle Authorization**”。
2. Find the setting you need “**Authorization management**”users.
3. Can be turned on or off “**Charging Settings**”Permissions.
4. After the charging settings permission is enabled, the authorized person can then manage the charging management settings in “**Charging Limit**”and “**Scheduled AC Charging Settings**”Set the function.

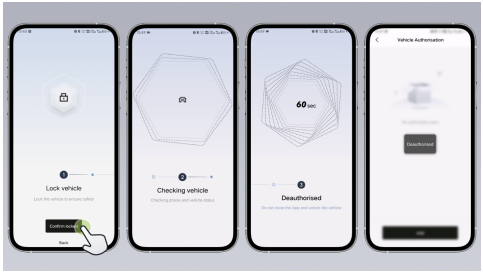
Revoke account authorization

The vehicle owner uses the XPENG App to enter “**Vehicle Authorization**”View or manage authorized users on the interface.



The user's Authorization can be revoked in the following ways:

1. Find the user whose authorization needs to be revoked.
2. Tap “**Revoke Authorization**”Afterward, read and agree. “**Authorization Removal Notice**”, tap “**Confirm Release**”。



3. To ensure the safety of the vehicle and its occupants, tap “**Confirm Locking**”After confirming that the phone and vehicle status are normal, you can revoke this user's authorization.

Tips

- To grant or revoke authorization, the vehicle must have a good network signal. If the vehicle has no network connection or a weak signal, the operation may fail.
- After authorization is revoked, the authorized user will no longer be able to

lock the vehicle or start the vehicle using the XPENG App. Before performing the operation, confirm the vehicle status with the authorized user (for example, that the vehicle is safely parked and no people or belongings are left in the vehicle) to avoid inconvenience to either party.

Guest Mode

After switching to Guest Mode, personal sensitive information will be hidden, and functions such as assisted driving, browser, and App Store downloads will be disabled. Only basic vehicle functions such as Air Conditioner and navigation can be used.

Manually Enable Guest Mode

When the vehicle gear is in P, you can click in the pop-up window after reading the prompt information in the following way. "**Turn On**", and Guest Mode will be activated. The central control screen will display "**Guest Mode Enabled**"Prompt.

- Tap the center display in sequence "**User Avatar→Guest Mode**", enter the pop-up window interface.
- Tap on the center display. " ", tap in the App Center "**Profile→Guest Mode**"Enter the pop-up window.

Enable/Disable Automatic Visitor Mode

Log in to the owner account on the central control screen. When the vehicle gear is in P, you can enable/disable automatic entry into Guest Mode in the following ways:

- On the center control screen "**User Avatar→Settings→Account Settings**"Interface, turn automatic entry into Visitor Mode on/off.
- Tap on the center control screen. " ", tap in the App Center "**Profile**"Interface, turn automatic entry into Visitor Mode on/off.

caution

Guest mode can only be set in non-driving conditions.

Automatically Enter Visitor Mode

After the automatic guest mode entry function is enabled, when the vehicle is unlocked with the physical key, the central control screen will display “**Visitor Mode Enabled**”Notice: informs the user that Visitor Mode has now been entered.

Exit Guest Mode

You can exit Guest Mode in the following way: use the XPENG App to scan the QR code, then log in to your account.

- Tap the center display screen “**User Avatar**”, tap “**Log in to account**”, enter the scan code interface.
- Tap on the center control screen. “ ”, tap in the App Center “**Profile→Log in to account**”, enter the scan code interface.
- After your phone Bluetooth key or wallet key is successfully paired with the vehicle Bluetooth, unlock the vehicle, automatically log in to the associated user account, and automatically exit Guest Mode.

driver User Manual habits

After logging in to your account, when adjusting the seat position and the Side Mirrors position, you can save the set positions to driving habits. When logging in again, you can quickly switch to the saved positions. One account can store up to 6 driving habits.

Switch driver User Manual habits

You can quickly select the driver usage habit to be executed this time through any of the following methods, and add, delete, or rename the saved driver usage habits on the account settings screen.

- Tap the central control screen “**User Avatar**”Enter the User Manual habit switching screen.
- Tap on the center control screen. “ ”, tap in the App Center “**Profile**”Go to the personal center screen.
- After logging in to your account, tap the following on the center display in sequence.

“ →**seat**→**Seat Position**→**Select "driver seat"**→**Driving Habits**”, enter the driving habits screen.

Voice Assistant

Enable Voice Assistant Service

Turn the in-vehicle microphone on/off via the central control screen

On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**General**→**Safety and Privacy**”Interface, can be opened/closed “**In-vehicle microphone**”When turning off the in-vehicle microphone, a confirmation pop-up will appear. After the in-vehicle microphone is turned off, functions such as bluetooth phone and voice will be unavailable.

i Tips

After the in-vehicle microphone is turned off, the top bar of the center display will show “**Microphone disabled**”Icon. Tap the icon to turn on the in-vehicle microphone in the pop-up window.

Turn Voice Assistant service on/off via the center display

On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**Voice Assistant**”On the interface, you can turn the Voice Assistant service on or off. After the function is enabled, you can control some vehicle functions by voice.

Wake up the Voice Assistant service

Press the voice button on the left side of the steering wheel to activate the voice service. Press the voice button again to turn off the voice service.

On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**Voice Assistant**”On the interface, you can enable or disable the “Hey XPENG” wake word. After the function is enabled, you can control some vehicle functions by voice.

At **Wake Word Enhancement**Interface, set the voice wake-up method:

- “XPENG+” Intelligent Wake-up: can be activated through **“XPENG+ Common Vehicle Control Commands”**directly use the voice service. For example: “XPENG, turn on the Air Conditioner”.
- Command wake-up: You can directly enter clear voice commands such as Vehicle Control/music/phone. For example: "Turn on the Air Conditioner".
- Standard Wake-up: can be through **“Hey XPENG”**Wake up the voice service. After waking up, you can enter voice commands. For example: "Hey XPENG, turn on the air conditioner".

Set up Voice Assistant service

On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**Voice Assistant**”On the interface, you can configure the XPENG intelligent voice service.

1. Voice Assistant language selection: the default language is "English". You can download and install other voice language packs, such as German, French, Thai, etc.
2. Inspiration Collection: You can view example voice interaction commands (English).
3. Conversation mode: can be selected **Single-round Conversation**and **Continuous Conversation**Two dialogue modes.
   - Single-turn conversation: After selection, XPENG can execute only one command in each conversation and exits the voice service immediately after execution is completed.
   - Continuous Conversation: After selection, XPENG can remain in a listening state for a period of time after completing the previous task. During this time, you can directly issue a new command without repeatedly waking up XPENG.
4. Activate Zones: You can turn off the corresponding zone as needed. After it is

turned off, the system will no longer receive voice commands from that zone.

Voice Experience Improvement Program

To make XPENG increasingly smarter and more intelligent, we sincerely invite you to join. “**XPENG Assistant User Experience Improvement Program**”。

On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**General**→**Safety and Privacy**”Interface, can be opened/closed “**Join XPENG Assistant User Experience Improvement Program**”。

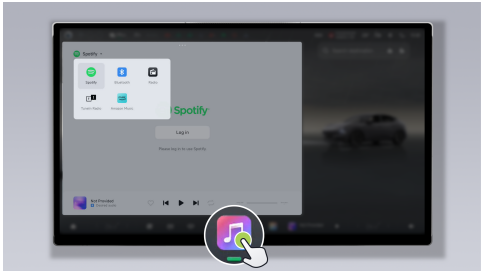
Before enabling, you need to first read and agree to the *XPENG Assistant User Experience Improvement Program*. After the function is enabled, the system can collect voice usage information to improve your voice interaction experience.

Music App

Switch music application

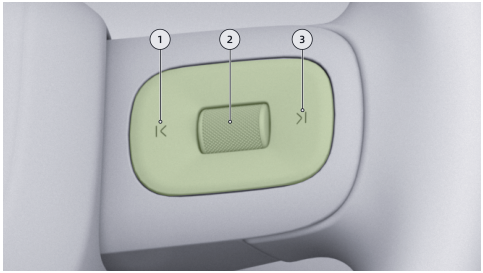
XPENG Motors provides customized music applications. Supported audio sources include online media content such as Spotify, Amazon Music, and radio, and also support local media content such as Bluetooth music and USB music.

Tap the bottom taskbar on the center control screen “ ”On the Music screen, you can switch audio sources and play from the audio source entry in the upper left corner.



Steering Wheel Buttons Control Media Playback

When playing multimedia, you can control it using the buttons on the right side of the steering wheel:

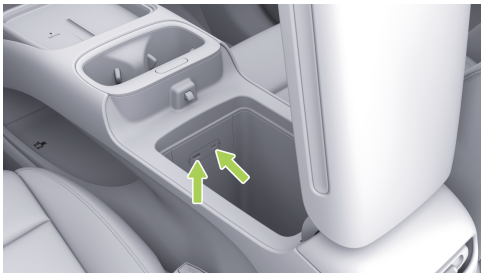


1. Press the left button to switch to the previous track.
2. Press the scroll wheel to pause media playback. Scroll the wheel up or down to adjust the media volume.
3. Press the right button to switch to the next track.

Bluetooth Music

Switch audio source to “**Bluetooth Music**”, tap “**Connect Bluetooth**”After connecting the phone via Bluetooth, you can listen to songs from the phone inside the vehicle.

USB Music



1. Insert the USB drive containing music files into the front port of the center armrest box, and the status bar on the central control screen displays The icon indicates that the USB drive is connected successfully.

Tips

- Both the front USB media source port and the Type-C power port in front of the center armrest support data transfer. After a USB flash drive is inserted, the system will automatically read its contents.
- Supported audio formats include: MP3, FLAC, WAV, OGG, AAC, MP4, MKV, and M4A.
- Supported USB file system formats include: FAT32, FAT16, and NTFS.

2. On the center control screen “ →**Music**”Interface, switch the audio source to “**USB Music**”, and the music in the USB drive can be played.

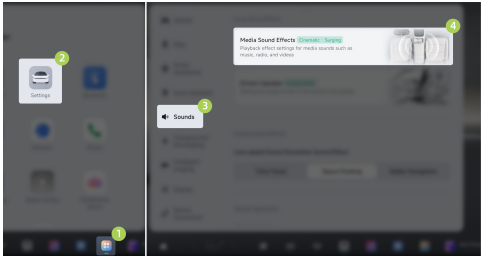
Safely Eject USB Drive

To remove the USB drive, first on the central control screen “ →**Device Connection**→**Equipment**→**USB device**”Interface,

tap “**Safety Pop-up**”After that, remove the USB drive.

Sound Settings

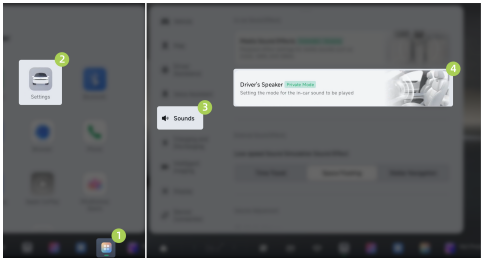
Sound Adjustment



On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**Sound**→**Media Sound Effects**”On this screen, audio settings can be adjusted.

1. Surround Mode: Cinema and Hi-Fi modes can be selected.
2. Sound effect style: You can select Dynamic, Original, Surging, or custom.

driver audio system



On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**Sound**→**driver audio**”On this screen, you can set the driver audio mode.

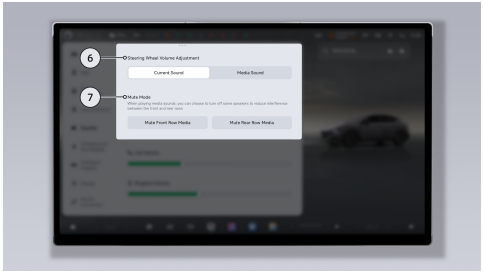
1. Shared: navigation, call, and media audio are played through the vehicle speakers.
2. Driving: Navigation and call audio are played through the driver's headrest speaker, and media audio is played through the vehicle speakers.
3. Private: Navigation, call, and media audio are played through the main driver's headrest speaker.
4. Auto: Automatically switches to Driving Mode when the passenger or rear seats are occupied.

Volume Adjustment

On the central control screen " →**Settings**→**Sound**"On this screen, you can configure the vehicle sounds.

Volume Adjustment

1. Adjust the media volume or mute it.
2. Adjust the voice volume, but the minimum voice volume is 1 and it cannot be muted.
3. Adjust the navigation volume or mute it.
4. Adjust the call volume or mute it.
5. Adjust the ringtone volume or mute it.



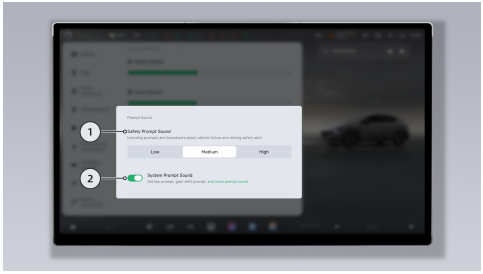
6. Steering wheel volume adjustment: Tap to set the type of volume adjusted by the steering wheel scroll wheel.
   - **Current sound:**
     - When playing media music, you can adjust the media volume using the steering wheel scroll wheel.
     - After waking up XPENG, you can adjust the voice volume using the steering wheel scroll wheel.

- After navigation starts, when navigation is broadcasting, you can adjust the navigation volume using the steering wheel scroll wheel.
- After connecting bluetooth, when using the bluetooth call function, you can adjust the call volume using the steering wheel scroll wheel.

- **Media Sound:**When playing media music, you can adjust the media volume using the steering wheel scroll wheel.

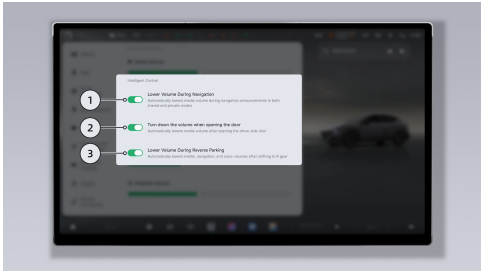
7. Mute Mode: Tap to turn off the media sound in the front row or rear row to reduce interference between the front and rear rows when media sound is playing.

Prompt Tone



1. Safety alert sound: Tap to set the volume level of alert sounds and broadcasts for vehicle faults and driving warnings.
2. System prompt sound: After the system prompt sound is turned on, the button prompt sound, shift prompt sound, exterior charging gun prompt sound, and driving mode sound effect can be available in “**More Prompt Tones**”Turn on or off in the middle.

Intelligent Control

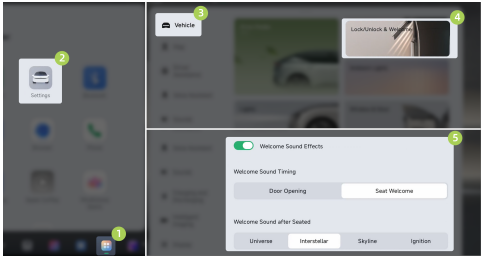


1. Lower volume during navigation: After tapping to enable this function, in Shared Mode and Private Mode, the media volume is automatically reduced during navigation playback.
2. Lower volume when opening the door: After tapping to enable the function, when the driver's door is opened, the media volume is automatically reduced.
3. Reverse volume reduction: After tapping to enable the function, when shifting into R gear, the media, navigation, and voice volumes are automatically reduced.

Welcome Sound Effect

When the welcome sound effect function is enabled, after the driver enters the vehicle and closes the door, the system will play the welcome sound effect according to the settings.

On the center control screen " →**Settings→vehicle→Unlocking/Locking and Welcome**"Interface, can be opened/closed "**Welcome Sound Effect**"function, and set the timing of the welcome sound effect.



Tips

- After unlocking the vehicle, if the user is seated in the driver's seat and repeatedly opens and closes the door, the Welcome Sound Effect will not be played.
- If the Welcome Sound Effect is changed, the new setting will take effect after the vehicle is powered on again.

Device Connection

bluetooth connection

On the center control screen " →**Settings→Device Connection→Connect**"Interface or top status bar of the central control screen , you can turn Bluetooth on/off, turn on "**Open Detection**"After the function is enabled, other bluetooth devices can discover this vehicle's bluetooth.

On the Bluetooth device screen, select the mobile device to be paired, and complete pairing according to the on-screen prompts.

After pairing is successful, you can confirm on the mobile phone to synchronize the communication data in the mobile device, such as contacts and call history, to the vehicle, so as to facilitate answering and making calls and better experience the in-vehicle phone function. You can also play music on the mobile phone through the vehicle audio system.

Wireless network

On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**Device Connection**→**Connect**"Interface or top status bar of the central control screen , you can turn the wireless network on/off.

After enabling, the vehicle will automatically scan for wireless networks. Select the wireless network connection to be connected, and enter the password to connect.

i Tips

- You can connect to and use personal hotspots shared by your phone through wireless networking, and be aware of traffic consumption when using.
- The signal strength of the currently connected network can be viewed from the wireless network icon in the status bar, if the signal strength is low, the vehicle may be slow to access the internet.

Vehicle Hotspot

On the center control screen " →**Settings**→**Device Connection**→**Connect**"On the interface, you can turn the in-vehicle hotspot on/off and select the hotspot mode, 5 GHz or 2.4 GHz.

Use another mobile device to search for this vehicle's in-vehicle hotspot, then enter the password to connect.

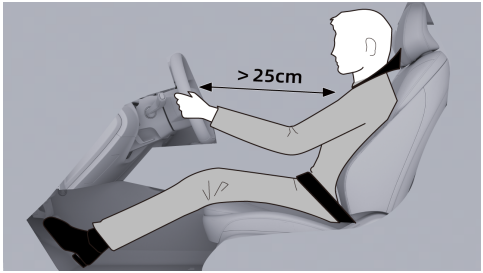
i Tips

It is recommended to give priority to the 5GHz frequency band. Enabling the 2.4GHz frequency band can ensure compatibility with more devices, but network performance will decrease.

Seat Belt

Wear the seat belt correctly

Whether the driver's sitting posture is correct directly affects the driver's fatigue level and driving safety.



Please correctly adjust your driving posture from the following aspects:

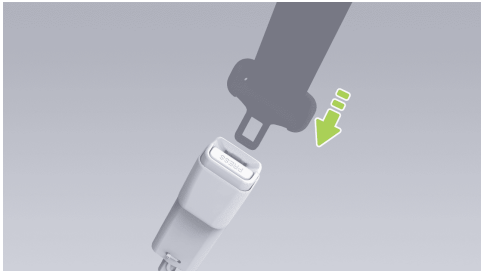
1. Sit upright with both feet placed on the floor.
2. Ensure that both feet can easily reach the pedals. When holding the steering wheel, your arms should be slightly bent, and your chest should be at least 25 cm away from the center of the steering wheel.

warning

- Do not adjust the driver's seat while driving to avoid loss of control due to sudden body inclination.
- When driving the vehicle, you must not wear slippers, high heels, barefoot or telephone to make conversations that interfere with safe driving.

Wear the seat belt

Properly wearing the seat belt can greatly reduce injuries to vehicle occupants in the event of an accident and improve driving safety.



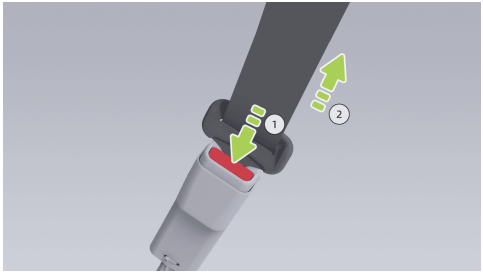
1. Adjust the seat to a suitable position.
2. Slowly pull out the seat belt, position the diagonal section of the seat belt between the neck and shoulder, and place the lap section of the seat belt across the hips (not the abdomen).
3. Insert the seat belt tongue into the buckle of the corresponding seat until a “click” is heard.
4. Pull the seat belt to check whether the seat belt is securely latched in the buckle.

warning

- Do not place other objects between the seat belt and the body.
- Keep the seat belt buckle clean and remove any foreign objects from the buckle, otherwise the seat belt may not lock properly and may compromise your driving safety.
- When wearing a seat belt, the seat belt must be snug and untwisted, the shoulder belt must be bypassed from the middle of the occupant's shoulder, and must be snug against the occupant's upper body. The lap portion of the belt must be as far down as possible, around the hip, and if necessary, pull down slightly on the belt body. and pull in the direction of the seat belt retraction to adjust.

Unlock the seat belt

The seat belt can be unfastened provided safety is ensured.



1. Hold the seat belt tongue and press the seat belt buckle button.
2. After the seat belt buckle is unlatched, place the seat belt tongue back in its original position as the seat belt automatically retracts.

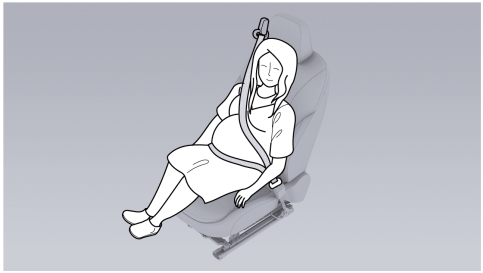
warning

Do not release the seat belt tongue when the seat belt has not fully retracted, so as to prevent personal injury or vehicle damage caused by the seat belt retracting too quickly.

Wearing a Seat Belt During Pregnancy

Seat belts are also applicable to pregnant women. Throughout pregnancy, pregnant women should wear seat belts, and the lap portion of the seat belt should be positioned as flat as possible across the front of the hips to avoid the seat belt tightening in the event of an accident and causing serious injury to the fetus and the pregnant woman.

First fully pull out the seat belt diagonally, then position the shoulder seat belt so that it passes between the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest, and position the lap seat belt so that it crosses the hips below the abdomen and is correctly latched. When using the seat belt, avoid contact with the protruding abdomen.



Before a pregnant woman drives the vehicle, consult a doctor first to determine whether she can drive the vehicle.

warning

- Pregnant women should try to ride in the second row seat when riding in the vehicle to avoid secondary injury to the abdomen in the event of an accident.
- Pregnant women must be able to operate the pedals and steering wheel easily to maintain control of the vehicle.

Seat Belt Unfastened Reminder

front row seat belt indicator light

	driver Seat Belt Unfastened Indicator Light
	Passenger Seat Belt Unfastened Indicator Light

- If the driver or passenger in the front row is not wearing the seat belt, while the vehicle is stationary, the corresponding seat belt indicator on the central control screen will first flash for several seconds and then remain illuminated.
- When the vehicle reaches a certain speed while driving, the corresponding seat belt indicator on the central control screen flashes, a warning window pops up on the central control screen, and an alarm sounds.

Rear Seat Belt Indicator Light

	Rear left seat belt unfastened
	Rear center seat belt unfastened
	Rear right seat belt unfastened

- If a rear passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the corresponding seat belt indicator on the central control screen will first flash for several seconds and then remain on continuously while the vehicle is stationary.
- When the vehicle reaches a certain speed while driving, the corresponding seat belt indicator on the central control screen flashes, accompanied by an alarm sound.

Tips

If all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts and the indicator light remains on, refasten the seat belts to ensure that they are correctly latched.

warning

If the seat belt reminder function malfunctions, please contact a XPENG service center immediately for inspection and repair.

Check the seat belt

To ensure that the seat belt operates properly, inspect the seat belt before each drive according to the following steps:

1. Check whether the seat belt has abnormal conditions such as wear or cuts.
2. Insert the seat belt tongue into the seat belt buckle, pull the seat belt, check the fastening condition of the seat belt buckle, and ensure that the seat belt is in normal working condition.
3. Pull the seat belt quickly to check whether the seat belt retractor locks properly; unlock the seat belt and check whether the seat belt retracts properly.

If any seat belt fails any of the above inspections, contact a XPENG service center immediately.

Pretensioning Seat Belt

In the event of a severe frontal collision or side collision, the pretensioner automatically tightens the seat belt webbing, thereby reducing the occupant's chest injury value and mitigating injuries.

If the pretensioners and airbags are not activated in a collision, it does not indicate that they are malfunctioning. This usually means that the severity or type of the collision did not meet their activation conditions.

warning

- Do not bend, sit, or obstruct the seat belt pre-tensioning mechanism, as damage may occur and interfere with the correct function of the seat belt system.
- Once activated, the seatbelt pretensioner must be replaced. After a collision, the airbags and other related components must be checked and replaced if necessary.
- To ensure that the seat belt pretensioner operates correctly in certain collision situations, even if it is not triggered, contact Xpeng Automobile Service Centre immediately to inspect the vehicle safety system components.

Seat Belt Precautions

Please strictly follow the following warning information; otherwise, personal injury or death and vehicle damage may result.

warning

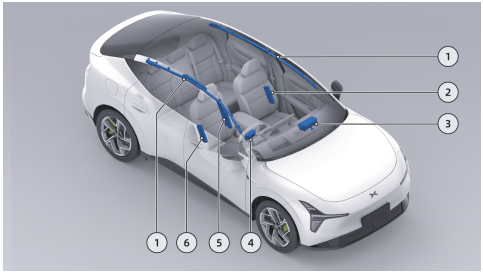
- All persons in the vehicle must wear seat belts correctly when driving, otherwise the risk of injury or death is increased in the event of an accident.
- Do not press the seat belt on fragile or sharp objects (e.g. pens, keys, glasses, etc.), where the pressure on the seat belt may cause injury.
- Each seat belt is intended for use by only one person in the vehicle, and it is prohibited to hold a child on his or her lap and share the seat belt with the child.
- Avoid contaminating the seat belt with any chemicals, liquids, etc.
- Do not remove or install seat belts, belt retractors, and seat belt anchors without authorization. Retrofit, disassembly, etc.
- Do not add additional non-official attachments to the seat belt, including, but not limited to, additional tongue locks, webbing stops, latch extension joints, etc.

The normal protection of the seat belt can be reduced or even lost.

- When not in use, the seat belt should be fully retracted and not overhang. If the seat belt cannot be retracted or locked in the latch and cannot be removed, you must contact the Xpeng Automobile Service Centre immediately for service.

Airbag

Airbag Introduction



The airbag is a passive safety protection device that is used together with the seat belt to provide additional protection for vehicle occupants.

1. Front/Rear Head Side Curtain Airbags	4. Driver Airbag
2. Passenger Seat Side Airbag	5. Driver Far-side Airbag
3. Front Passenger Airbag	6. Driver Seat Side Airbag

Driver/Front Passenger Airbags

The driver airbag is installed inside the center of the steering wheel, and the middle of the steering wheel is marked with “**AIRBAG**”mark.

The front passenger airbag is installed on the right side of the instrument panel, and the right end of the instrument panel is marked with “**AIRBAG**”mark.

When the vehicle is subjected to a severe impact, the driver/front passenger airbags protect the heads and chests of the driver and front row passenger.

front row side airbag

The side airbags are installed inside the front seat seatbacks, and the outer side of the driver's seatback is marked with “**SRS AIRBAG**”The label is symmetrically arranged with the installation marking of the front row occupant seat side airbag.

When the vehicle is subjected to a severe impact, the front row side airbags help protect

the side chest and hip body areas of the driver and passenger occupant.

driver remote airbag

The driver far-side airbag is installed inside the driver seatback, and the inner side of the driver seatback is marked with "**SRS AIRBAG**"marking.

When the vehicle is subjected to a severe impact, the far-side airbag protects the shoulders and head of the driver and passenger occupants, reducing injuries as much as possible.

Front/Rear Head Side Curtain Airbags

The front/rear head side curtain airbags are installed along both sides of the roof, and the interior B-pillar trim panel is marked with "**AIRBAG**"mark.

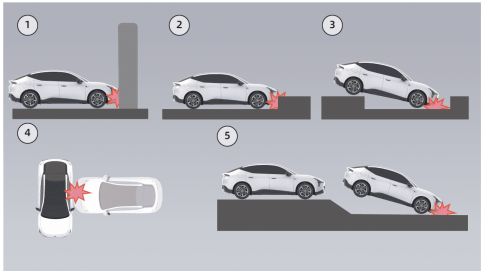
When the vehicle is subjected to a severe impact, the curtain airbag protects the heads of the driver and passengers.

Airbag Malfunction Indicator Light

After the vehicle is powered on, on the central control screen, " " The indicator lights up for a few seconds and goes out after the system completes self-check. If the indicator does not go out after the system self-check, or lights up again after going out, or remains on continuously, this indicates a fault in the airbag system. Please contact a XIAOPENG Motors Service Center immediately for inspection and repair.

Airbag Deployment Conditions

In the event of a severe frontal collision or side collision, the airbags may deploy.



1. High-speed frontal collision with a wall or vehicle.
2. Hit a hard roadbed.
3. Fall into a deep ditch.
4. Side impact by a vehicle traveling at a relatively high speed.
5. Land forcefully after jumping.

Effects of Airbag Deployment

caution

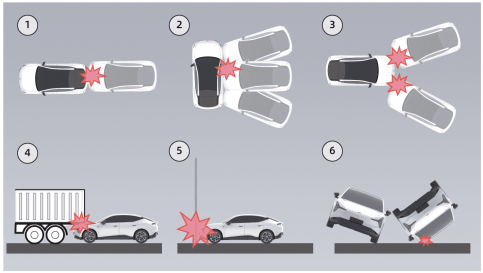
- In the instant of airbag deployment, a loud noise is associated with the release of gas and powder, which may irritate the skin and eyes. At this point, under the premise of safety, should escape outside the vehicle as soon as possible, if not, The window or door should be opened to allow fresh air to be drawn in.
- When the powder gets into the eyes or adheres to the skin when the airbag is detonated, wash thoroughly with clean water as soon as possible and seek medical advice if you are seriously unwell.
- When deployed, the air bag retracts in volume, providing a gradual damping effect for the occupants, ensuring an unobstructed view of the driver's forward vision.

After the vehicle is involved in a collision and the airbags deploy, the vehicle will automatically carry out some safety measures to protect the personal safety of the occupants inside the vehicle:

- All doors are unlocked.
- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Vehicle high-voltage Power Off.
- All doors and windows automatically lower.
- Automatically call emergency rescue.

Situations in Which the Airbags Will Not Deploy

The airbags may not deploy in the following situations. Please use seat belts correctly to protect passengers:



1. The airbags will not deploy if the vehicle is rear-ended.
2. In the event of a side collision, due to the impact of the collision angle, if the airbag sensor trigger conditions are not met, the airbags may not deploy.
3. In the event of a front-side collision of the vehicle, due to the influence of the collision angle, the airbag may not deploy if the triggering conditions of the airbag crash sensor are not met.
4. If the vehicle collides with a container truck or underrides beneath a large vehicle, and the airbag collision sensors do not meet the triggering conditions, the airbags may not deploy.
5. When the vehicle collides with slender objects such as trees or poles, the airbag may not deploy if the triggering conditions of the airbag crash sensor are not met.
6. In the event of a vehicle rollover, the airbags may not deploy.

Airbag Precautions

warning

- The airbags, as passive safety devices, do not replace the protective effect of the seat belts, and only when used in conjunction with the seat belts provide optimum protection to the occupants. It is therefore important that all occupants of the vehicle are wearing their seat belts and sitting in the correct position.

- Maintain a distance of at least 25cm between the driver's chest and the steering wheel to avoid injury to the driver if the airbag is deployed.
- The airbag can only be triggered once, if the airbag has been triggered then the airbag system components must be replaced.
- Do not drive the vehicle after the airbags have been deployed, contact Xpeng Motor Service immediately to replace the vehicle's safety system components.
- Do not place anything within the primary/ secondary driver airbag inflation range to prevent objects from obstructing airbag inflation in the event of a frontal impact of the vehicle.
- The front row occupants must not hold children, pets, or objects in their arms and occupy the air bag inflating space. Adults and children are subject to this requirement.
- Do not secure any objects (e.g. portable navigation units) to the front windshield above the passenger airbag.
- No objects (e.g. phone supports, ornaments, etc.) must be covered or affixed or modified on the marking surfaces of the steering wheel or front passenger airbag module.
- Do not stow objects in the front passenger seat, if the air bag explodes in case of emergency braking, the objects may be blown and injured.
- Seat covers must not be used, as this may limit the deployment of the front side air bags in the event of an accident and may reduce the accuracy of the system's detection.
- Do not modify the airbag cover or add parts in the vicinity of the airbag cover. The passenger must not lean his head against the door. Failure to do so could result in injury when the air curtain is deployed.
- Passengers must not place their feet, knees, or any other part of their body over or near the airbags to prevent them from working properly or causing fractures or other injury if the airbags are deployed.

- Do not retrofit the vehicle roof to prevent the side air curtains from operating correctly, causing injury to the occupants if the air bags are deployed.
- The Xpeng Automobile Service Center has special tools, diagnostic equipment, service materials and qualified technical personnel. Repairs and modifications to vehicles should be carried out by Xpeng Automobile Service Centre.
- Do not use airbag components removed from end-of-life vehicles or recycled airbag components. Above or near the primary/secondary driver airbag, on the side of the front seat, above the canopy on the side of the vehicle, and on any other airbag cover that may interfere with airbag deployment. Do not load or place anything. These items can cause serious injury if the vehicle is subjected to a severe impact causing the airbags to deploy.
- Do not attempt to alter the airbag components, wiring and software as this may cause the airbag system to fail to function properly and provide the necessary protection for occupants. It may fail or start unexpectedly in the event of an accident, increasing the risk of injury.

Child Safety Seat

Child Passenger Guide

To protect children riding in the vehicle, an appropriate child safety seat should be used according to the child's age, weight, and height. Please strictly follow the instructions provided by the child safety seat manufacturer.

Child Seat Usage Label

A front row airbag warning label is affixed at the passenger sun visor.

warning

Do not place a rearward-facing child seat on an airbag-protected seat, as this could cause death or serious injury to a child in the seat.

Front passenger airbag disabling* (If appilcable)

1. Front passenger airbag status indicator
2. Front passenger airbag on
3. Front passenger airbag off
4. Front passenger airbag switch

The front passenger airbag is on by default and can be turned off/on in the following two ways:

1. Tap the front passenger airbag status indicator on the status bar, then go to the switch setting interface.

2. Tap " →**Settings**→**Vehicle**→**Drive Modes**"on the CID to enter the interface, then slide down and tap the front passenger airbag switch.

Larger Children Riding in the Vehicle

If a child cannot use a child safety seat because of their large body size, but is still too small to safely use a standard seat belt, a child booster cushion that complies with relevant regulations or standards may be purchased and used correctly. A child booster cushion can raise the child so that the seat belt shoulder strap crosses the middle of the shoulder, and lower the seat belt lap belt to the hips.

warning

- Do not place a rear-facing child seat on a seat protected by an airbag, otherwise it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the seat.
- Be sure to select a suitable child safety seat according to the child's age, height, and weight.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be used only when the child's weight exceeds 9 kg and the child can sit independently. The spine and neck of children under two years old are not yet fully developed, and frontal collision injuries must be avoided.
- When the vehicle is in motion, under no circumstances shall drivers or passengers hold a child or infant in their arms. All children should always be restrained in an appropriate child safety seat.
- Even if the child has been secured in a child safety seat, do not leave the child alone in the vehicle.
- Never allow children to ride in the vehicle without safety protection. When the vehicle is in motion, always ensure that children maintain a correct sitting posture. Never allow them to stand inside the vehicle or

kneel on the seats. Otherwise, in the event of an accident, fatal injury may be caused to children and others.

- Do not use a seat belt extender with the seat belt of a seat used to install a child restraint system or booster seat.
- When a larger child is seated, ensure that the child's head is supported, and properly adjust and secure the child seat safety belt. The shoulder belt must avoid the face and neck, and the lap portion must also avoid the abdomen.
- Only one child may be seated in a child seat. Do not use the seat belt to restrain multiple children in one child seat.
- Never secure two child safety seats to one anchorage point. In the event of a collision, one anchorage point may be insufficient to secure two seats.
- The anchorage points of the child restraint system only bear the loads from a correctly installed child restraint system. Under no circumstances may the child restraint system be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for securing other items or equipment.
- Always check whether the safety straps and tie-down straps are damaged or worn.
- Never use a modified, damaged, or crash-involved child safety seat. Inspect or replace the child seat in accordance with the requirements in the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions.
- To ensure children ride safely, be sure to follow all instructions detailed in this manual, as well as the instructions provided by the child safety seat manufacturer.

Child Seat Classification

	Seating position

seating position	front left	front centre	front right ①		2nd row left ②	2nd row centre②	2nd row right②
			with front passenger airbag activated	with front passenger airbag deactivated			
Seating position suitable for universal belted(yes /no)	No	No	Yes Forward facing only	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
I-Size seating position(yes/no)	No	No	No	No	Yes	No	Yes

Seating position suitable for lateral fixture(L1/L2)	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture(R1/R2X/R2/R3)	No	No	No	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3
Largest suitable forward facing fixture(F1/F2X/F2/F3)	No	No	No	No	F1/F2X/F2/F3	No	F1/F2X/F2/F3

Largest suitable booster fixture(B2/B3)	No	No	(B2/B3)*	(B2/B3)*	B2/B3	No	B2/B3

- *Only applicable for installation with seat belt.
- During the installation of the CRS, the backrest angle of seats should be adjusted reasonably to ensure that the CRS remains stable.
- During the installation of the CRS, the height of the headrest should be adjusted reasonably or the headrest should be removed to avoid interference with the CRS. Do not remove the head restraint when using a booster cushion with no backrest.
- ①: If needed, the seat can be adjusted to rearmost and highest position, the seatback can be adjusted to fully upright.
- ②: When installing a CRS on the 2nd row seat, the frontal seats can be adjusted in fore/aft and height, and the seatback angle can also be adjusted to ensure there is no interaction with the CRS/child.

Recommended Child Restraint System Types

ECE-R129 classification is based on a child height.

Child stature	Manufacturer	Type	Accessory
40 cm-83 cm	Maxi-Cosi	Pebble 360	Seat belt
76 cm-105 cm	Britax Romer	Trifix2 i-Size	ISOFIX and Top Tether
100 cm-135 cm	Britax Römer	Kidfix i-Size*	Belt and ISOFIX
135 cm-150 cm	Osann	Booster Boost	Belt and ISOFIX

* For the best protection, it is recommended to use this child restraint system with the included backrest and be sure to attach the seat belt through Secure Guard and XP-pad.

Choose an appropriate child restraint system. Children shall use appropriate child restraint systems until they becomelarge enough to wear the vehicle's seat belt.

If the child cannot use a child restraint system due to large body size, place the child in the second row seat and use the seat belt of the vehicle.

Ensure that the CRS is the correct type for the seating position.

Only a child seat that is compliant might be used in the vehicle.

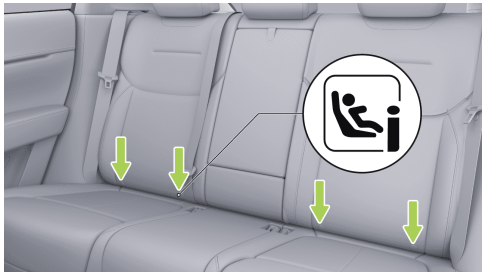
Child Seat Installation Methods

Before installing the child safety seat, please carefully read the child safety seat instruction manual and install the child safety seat according to the instructions.

Install the child safety seat using the seat belt fastening method

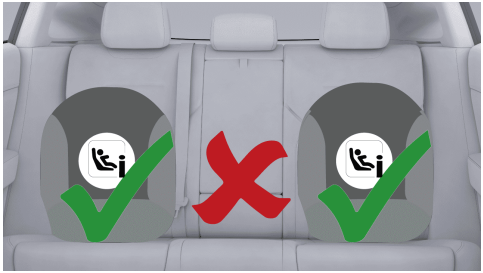
1. Place the child restraint system on an outer rear seat, then pull the seat belt all the way out. Route and fasten the seat belt according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.
2. Allow the seat belt to retract, firmly push the child safety seat into the seat, and tighten the slack seat belt simultaneously.
3. If the child restraint is equipped with a top tether, attach the tether to the seat backrest.

Install a child restraint system using the ISOFIX anchorage points

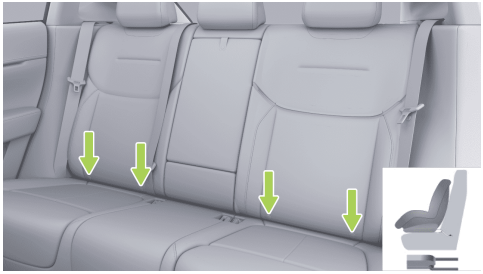


The ISOFIX anchorage points are located between the seatback and seat cushion of the left and right rear seats, and an i-Size mark is printed above each anchorage point.

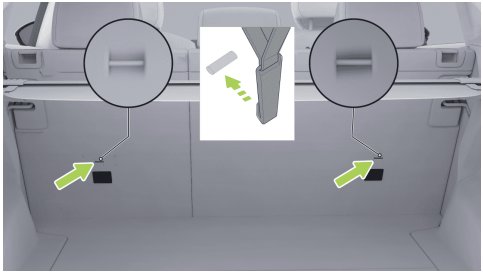
The upper anchorage points are located at the rear of the seatbacks of the left and right rear seats.



1. Place the child safety seat on an outer rear seat.



Insert the lower mounting brackets of the child restraint system into the i-Size anchorage points according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for use.



Pass the top tether strap of the child restraint system through the head restraint and pull it to the rear of the seatback, connect the hook ring of the tether strap to the anchorage point, and tighten the tether strap.

Check the child safety seat

After installing the child safety seat, be sure to ensure that the child safety seat is not loose:

1. Secure the child restraint system along the seat belt path, and try sliding the child restraint system from side to side and from front to back.
2. If the child restraint system can move more than 2.5 cm, it indicates that it is too loose. Tighten the seat belt or reconnect the i-Size rigid child restraint system.
3. If it cannot be fastened securely, try another seating position or use a different child restraint system.

caution

- When installing a child safety seat, if the seat head restraint obstructs the installation of the child safety seat, remove the head restraint before installing the child safety seat.

- Adjust the angle of the seatback of the seat in front of the child restraint system to avoid interference with the child restraint system; interference will affect the safety performance of the child restraint system.
- When installing a child restraint system or a universal belt-positioning booster on the rear seat, it is recommended to adjust the rear seat seatback angle to the position that best fits the child restraint system.

warning

- The child safety seat must be fitted correctly and always in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions to avoid the child safety seat not being protective in the event of an accident.
- Do not secure more than one child seat in a single seat belt or single anchor position. The increased load on multiple seats can damage the seat belt or anchor, causing serious injury or death.

Child Safety Lock

Child safety lock

This vehicle is equipped with child locks on the rear side doors. When enabled, they can prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors using the interior door handles, reducing the risk of incidents while riding.

- To enable: insert the mechanical key. As shown in the figure above, turn clockwise to enable the child safety lock of the left rear door; for

the right rear door, turn counterclockwise to enable it.

i Tips

It is recommended to enable the child safety lock when children are seated in the rear seats.

- To deactivate: insert the mechanical key and turn it counterclockwise to deactivate the child safety lock of the left rear door; for the right rear door, turn it clockwise to deactivate.

warning

- Using the child lock can prevent children inside the vehicle from unintentionally opening the rear doors, reducing the risk of riding accidents.
- When the child lock is enabled, the rear door cannot be opened using the interior door handle. In this case, open the rear door from outside the vehicle; do not pull the interior door handle with excessive force, so as to avoid damage.
- Do not leave children alone in the vehicle.

Maintenance Guide

I. Necessity of Maintenance

1. To ensure the normal use of the vehicle and a good driving and riding experience, ensure the vehicle is efficient and reliable, and reduce possible maintenance costs, it is very necessary to carry out routine maintenance and regular servicing on the vehicle.
2. For the vehicle routine maintenance items that are explicitly specified in the *user manual* as able to be completed by the user, the user may complete the vehicle routine maintenance according to the relevant instructions in the *user manual*.
3. Considering the complexity of the vehicle system and the strict after-sales service requirements for new energy vehicles under national laws and regulations, XPENG Vehicle strongly recommends that users complete the vehicle's regular maintenance at an XPENG Vehicle service center.
4. If users have any questions about how to maintain the vehicle, they may contact XPENG directly.

II. Routine Maintenance and Precautions

Routine maintenance is a very important measure to ensure driving safety and reduce vehicle failures. Before driving, users should pay attention to the following items. If any abnormality is found, please contact XPENG in a timely manner.

a. Driving range is related to the depth of discharge. To avoid affecting the performance of the power battery due to excessive discharge, it is recommended that you charge the vehicle promptly when the low battery warning light alarms on the instrument cluster in the vehicle.

b. The vehicle's actual driving range will decrease as the vehicle ages.
c. Use of the Air Conditioner will reduce the vehicle driving range.
d. Under extreme temperatures and low battery level, due to the characteristics of the power battery, weak acceleration and insufficient power may occur.
e. Perform regular maintenance on the vehicle.
f. Maintain normal tire pressure.
g. Use the vehicle as little as possible in hot or severely cold climates.
h. After using the vehicle in winter, do not leave it parked for too long; charge it as soon as possible.
i. Remove unnecessary items to reduce the vehicle load.
j. If necessary, turn off high-power electrical devices such as the Air Conditioner, or adjust the heating or cooling temperature, to reduce the energy consumed by high-power electrical appliances and increase the driving range.
k. At high vehicle speeds, close the window to reduce air resistance and decrease power consumption.
l. Maintain the vehicle at a constant speed and reduce sudden acceleration and sudden braking.
m. When accelerating, press the accelerator pedal as lightly as possible.

III. Regular Maintenance

1. Regular maintenance is very important for ensuring that the vehicle remains in good condition, reducing operating costs, and extending the service life of the vehicle. Users are strongly advised to regularly take the vehicle to an XPENG service center for a comprehensive inspection and maintenance in accordance with the requirements of the *Maintenance Manual*.
2. The maintenance items are established based on normal vehicle driving conditions. For vehicles frequently used under severe conditions, the maintenance frequency should be increased. For specific matters, please contact XPENG Service Center:
   a. Drive in high-dust environments.
   b. Drive in extremely cold (below 0°C) or high-temperature (above 40°C) environments.
   c. Drive in humid environments or frequently wade through water.
   d. Drive on roads with high salt content or corrosive materials.
   e. Frequent braking or driving in mountainous areas.
   f. Used for commercial operations, or frequently for special purposes such as high-load use.
   g. Engage in racing or competitive activities.
   h. Additional installation or modification causes changes in the vehicle's operating conditions.

Fluid Inspection

Fluid Filler Port Overview

1. Brake Fluid Filler Port
2. Coolant filler port
3. Wiper washer fluid filler opening

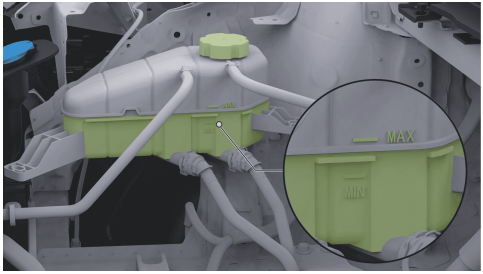
Coolant Inspection

Coolant Level Check

1. Open the front hood.

2. Detach upward the sealing strip above the front compartment trim cover panel.

3. Use an appropriate tool to remove the front compartment trim panel, and the coolant reservoir will be visible.



4. Check the coolant level. The coolant level should be between the MIN mark and the MAX mark.

Check the coolant level within the specified maintenance period. If the coolant level is below the MIN mark line, please promptly contact a XPENG service center.

warning

- When adding coolant, it is recommended to go to a XPENG service center and have the operation performed by professionals to avoid personal injury caused by accidentally touching high-voltage components.
- Do not remove the coolant expansion tank cap. Otherwise, under the pressure of steam and boiling liquid in the high-temperature cooling system, boiling liquid may splash out and scald personnel.

Brake Fluid Inspection

When the brake fluid is below the specified level, the central control screen displays Warning light, indicating reduced braking performance. To prevent a traffic accident, pull over immediately when it is safe to do so and contact a XPENG service center.

warning

- Use new brake fluid in a closed, air-tight bottle. Do not use brake fluid that has been used or that has been opened from the container. Brake fluid absorbs moisture and reduces braking performance.
- Brake fluid is highly toxic. The container shall be kept sealed and protected from contact by children. Seek medical attention immediately if you are accidentally contacted.
- If brake fluid comes into contact with the skin or enters the eyes, flush immediately with plenty of water.
- Brake fluid can damage the paint surface, the spillage can be absorbed immediately by an absorbent cloth and washed with a mixture of car cleaner and water.
- Some models have components in the front compartment that block the brake fluid reservoir and may not be able to accurately check the brake fluid level. If necessary, contact the XPENG Automobile Service Center for assistance with the inspection.
- It is normal for the vehicle to adjust automatically during use due to worn brake friction discs, the brake fluid level may drop slightly. However, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short period of time, falls below the "MIN" mark, or if frequent fluid topping up is required, this may indicate a leakage fault in the brake system. Contact your XPENG Automobile Service Centre as soon as possible to check the brake system.
- Brake fluid is water-absorbing and continuously absorbs water from the air during use. If the brake fluid contains too

much water, it will corrode the brake system and will also significantly reduce the boiling point of the brake fluid, which may create an air resistance during emergency braking. Reduced braking effect.

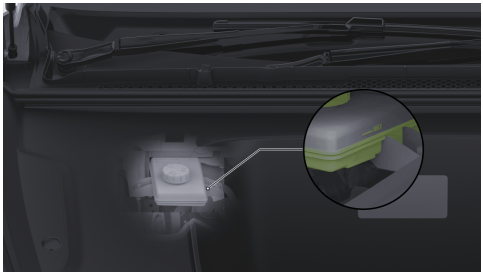
- Do not store brake fluid in a non-genuine brake fluid container such as a food container, beverage bottle, water cup, etc. Poisoning may occur due to accidental drink!

Brake Fluid Level Check

1. Open the front hood.

2. Detach upward the sealing strip above the front compartment trim cover panel.

3. Use an appropriate tool to remove the front compartment trim panel, and the coolant reservoir will be visible.



4. Check the brake fluid level. The brake fluid level should be between the MIN mark and the MAX mark.

Check the brake fluid level within the specified maintenance period. If the brake fluid level is below the MIN mark line, promptly contact a XIAOPENG Motors Service Center.

caution

If paintwork is inadvertently spilled when adding brake fluid, remove the paintwork as soon as possible, otherwise damage to the vehicle paintwork may occur.

warning

When adding brake fluid, it is recommended to visit an XPENG service center and have the work performed by professionals to avoid accidental contact with high-voltage components that could cause personal injury.

Add windshield washer fluid

The windshield washer fluid filler opening is located in the front compartment. When the vehicle is low on washer fluid, refill the windshield washer fluid promptly.

Refill Wiper Washer Fluid

1. Open the front hood.

Open the windshield washer fluid filler cap and refill to the appropriate level as needed.

Tips

When refilling windshield washer fluid, align with the reservoir opening and pour slowly; if the washer fluid is accidentally spilled, wipe it clean promptly.

3. Ensure that the washer fluid filler cap is properly installed.

caution

- Regularly check for clogged washer jets.
- When the temperature is below freezing point, use a cleaning solution containing antifreeze to avoid freezing of the washer pump, washer fluid tank and washer line.
- Do not use the washer when the washer fluid tank is empty. Damage to the washer will occur.
- Do not use formulated washer fluid, this fluid may cause the windscreen to create streaks, stains.

warning

- Do not allow windshield washer fluid to splash onto the body panels. If it is accidentally splashed, wipe up the spill immediately and rinse the spilled area with clean water.
- Use glass cleaning fluid that complies with the national standard (see the text on the bottle packaging), and according to the local temperature conditions, select cleaning fluid with a freezing point lower than the local minimum temperature. Cleaning fluid that does not meet the standard may cause damage to the glass cleaning fluid pipeline.
- When the local ambient temperature is above 10°, do not use windshield washer fluid with a freezing point below 0°; otherwise, the rear lamps may crack.

Tire Maintenance

Tire Pressure Monitoring TPMS

The TPMS can monitor tire conditions in real time while the vehicle is driving, and issue an alarm when the tire pressure or the TPMS system is abnormal, ensuring driving safety.

Tire Pressure Abnormal Alarm

When the tire pressure is too low or too high, the central control screen will illuminate. Indicator light, and the corresponding text reminder pops up: **“Tire Pressure Too Low”, “Tire Pressure Too High”**If this occurs, stop the vehicle at the roadside in a safe place as soon as possible, check the tires in a safe location, and inflate or deflate the tires to the normal tire pressure value.

TPMS Fault Warning

When the TPMS malfunctions, the central control screen will illuminate. Indicator light, and the corresponding text reminder pops up: **“Tire pressure monitoring system fault, please**

contact service", "Tire pressure sensor fault, please contact service", pull over and stop in a safe place as soon as possible, and contact the XPENG Motors Service Center as soon as possible.

tire pressure calibration

After each tire replacement, the tire pressure needs to be calibrated. First lock the vehicle, power it off, and keep the vehicle stationary for more than 17 minutes. Then drive forward for 10 minutes at a vehicle speed above 40 km/h to calibrate the tire pressure. During the tire pressure calibration process, avoid reversing.

View tire pressure

You can use the central control screen " →**My Vehicle**"On the interface, check the current vehicle tire pressure value. If the tire pressure value is lower than the specified value on the tire pressure label on the driver-side B-pillar, inflate the tires in time.

caution

- It is normal for the tire pressure to increase after the vehicle has been driven for a period of time.
- If the tires require frequent inflation, go to Xpeng Automobile Service Center for service as soon as possible.
- If the tire frequently leaks or cannot be repaired properly due to cuts and other damage, replace the tire.
- If the tire leaks during driving, do not continue driving, even a short distance may cause irreparable damage to the tire.
- Make sure the tire valve cap is installed, dust and moisture will enter the valve core and may cause air leakage, if the valve cap is missing, install a new valve cap as soon as possible.

Tread Depth

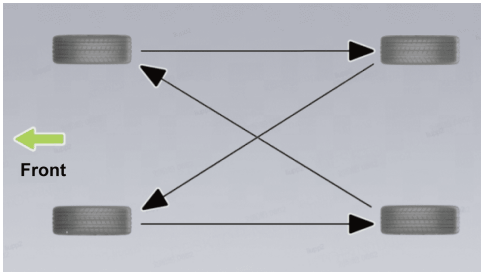
There are 1.6 mm-high wear indicators in the tire tread grooves, distributed around the circumference of the tire. If the tire is worn down to be level with the wear indicators, the tire must be replaced immediately.

If tires with exposed wear indicators continue to be used, it may lead to extended braking distance, steering failure, tire rupture, and other conditions, which can easily cause accidents.

During daily driving, tire wear can be reduced and tire service life can be extended through the following methods.

- Avoid rapid acceleration.
- Avoid sharp turns and hard braking.
- When driving over potholes, curbs, or similar sections of road, pass through slowly.
- A four-wheel alignment inspection is required when uneven tread wear is found.

Tire Rotation



During vehicle operation, the loads borne by the front and rear wheels are different, and the wear conditions are also different. Tire rotation can effectively reduce uneven tire wear, make tire wear more uniform, and extend tire service life.

Tips

After tire rotation, the tire pressure sensor needs to be calibrated. To avoid abnormal TPMS operation, please go to a XPENG service center for tire rotation.

Tire Replacement

Due to the effects of ultraviolet radiation, extreme temperatures, high loads, and environmental conditions, tires will age over time. Tires will also undergo normal wear during normal acceleration, braking, and turning.

XPENG Motors Service Center will inspect tire wear during vehicle maintenance and recommend tire replacement if necessary.

Tips

When changing tires, it is recommended to give preference to XPENG Factory tires. If other brands of tires are used, even if they are the same size, they may have a related impact on life, life, etc.

If any of the following abnormal tire conditions occur (including but not limited to), immediately go to a XPENG service center to have the tires inspected or replaced:

- The tire tread is worn down to the tread wear indicator.
- The tire surface is scratched or punctured by a foreign object.
- Bulges or cuts are present on the tire sidewall.
- The tire is severely aged, and cracks appear on the tire surface.
- The tire surface peels off, exposing the cord ply.

caution

Follow the precautions below; failure to do so may result in an accident and serious injury or death:

- Do not use tires that were previously used on another vehicle.
- Do not mix tires with significantly different levels of wear.
- Do not use tires whose previous usage conditions are unknown.
- Do not mix tires from different manufacturers, or with different models or tread patterns.
- Do not mix tires of different constructions (for example: radial, bias-belted, or bias-ply tires).
- Use tires and wheels that are the same as the original vehicle specifications. If the tires do not match the original specifications, the assisted driving functions and the tire pressure monitoring system may not operate properly.
- After installing new tires or repairing tires, wheel dynamic balance must be performed again.

Using Snow Chains

When driving the vehicle in severe conditions such as snow-covered or icy roads in winter, using snow chains can increase tire friction and reduce skidding. When using snow chains, the following instructions must be observed:

- When driving the vehicle in deep snow, it is necessary to install tire snow chains on the tires. This vehicle is not equipped with snow chains, which may be purchased separately as needed. If snow chains are installed, equivalent products must be selected whose size and type conform to the tire specifications on the vehicle.

  The rim and tire size specifications applicable to snow chains for this vehicle are as follows:

Rim Specifications	Tire Specifications

18-inch Wheel Rim	225/60 R18

- Do not exceed the specified speed limit for the tire snow chains, and do not exceed 50 km/h, whichever is lower.
- Snow chains may only be used on the rear wheels. Install snow chains in pairs. The use of self-tensioning snow chains is strictly prohibited.
- Do not use snow chains on dry roads. After driving onto a snow-free road surface, remove the snow chains.
- After fitting the tire snow chains as tightly as possible to the tires, drive 0.5–1.0 km, then tighten the snow chains again.
- If the vehicle is equipped with wheel covers, remove them before installing snow chains.
- If, while driving, you hear the snow chains rubbing against or striking the vehicle, stop the vehicle and retighten the chains. If this does not work, remove the snow chains to prevent damage to the vehicle.

Seasonal Tire Type

Summer Tires

Summer tires are suitable for extremely dry and wet road surfaces, but are not suitable for winter road conditions. When driving in low temperatures or on icy and snowy road conditions, it is recommended to use winter tires.

All-season tires

These tires are designed to provide adequate traction in all seasons throughout the year, but may not provide traction comparable to winter tires on icy and snowy roads. Visible on the sidewall of all-season tires “**ALL SEASON**”(All-season) and / or “**M+S**”(Mud and Snow) symbol.

Winter Tires

Winter tires can improve traction on icy and snowy roads. When installing winter tires, be sure to install a set of four tires at the same time. All four wheels must use winter tires of the same specification, brand, construction, and

tread pattern. You may contact a XPENG service center for advice on winter tires.

When driving a vehicle equipped with winter tires, increased road noise, reduced tread life, and decreased traction on dry roads may occur.

Friction Lining

Introduction

It is recommended to check during each maintenance service or before a long trip whether the friction lining has worn to the warning tab position.

If abnormal brake noise occurs during braking, it is recommended to inspect the friction pads. If they are worn to the warning position, replace them. The friction pads must be replaced with original parts.

Power Battery Maintenance

Routine Maintenance of the Power Battery

To maintain the good performance of the power battery, pay attention to the following items during daily use:

- When the power battery level drops to 0%, the charging gun must be connected immediately for charging.
- When the temperature is low in winter, it is recommended to keep the remaining driving range not less than 100 km.
- When the vehicle is parked, avoid enabling Sentry Mode or the delayed power-off function for an extended period to reduce vehicle battery consumption.
- The vehicle is equipped with a lithium iron phosphate battery. After taking delivery of the vehicle, charge the battery to 100% as soon as possible. During subsequent use, it is recommended that you set the charging

limit to "One-Tap Optimal" when charging, and fully charge the battery to 100% at least once every 2 weeks or every 1,000 kilometers.

Power Battery Characteristics

- Under normal conditions of the power battery, the vehicle driving range will be affected by factors such as driving habits, road conditions, ambient temperature, or the switching on of electrical equipment.
- Ambient temperature affects the performance of the power battery. The vehicle is required to be used within an ambient temperature range of -30°C to 55°C to maintain good power battery performance and extend the service life of the power battery.
- During long-term vehicle parking, the power battery will also slowly self-discharge. A low power battery charge will shorten the service life and performance of the power battery and affect the vehicle driving range.
- Therefore, before the vehicle is parked for a long period, check the remaining power battery charge and keep the charge between 30% and 60%. If the charge is insufficient, charge it to a level that meets the parking requirement before leaving it parked.
- If the vehicle is parked for a long time, it is recommended to disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery. Power on and inspect it once every 3 months. If the battery level is too low, charge it in time; otherwise, the performance of the power battery will be reduced due to low battery power.

Precautions for Use

The power battery is an important component of the vehicle. During use, please observe the following matters and limitations:

- Do not park the vehicle for an extended period to avoid complete discharge of the power battery, which may cause damage to the power battery.

- Do not park the vehicle in environments with high temperatures or severe cold, otherwise the power battery will be damaged.
- Keep the vehicle dry and avoid parking it for extended periods in damp environments, such as waterlogged parking lots.
- Use caution when driving through roads with deep standing water to avoid short circuit, electric leakage, or damage to the power battery due to excessive contact with water.
- If scraping of the chassis is perceived or the power battery emits an unusual odor, stop using the vehicle immediately and contact a XPENG service center.
- When the vehicle is driven over special road surfaces such as muddy roads, potholes, curbs, relatively high and wide speed bumps, and sidewalk ramps, caution is required to avoid chassis impact causing scratches to or damage of the power battery.
- It is recommended to park in a cool, dry, and well-ventilated place, away from heat sources (such as heating pipes) and low-lying areas, and far from flammable and explosive materials and corrosive substances.

Low-Voltage Battery Maintenance

Low-Voltage Battery Usage Recommendations

The replacement frequency of the low-voltage battery usually depends on the specific usage conditions of the vehicle. Good vehicle use habits can effectively extend the service life of the battery. During daily use, the following situations should be avoided:

- Long-term stationary storage of the vehicle will cause the low-voltage battery to be depleted.
- Avoid frequently driving with the battery fully depleted, as this will cause the low-voltage battery capacity to decrease.
- Using a non-brand low-voltage battery provides no after-sales support and has a low safety factor.

- The vehicle's remaining driving range is less than 30 km, and the vehicle was not charged in time.

Low-Voltage Battery Charging Function

The vehicle is equipped with a smart battery replenishment function. When the low-voltage battery level is low, the power battery will automatically charge the low-voltage battery. However, when the power battery level is low (when the remaining driving range is less than 30 km), charging of the low-voltage battery will stop in order to avoid damage caused by excessive discharge of the power battery.

Tips

When the vehicle's remaining driving range is less than 30 km, charge the vehicle immediately. Otherwise, the vehicle may fail to unlock or start due to low battery charge of the low-voltage battery.

Vehicle Cleaning

Vehicle Cleaning

Regular cleaning of the vehicle can protect the vehicle from damage caused by the external environment. The frequency of car washing depends on the vehicle's usage frequency and parking environment (for example: garage, under trees, or exposure to the sun).

Please note the following when washing the vehicle:

- When washing the vehicle, do so in a shaded area. Wait until the vehicle has cooled down sufficiently before cleaning it to avoid damage to the paint caused by direct sunlight.
- Before cleaning the vehicle, first remove contaminants from the paint surface, such as bird droppings, tree resin, insects, asphalt spots, road salt, industrial dust, etc.
- When cleaning the vehicle in winter, pay attention to drying the seams around the door

handles to prevent the risk of these areas freezing.

caution

- When washing the vehicle, use only a dedicated car-wash cleaner. Check the expiration date before use. After use, always store it out of reach of children.
- When washing the vehicle in low ambient temperatures or parking outdoors in snowy conditions, the active grille shutters may freeze and fail to operate properly, and the center display may show "Active grill shutter fault. This is a normal condition and does not affect vehicle operation. After approximately one hour of normal driving, or after thawing the shutters with a heat gun, the fault will clear automatically. If the fault persists after the shutters have thawed, contact an XPENG Service Center for inspection.

warning

- Do not wash the vehicle while it is charging.
- Do not wash the vehicle while it is powered on.
- Keep the charging opening closed during the car wash to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- Do not flush the interior of the front compartment with water.
- Do not wash the vehicle with a hard or rough cloth, to avoid damage to the paint.
- Do not wash the vehicle without the parking brake applied.
- Do not spray hoses directly toward windows, door seals or through hub bores into the brakes.
- Do not use chemical tire cleaner as this may damage the finished surface of the wheel.
- Do not use℃hot water with a water temperature greater than 60 and do not use hot water with a cleaning concentrate.

- Do not use acid and alkaline cleaners, acid fluids can damage the surface of the vehicle and affect its appearance.

Hand Washing

When manually cleaning the exterior of the vehicle body, follow the steps below:

1. Preparation Before Cleaning.
   - Enable Car Wash Mode.
   - Close all doors, windows, the trunk, and the front compartment lid, and check whether the charging port cover is fully closed.
2. Rinse thoroughly.
   - Rinse the vehicle body from top to bottom with plenty of water, including areas where dust, mud, or road salt is likely to accumulate (for example, wheel arches and panel joints).
3. Use a sponge or soft cloth to wipe the vehicle body.
   - Add a high-quality neutral automotive cleaner to cold or warm water, and use a clean, soft sponge, cloth, or soft brush to carefully wash the vehicle from top to bottom, starting from the roof.
   - If there is dirt that is difficult to remove, a cleaning agent may be used to soften it. If the sponge or wiping cloth is heavily soiled, it is recommended to replace it with another sponge or wiping cloth for cleaning.
4. Rinse with clean water.
   - After cleaning the vehicle, rinse it thoroughly with clean water to prevent cleaner residue from remaining on the surface.
5. Dry with a soft cloth.

caution

Do not continuously spray water onto the lower part of the windshield. If water enters the Air Conditioner air inlet at the lower part of the

windshield, the Air Conditioner system may not operate properly.

Using an Automatic Car Wash Machine

When using an automatic car wash to clean the vehicle, be sure to follow the instructions of the car wash operator:

1. Preparation Before Cleaning.
   - Enable Car Wash Mode.
   - To fold the mirrors inward, tap the fold Side Mirrors button on the car wash mode screen.
   - Close all doors, windows, the trunk, and the front compartment lid, and check whether the charging port cover is fully closed.
   - If using a conveyor car wash, enable Conveyor Car Wash Mode on the car wash mode screen.
   - If Conveyor Belt Mode in Car Wash Mode is enabled, disable Conveyor Belt Mode.
2. Start cleaning from the front of the vehicle.
3. After cleaning, unfold the mirrors.

Use a high-pressure washer to wash the vehicle

When using a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle, be sure to follow the equipment operating instructions.

- Before washing the vehicle, enable Car Wash Mode.
- Before washing the vehicle, check and confirm that all doors, the trunk, the front compartment lid, the charging port cover, and the windows are closed.
- Keep the nozzle at least 30 cm away from the vehicle body surface. Pay particular attention to the area around the window; if it is too close, water may enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not directly or indirectly use high-pressure water to wash the inside of the front compartment.

- Avoid using a high-pressure washer or steam cleaner to clean the sensors, so as not to damage the sensors.

warning

- When washing the vehicle, do not flush the water gun at the connector on the underside of the vehicle.
- Do not use a high-pressure water gun to impact the charging flap switch area, as this may cause the cap to open.

Clean the wheel rim

After rinsing with a water gun, clean the wheel rim with a soft brush, fully backward rinse with the water gun and use an air gun to blow dry the moisture on the brake friction pads and wheel rim.

Tips

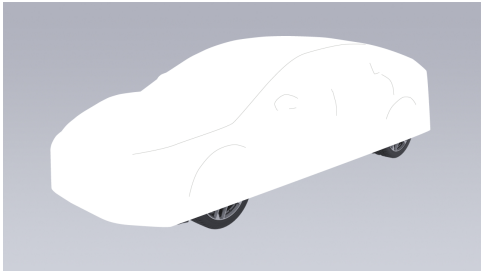
To drive the vehicle immediately after washing the vehicle, depress the brake pedal several times to remove any moisture from the brake discs. Water vapor may affect braking efficiency.

Paint Surface Maintenance

Regular waxing can protect the paint surface and help maintain the appearance of a new vehicle. Over time, the wax will gradually wear off; if necessary, apply wax again.

Tips

Waxing cannot restore the gloss of the paint.



It is recommended to park the vehicle in a covered parking area. Long-term outdoor storage is not recommended, to avoid resin, grease, or similar substances adhering to the paint surface. Such stains are likely to leave marks and are difficult to clean. If long-term outdoor storage is necessary, it is recommended to use a thickened cotton-flannel vehicle cover.

Inspecting and Cleaning the Wiper Blades

Regularly inspect and clean the edges of the wiper blades, and check the rubber for cracks, splits, and roughness. If damaged, contact a XPENG service center for replacement.

⚠ caution

- In winter or under cold conditions, be sure to check whether the wiper blades are frozen to the windshield before using the wipers. If so, de-ice them first; otherwise, damage to the wiper blades and wiper motor may occur.
- The surface of the wiper blade is coated with a layer of graphite, which enables smooth wiping and prevents wiping noise. Cleaners containing solvents, hard sponges, and sharp tools can all damage the graphite layer. Damage to the graphite layer will increase wiper wiping noise and the wiper blade should be replaced promptly.

Contaminants on the wiper blades may reduce the effectiveness of the wiper blades. Contaminants include ice, car-wash spray wax, washer fluid containing bacteria or water repellents, bird droppings, leaves, and other organic substances. Clean the wiper blades as follows:

- Shift the vehicle gear to P gear and keep the wipers off. On the central control screen "→**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Maintenance**"On the interface, you can enable Front/Rear Wiper Maintenance Mode.
- Slightly lift the wiper arm from the windshield until it is close enough to the wiper blade, then

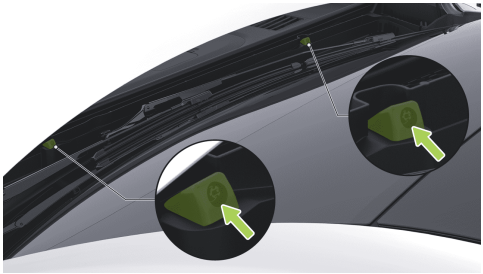
use a clean cloth and a neutral detergent to wipe the wiper blade.

- After cleaning, lower the wiper arm carefully to prevent it from dropping suddenly and striking the windshield, and turn off Wiper Maintenance Mode for the front wipers.

Tips

If the wiper blades are still ineffective after cleaning, the wiper blades may need to be replaced.

Clean the wiper nozzle



If the wiper nozzle is blocked, use a tool to clear the obstruction from the nozzle.

Clean the window and side mirrors

Contaminants on the windshield may affect the hydrophilicity of the glass. Please clean them promptly. Contaminants include dust and oil film, bird droppings, leaves, and other impurities and foreign matter.

Clean the window glass and rearview mirrors with an alcohol-based glass cleaner, then dry the glass surfaces with a clean, lint-free soft cloth.

Use a small brush to remove snow from the window and mirrors. Use de-icing spray to remove ice buildup. An ice scraper may also be used, but special care is required to avoid damaging components, and the ice must be scraped in the same direction.

caution

- Do not use hot water to remove ice and snow from the windshield and mirrors, otherwise the glass may shatter.
- Do not use cleaning products containing ammonia or chlorine, such as household window glass cleaners, as they will accelerate the aging of the wiper rubber strips.
- Do not use hydrophobic materials (such as waxing, crystal coating, etc.) to clean the windshield, as this will increase the hydrophobicity of the glass surface and affect the cleanliness of the windshield.
- If there are residual rubber, grease, or silicone substances on the glass, they must be removed with a special window cleaner or silicone cleaner.

Clean the lights

Clean with clean water and a soft cloth at normal temperature. For dirt that is difficult to remove, use a mild cleaner such as a plastic cleaner for cleaning, and then rinse off the cleaner with water.

caution

- Do not use dry cloths, dry sponges, or other dry items to clean the lights, so as to avoid scratching the lights.
- Do not wax or polish the surface of the lights to avoid damaging the lights.
- Do not use cleaning agent directly to clean the lights at high temperature. First rinse

with clean water to cool down, and then clean.

- Do not use cleaning agents containing alcohol or organic cleaners (such as adhesive removers, glass cleaners, paint cleaners, foam cleaners, thinners, de-icers, etc.) to clean the lights, so as to avoid damaging the lights.

Interior Cleaning

Interior Cleaning

Regularly inspect and clean the interior to keep its appearance neat and like new, and prevent premature wear.

caution

- It is recommended to use automotive products that do not contain plasticizers. If the plasticizer content of automotive products is too high, it will react with interior trim made of PU material, causing phenomena such as bulging of the interior trim.
- Using solvents (including alcohol), bleach, citrus cleaners, naphtha, silicone-based products, or additives will damage the interior.
- Do not use wet wipes, wet cloths, cleaning agents, etc. to wipe the door trim panel, and pay attention to protection during vehicle use (such as in rainy days and during car washing), and avoid water entering the door trim panel as much as possible, otherwise it may cause internal electrical component failures, etc.

warning

Do not directly use large amounts of water to rinse the interior of the Cabin and the rear luggage compartment, so as to avoid damaging electrical parts and affecting the normal use of the vehicle.

Plastic Parts Cleaning

Clean the surface of plastic parts with a clean soft cloth and clean water. If necessary, a dedicated plastic cleaner may be selected for wiping and cleaning.

warning

Polishing the upper surface of the instrument panel is strictly prohibited. A polished surface is prone to reflection and may interfere with the driver's field of vision.

Seat Cleaning

1. Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust.
2. Clean the leather with a clean soft cloth and clean water.
3. Wipe off the water stains with a dry soft cloth.
4. If the above cleaning is insufficient to remove stains, a dedicated stain remover may be used for cleaning. After wiping with the stain remover, dry it as soon as possible with a soft dry cloth.

caution

Do not leave a soft cloth soaked with detergent on any part of the interior trim for an extended period, so as to avoid fading or damage to the interior fabric.

Carpet Cleaning

Use a vacuum cleaner with a soft brush attachment to remove dust and loose dirt.

For stubborn stains, you can first try using water or soda water to remove the stains. Before cleaning, please use an appropriate method to remove the stains:

- For liquid stains: gently wipe the remaining stain with a paper towel, allowing the stain to soak into and be absorbed by the paper towel as much as possible, then use an interior cleaner to clean it.
- For solid, dry stains: remove them manually as much as possible first, then use a vacuum cleaner to remove them.

caution

- To extend the service life of the vehicle carpet and facilitate cleaning, please use genuine floor mats approved by XPENG Vehicle. Clean the floor mats regularly, and ensure that the floor mats are properly installed. If the floor mats are excessively worn, replace them promptly.
- To avoid interfering with the pedals, ensure that the driver's floor mat is properly secured, and never place additional floor mats on top of it. The floor mat should always be placed on the vehicle carpet surface.

Seat Belt Cleaning

1. Slowly pull out the seat belt and keep it in the pulled-out position.
2. Use a sponge dipped in neutral soapy water to wipe dirt from the surface of the seat belt.
3. After wiping, place the seat belt in a cool shaded area to dry, then retract the seat belt.

caution

- If any damage to the airbags or seat belts is found, please contact a XPENG service center immediately.
- Do not allow any water, cleaning agent, or fabric to enter the seat belt assembly.
- Do not use any type of detergent or chemical cleaner to clean the seat belt, so as not to cause damage to the seat belt webbing and affect its function.

screen cleaning

1. Before cleaning the screen, tap on the center display. “ →**Settings**→**Display**→**Clean Screen**”, enter screen Cleaning Mode.
2. Clean the central control screen with a special cleaning lint-free soft cloth.
3. After screen cleaning is completed, press and hold the center display screen “**Press and hold to exit**”Button, after the countdown ends, exit screen cleaning mode.

caution

- Do not use cleaning agents such as glass cleaners, damp rags or dry, static-coated rags such as a recently cleaned ultra-fine microcloth.
- Do not use acid-alkali, deoxygenation, sodium hypochlorite (84 disinfectant) and other corrosive liquids to clean the central control screen.

Traffic Accident Guidance

Breakdown Parking

If the vehicle malfunctions, after driving the vehicle to a safe area under safe conditions, depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle steadily on a safe road surface.

1. Shift the gear to P and turn on the hazard warning lights to alert the surroundings.
2. Open the vehicle trunk, lift the trunk cover panel, take out and put on the reflective vest, remove and unfold the warning triangle and place it at the rear of the vehicle to alert vehicles behind to slow down and avoid the vehicle.
3. After placing the warning sign, please leave the vehicle as soon as possible after ensuring that the surrounding environment is safe, keep a certain safe distance, and contact the XPENG service center for assistance.

Tips

- When wearing a reflective vest, wear the side with reflective material on the outside.
- If the reflective vest is damaged or heavily soiled, please replace it with a new reflective vest in a timely manner.
- After using the reflective vest and warning triangle, please return the reflective vest and warning triangle to their original place.

warning

- When handling a vehicle accident, regardless of the lighting conditions, be sure

to wear a reflective vest as required to attract the attention of passersby or drivers of other vehicles.

- Do not set up the warning sign without wearing a reflective vest.

Vehicle Tools

This vehicle is equipped with the following onboard tools. After use, they should be cleaned promptly and returned to their original positions.

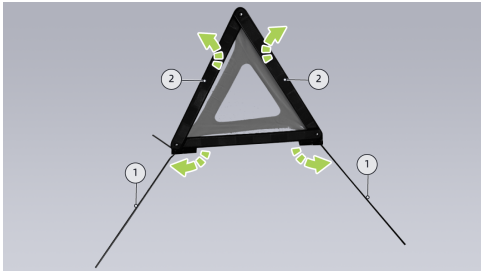
- Vehicle tool kit: towing hook, wheel center cap removal tool*/nut cap removal clip*.
- Reflective vest.
- Warning triangle.
- Tire inflation and puncture repair tool.

Remove the vehicle tools

Open the trunk, and after lifting the cover panel at the bottom of the trunk, you can see the vehicle tools.

1. Warning Triangle
2. Vehicle Tool Kit
3. Reflective Vest
4. Tire Inflation and Repair Tool

Warning Triangle Usage Instructions

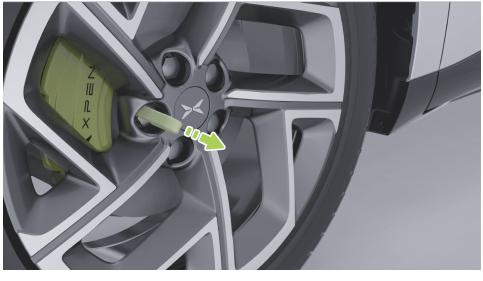


1. Unfold the 4 brackets ① below the warning triangle.
2. Unfold the folded edges ② on both sides of the warning triangle, and fasten the snap button on the upper part of the warning triangle.
3. Place the bracket on the ground with the reflective material side facing rearward.

Depending on the road type and environmental visibility, the placement distance of the warning triangle behind the vehicle is as shown in the table below:

Road	Placement Distance	
	Daytime	Nighttime
Highway	≥ 150m	≥ 150m
General Roads	≥ 50m	≥ 80m

Use of the Nut Cap Removal Clip*



1. Before removing the tire, take the wheel nut cap removal clip from the vehicle tool kit in the trunk, and use the wheel nut cap removal clip to remove the wheel nut caps one by one.
2. Properly place the removed nut cap, clean the nut cap removal clip, and return it to its original position.

Wheel Center Cap Removal Tool Usage Method*

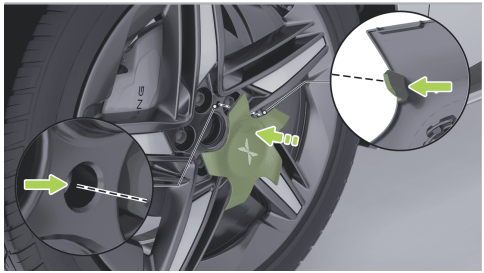
Remove the wheel center cap as follows:

1. Before removing the tire, take the wheel center cap removal tool out of the vehicle tool kit in the trunk.

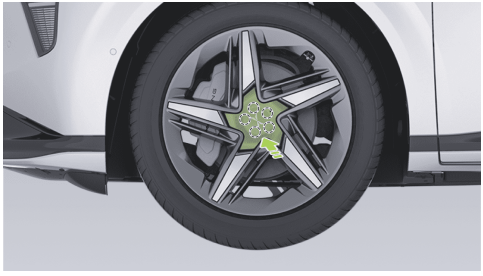
2. Insert it into the removal hole at the edge of the wheel center cap. When inserting it into the hole, operate carefully to avoid scratching the wheel center cap.

3. Pull outward firmly to remove the wheel center cap.

Install the wheel center cap as follows:



1. Before installation, align the positioning cylinder of the wheel center cap with the positioning hole of the wheel hub.



2. Press the wheel center cap to engage it. When pressing, ensure it is securely fastened in place to prevent the wheel center cap from coming loose while the vehicle is in motion.

Warnings

If the vehicle is severely damaged in an accident, observe the following warnings to ensure personal safety:

- Do not touch the High-Voltage Wiring Harness or any high-voltage components on the vehicle.
- Do not touch leaked liquid.
- Do not attempt to inspect the vehicle yourself.
- If the vehicle needs to be towed, please contact a XPENG service center.
- If the vehicle has been submerged in water, do not power it on a second time, as a short circuit may occur inside the power battery. To ensure personal safety and avoid secondary damage to the vehicle, immediately contact a XPENG service center to inspect the power battery system, and have professionals assess the damage condition of the power battery.
- If the vehicle emits smoke, move away from the vehicle immediately and contact the XPENG Service Center promptly.
- If the vehicle catches fire, move away from the vehicle immediately and call the police in time. When calling the police, you must inform them that this vehicle is a new energy pure electric vehicle.
- If the central control screen displays a power battery system fault, safely pull over and stop the vehicle, stay away from the vehicle, and contact a XPENG service center for handling.
- If any occupant is injured, contact emergency medical services according to the severity of the injury.
- If the vehicle is involved in underbody scraping, a collision, or other accidents, the internal structure of the power battery may be damaged, posing a serious safety hazard. Immediately contact a XPENG service center to inspect the power battery system, and have professionals assess the extent of the damage.

Temporary Tire Repair

Temporary Tire Repair

The vehicle is not equipped with a spare tire; an emergency tire inflator and repair kit is provided with the vehicle.

The tire inflation and repair emergency kit includes an inflator and one can of tire repair sealant (sufficient to repair one tire). When injected into the tire, the tire repair sealant will penetrate small punctures in the tire up to 6 mm in size, providing a temporary repair.

warning

- For perforations larger than 6mm, severe tread damage, sidewall damage, tire tearing or tire falling out of the wheel, Please contact XPENG Automobile Service Center.
- The inflatable tire repair emergency kit is only intended for a single temporary tire repair and must be repaired or damaged tires replaced as soon as possible.
- If a tire has been temporarily repaired with tire repair glue, the driving speed must not exceed 80 km/h.
- Read and follow all warnings and tips on the inflatable tire repair emergency kit.
- Do not continue driving when you notice a flat tire, as serious injury may result.

Tire Repair Glue

The tire sealant provided in the tire inflation and puncture repair emergency kit is specifically for XPENG Vehicle and will not damage the tire pressure sensor. Therefore, only tire sealant of

the same type and capacity may be used for replacement. Tire sealant can be purchased from an XPENG Vehicle service center.

The tire repair sealant packaging is printed with the product expiration date. If the expiration date has passed, the tire repair sealant may lose its intended effectiveness. Be sure to purchase new tire repair sealant.

warning

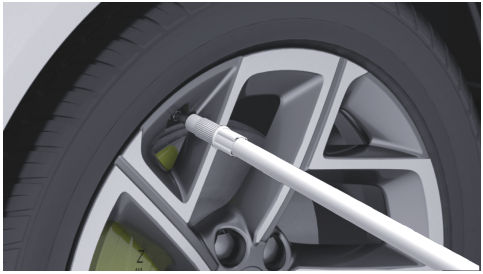
- Do not use tire repair glue purchased from other sources as this may cause tire pressure sensor failure.
- Always read and follow the safety and operating instructions for tire repair glue.
- Protect children from contact with the tire hydration.
- If your eyes come into contact with the tire repair glue, rinse immediately with clean water and seek medical attention.
- If you accidentally eat the tire supplement, seek medical advice immediately.
- If you accidentally inhale the tire repair glue, breathe fresh air immediately to avoid breathing and seek medical attention immediately.

Tire Repair and Inflation

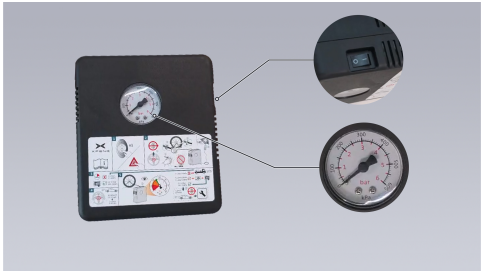
Temporarily repair small tire punctures (less than 6 mm) according to the following steps:

1. Remove the tire inflation and repair emergency kit from the trunk.

2. Remove the air pump and tire sealant from the tire inflation and puncture repair emergency kit.
3. Remove the tire sealant and shake it evenly.



4. Screw one end of the tire repair sealant hose onto the tire valve and tighten it. Do not invert the tire repair sealant canister.
5. Connect the other connecting hose of the tire sealant to the air pump and tighten it, then connect the air pump power cord to the 12V power supply in the vehicle storage box.



6. a. Press the switch to turn it on, and the air pump starts inflating the tire.
   b. During the tire sealant injection process, the pressure gauge indicates a pressure of approximately 300~600 kPa.
   c. Observe the pressure gauge and stop when the tire pressure reaches the standard pressure.
   d. For the standard tire pressure value for the tire specification, refer to the tire pressure label.

e. Check the tire pressure. If the set tire pressure cannot be reached within 20 minutes, the tire repair is considered unsuccessful.

7. Turn off the air pump and disconnect the connecting hose from the tire valve. Wipe off excess tire repair sealant from the tire valve and wheel rim. Then disconnect the connecting hose from the air pump, stow the tire inflation and repair emergency tool, and put it back in the trunk.
8. Drive the vehicle immediately for 5 km or 10 min to distribute the tire repair sealant around the entire tire, and keep the driving speed at 20~60 km/h.
9. Stop the vehicle and check the tire pressure.

caution

If the tire pressure is below 130kPa, damage to the tire cannot be repaired with tire repair fluid, please stop the vehicle safely at the roadside and contact the XPENG Vehicle Service Centre.

10. Inflate to the standard tire pressure.
11. Store the air pump properly and put it back in the trunk.
12. Drive the vehicle to a XPENG service center for tire repair at a driving speed of 20–80 km/h.

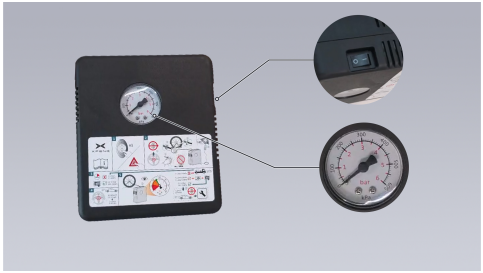
caution

- Repair or replace tires as soon as possible.
- After the use of the tire repair glue, the new tire repair glue should be purchased in time.
- Do not exceed 80km/h.

Inflation only

1. Remove the tire inflation and puncture repair emergency kit from the trunk.
2. Remove the air pump from the tire repair emergency kit.
3. Remove the connecting hose and the power cord from both sides of the air pump respectively.

4. Install the inflator hose onto the tire valve and tighten it.
5. Connect the inflator power cable to the vehicle's 12V power supply.



6. Press the switch to turn it on, and the air pump starts inflating the tire.
   - Observe the pressure gauge until the tire pressure reaches the standard pressure, then stop.
   - For the standard tire pressure value for the tire specification, refer to the tire pressure label.
7. Turn off the air pump.

caution

- Inflate to the standard tire pressure value, otherwise the tire pressure is too high or too low and can cause faster tire wear.
- If the tire pressure is too high, the tire pressure value can be reduced by deflating air.
  - Procedure: Remove the pneumatic hose and press and hold the metal bar in the center of the valve to deflate while connecting the pneumatic hose reads the gauge until the tire pressure decreases to the standard tire pressure.
- If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator does not extinguish after adjusting the tire pressure, drive at 40km/h for a short period of time and watch for the indicator to recover.
- It is normal to have a slight increase in tire pressure as the temperature of the tire increases after the vehicle has been driven for some time.
- If the indicator light is still on, contact the XPENG Automobile Service Center.

Roadside Assistance Service

Information Required for Rescue

When you call, please provide the following information to the rescue personnel:

- Your name.
- License plate number and vehicle color.
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
- Description of the issue and its exact location.
- The mobile phone number through which you can be contacted.

caution

- Do not arrange for rescue or repair actions by a third party. To ensure that you are entitled to the services provided by Xpeng Car Roadside Assistance, please only contact the Xpeng Car Service Center for assistance.

- If a trailer service is required, make sure to remove all personal belongings from your vehicle before the trailer arrives.

E-call*

SOS Introduction

SOS is the vehicle intelligent emergency call system. It can automatically or manually make an emergency call when the vehicle is involved in an accident or encounters an emergency, and provide information such as vehicle location and passenger injuries, so that rescue personnel can arrive at the scene in time and rescue trapped persons.

Manual Emergency Call

The SOS switch and indicator light are located on the front reading light panel. In the event of an emergency, you can manually call emergency rescue services by pressing the SOS switch twice consecutively within 3 seconds.

SOS Switch Indicator Information:

- Lit in green: indicates that rescue call is waiting or connected.
- Illuminates red: indicates that the system has malfunctioned. In this case, you should contact a XIAOPENG Motors Service Center for assistance.

warning

Do not press the SOS switch in non-emergency situations.

Automatic Emergency Call

When the vehicle is involved in a collision and airbag deployment is triggered, the system automatically calls for rescue.

Tips

- After the automatic emergency call function is triggered and the rescue call is connected, only the rescue party can end the call.
- In the event of battery failure, calling for rescue can continue to support calls for a period of time.

caution

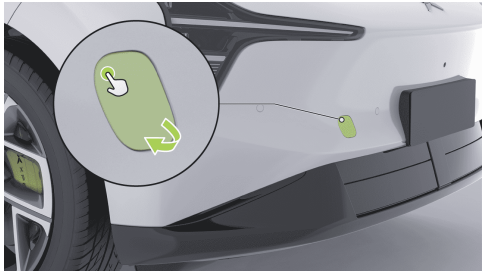
Not all accidents will trigger the automatic emergency call function. If you are able to make a manual emergency call, do not wait for the system to trigger an automatic emergency call; you should immediately make a manual emergency call for rescue to avoid delaying the response time.

Handling Methods When the Vehicle Cannot Move

Using the Tow Hook

If the vehicle has a fault and cannot be moved, a flatbed tow truck may be used to transport the vehicle. The specific operation is as follows:

1. Open the vehicle trunk, lift the trunk cover panel, take out the towing hook, lower the trunk cover panel, and close the trunk.



2. Press the upper left corner of the tow hook cover. After the cover pops up, open it.

3. Insert the towing hook, then turn it clockwise until it is securely fastened.
4. Attach the tow rope to the tow hook.
5. Confirm that the charging connector is not inserted and that the vehicle is in P gear or N gear, then depress the brake pedal on the center display screen “ →**Settings→vehicle→Maintenance→Rescue Mode**”On the interface, select “Turn on Rescue Mode”. After Rescue Mode is turned on, the vehicle will shift into N gear and release the parking brake, and it cannot be shifted to D or R gear. Please pay attention to safety!
6. Tow the vehicle onto the flatbed truck.
7. Ensure that the vehicle is fully stopped, on the central control screen “ →**Settings→vehicle→Maintenance→Rescue Mode**”On the interface, select "Turn Off Rescue Mode". Press the P gear switch on the gear selector to shift to P gear and secure the vehicle.
8. After use, restore the tow hook cover to its original state, and promptly clean the tow hook and return it to its original position.

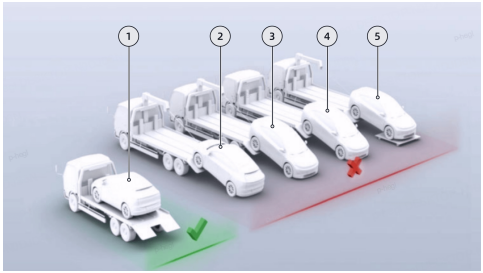
caution

- The towing eye must be securely screwed into the threaded hole; otherwise, it may slip out of the threaded hole during towing.
- Attach the rope only to the towing eye. Do not attach it to any other part of the vehicle; otherwise, the vehicle will be damaged.

- Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle with the tow hook. Start and drive slowly and smoothly. Excessive pulling force can cause shock loading and may result in personal injury or vehicle damage.
- If Tow Mode or the center display is unavailable, use a small tow dolly to carry the vehicle onto a flatbed truck. Before using the tow dolly, always consult the dolly manufacturer's instructions and its recommended load capacity.

Towing Precautions

Before towing the vehicle, be sure to contact a XPENG service center.



Before towing the vehicle when necessary, be sure to contact a XPENG service center. Use the towing method shown in ①, with all four wheels off the ground. The towing methods shown in ②③④⑤ are prohibited.

caution

- Only tow the vehicle away from the scene after ensuring that the vehicle has no safety risks. If the vehicle power battery has deformation, liquid leakage, smoke, or other such conditions, the safety risks shall be addressed first.
- If a flatbed truck cannot be used normally to tow the vehicle, a rigid connection may be used to tow the vehicle in an emergency to a safe area and wait for rescue.
- When using rigid towing, avoid towing over long distances, and the towing speed should not exceed 5 km/h.
- When the vehicle is towed onto a flatbed recovery vehicle, use tie-down straps and wheel chocks to secure the tires to prevent accidents.

warning

- When towing the vehicle, do not allow any person to stand in front of or behind the vehicle, otherwise an accident may occur.
- When towing the vehicle, it is prohibited for any person to ride in the vehicle; otherwise, an accident may occur.
- Never allow the wheels to touch the ground when transporting the vehicle. Otherwise, it will cause severe vehicle damage and overheating. In extremely rare cases, extreme overheating may cause surrounding components to catch fire.

Emergency High-Voltage Power-Off Handling Method

Collision Protection

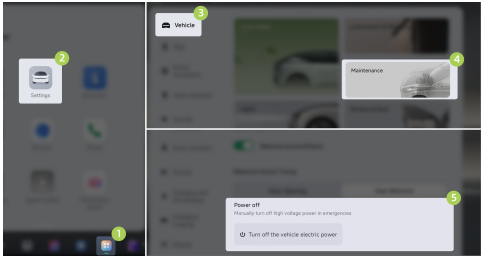
The vehicle has the function of cutting off high voltage and discharging high voltage. When the vehicle is involved in a collision accident, if the trigger conditions are met, the vehicle will automatically cut off the high voltage, and at the same time remind occupants to leave the vehicle as soon as possible through various forms such as sound and text, so as to avoid disasters posing a threat to occupants.

Main Shutoff Methods

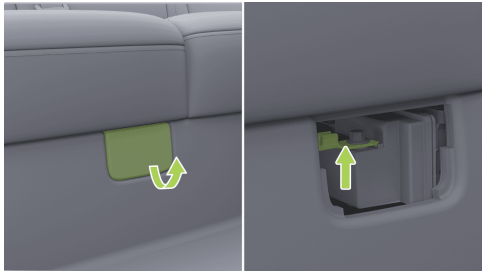
warning

- The operation of cutting the high voltage circuit requires a professional person, do not operate it yourself.
- Always wear the appropriate personal protective equipment before operating, and use insulated tools when working at high pressures.

After entering the vehicle, you can Power Off in an emergency by using the following methods:



1. Emergency power cut-off when the vehicle is stationary:
   - On the center control screen “ →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Maintenance**”Interface, tap “**Power Off**”, after reading the pop-up prompt, click “**Confirm**”The high-voltage power supply can be turned off, and the vehicle can be powered off directly.



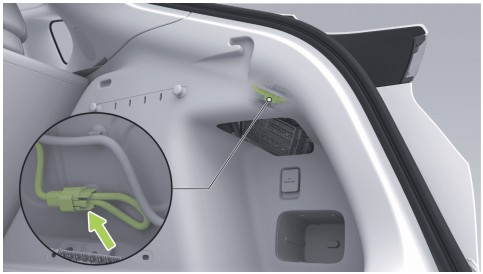
2. Remove the battery inspection cover panel under the right side of the rear seat to access the battery negative grounding cable inside.
3. Disconnect the negative battery cable. After disconnecting it, wrap it with electrical insulating tape to prevent conduction caused by accidental contact.

Alternative Cut-Off Method

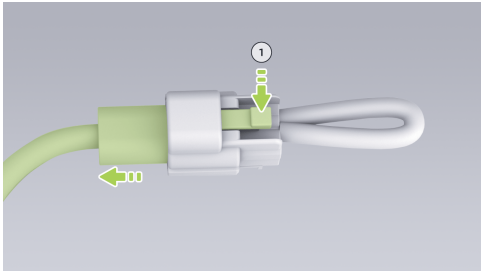
Alternative Cut-Off Method

If the above operation cannot cut off the high-voltage electricity, the following alternative methods may be attempted:

1. Open the trunk and use a suitable tool to remove the trunk service cover panel.



2. Locate the low-voltage service switch.



3. Press the unlocking tab ①, then remove the low-voltage maintenance switch in the direction of the arrow.

warning

- Even if the high voltage power has been cut off, touching power battery components is prohibited. If it is necessary to operate on power battery components, be sure to wear the corresponding personal protective equipment.
- If any High-Voltage component is found damaged, be sure to wrap the damaged area with insulating tape.

Vehicle Low Battery Handling Method

Symptoms of Low-Voltage Battery Depletion

- The vehicle cannot be started.
- The headlamps are dimmer than normal.
- The horn does not sound or the sound is weak.

If the vehicle cannot be started due to a discharged low-voltage battery, the vehicle can be started by connecting an external 12V DC power supply using jumper cables.

Tips

When the low-voltage battery charge is low, the power battery will automatically charge the low-voltage battery. However, when the power battery charge is low, charging of the low-voltage battery will stop in order to avoid damage caused by excessive discharge of the power battery. After the vehicle is locked, the anti-theft system starts operating and will continuously consume low-voltage battery power. If the vehicle is not charged in time, the low-voltage battery may become depleted, resulting in the vehicle being unable to be unlocked or started.

warning

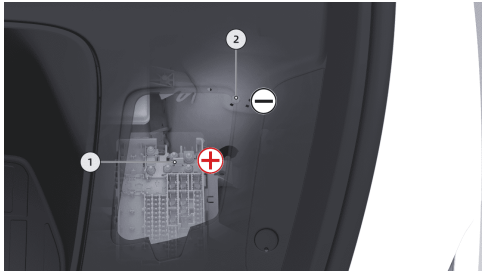
- Keep the battery away from open flames or static electricity. Otherwise, the flammable gas generated by the battery may be ignited

by sparks, causing an explosion accident. Before performing any operation on the battery, be sure to carefully read and follow the relevant battery operation safety warnings.

- The auxiliary power supply voltage must be the same as the voltage and capacity of this vehicle's battery, otherwise an explosion may occur.

Terminal Post

The positive and negative terminal posts are located in the front compartment. Open the front compartment lid and remove the front compartment service cover panel to see the negative terminal post. Then open the front compartment fuse box cover to see the positive terminal post.



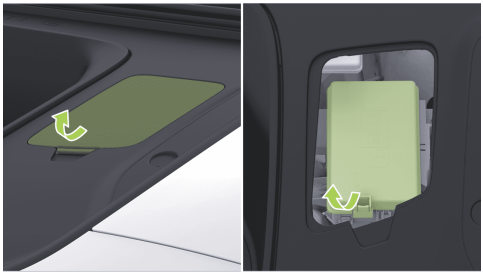
1. Positive terminal post
2. Negative terminal

Jump-Starting Procedure

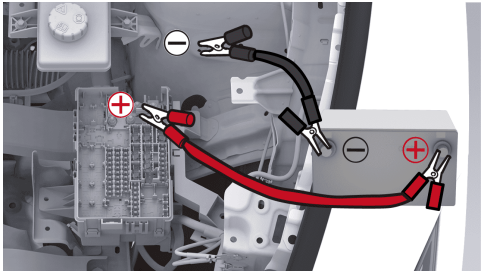
The vehicle battery has a battery lock function. When the battery level is too low to start the vehicle, first pull the front passenger side door handle and hold it for more than 5 seconds to wake up the battery, then immediately use the key to unlock and open any door to power on the vehicle; otherwise, the battery will enter battery lock mode again.

When pulling the passenger-side door handle and holding it for more than 5 seconds still cannot wake up the battery, and the vehicle cannot be started, the vehicle can be started by connecting an external 12V DC power supply.

Connection Cable



1. Open the front compartment lid, and remove the service access cover and the fuse box upper cover.



2. Connect one end of the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of this vehicle's 12V battery, and the other end to the positive terminal (+) of the auxiliary power source.

   Connect one end of the black cable to the negative terminal (-) of this vehicle's 12V battery, and the other end to the negative terminal (-) of the auxiliary power source.

3. After connecting the auxiliary power supply, if the central display is on, first use the central control screen " →**Settings**→**vehicle**→**Maintenance**"Interface, tap "**Power Off**"Power off in an emergency, otherwise the vehicle cannot start. After Power Off, ensure that the smart remote key is inside the vehicle or that the phone key is connected to the vehicle, then press the brake pedal + shift into gear to complete startup.

caution

The emergency auxiliary power supply cannot sustain high-power output for a long period. Generally, the action of connecting the auxiliary power supply and then restarting must be completed within 30 s; otherwise, the jump-start procedure must be performed again.

4. Start the vehicle. After the vehicle is successfully started, disconnect the connected cables in the reverse order.

warning

- Improper use of the connecting cable may cause the 12V battery to explode, seriously injuring personnel.
- The voltage and capacity of the auxiliary power supply must be the same as those of this vehicle's 12V battery, otherwise an explosion may occur.
- Keep the 12V battery away from open flames or static electricity. Otherwise, the flammable gas generated by the 12V battery may be ignited by sparks, causing an explosion.
- Do not touch high-voltage components during operation, and beware of injury from high-voltage electric shock.

Emergency Vehicle Rescue

Vehicle Basic Information

Vehicle Model	L03

Overall Dimensions	Length (mm)	4650
	Width (mm)	1920
	Height (mm)	1600
Rated Passenger Capacity (persons)		5
Maximum Design Gross Mass (kg)		2375/2465/2565

Emergency Rescue Personnel Protective Equipment

This vehicle's power system is driven by a power battery. In the event of a severe collision accident, high-voltage electricity leakage, battery pack damage, chemical liquid leakage, and other conditions may occur. Therefore, emergency rescue personnel should wear appropriate protective equipment when carrying out rescue operations on the vehicle to ensure personal safety.

warning

- When emergency rescue personnel operate on high-voltage components, a supervision mechanism shall be implemented: one person shall supervise and one person shall operate. It is prohibited for two or more persons to work simultaneously. While the operator is working, other personnel are prohibited from touching the operator.

- Emergency rescue personnel are prohibited from wearing metal accessories during rescue operations.

Device Name	Legend	Description	Purpose
Insulating Protective Clothing		Insulation class ≥1000V	Used to prevent high-voltage electric shock and withstand the heat generated by electric arcs.
Insulating Gloves		Insulation class ≥1000V	Used to prevent high-voltage electric shock
Insulating Shoes		Insulation class ≥1000V	Used to prevent high-voltage electric shock

Insulated Tools		Insulation rating ≥1000V	High-Voltage-Related Operations
Insulating Tape		Insulation class ≥1000V	Wrap all exposed or damaged wires.
Insulated Rescue Hook		Insulation class ≥1000V	Pull the electrocuted person away during rescue
Fire Blanket		A1	Fire Extinguishing

Helmet		Class T4 Electrically Insulated Near-Electricity Alarm Safety Helmet	High-Voltage Warning, Protect Your Head
Protective Face Shield		PVC Transparent Lens	Splash Protection
Goggles		PVC Transparent Lens	Splash Protection
Acid- and Alkali-resistant Gloves		Comply with the requirements of the *Solvent-Resistant Protective Gloves* standard	Use in Case of Electrolyte Leakage

Fire Extinguisher		Select the appropriate firefighting equipment (water or fire extinguisher) according to the type of fire.	Extinguishing Fire

Vehicle Fire

If the vehicle emits smoke or catches fire, move away from the vehicle immediately and call the fire emergency number 119.

If there is no smoke or fire at the lower part of the vehicle, it may be preliminarily determined that the vehicle fire does not involve the power battery. On-site personnel should use a dry powder or foam fire extinguisher to extinguish the fire at the earliest possible time to prevent the fire from spreading further. After the open flame is extinguished, further handling should be carried out only after confirming that reignition will not occur.

warning

If the vehicle catches fire, do not directly touch any part of the vehicle. Operations shall be carried out by professional rescue personnel wearing the correct safety protective equipment.

After taking cooling measures for the burning power battery, be alert to the risk of re-ignition of the high-voltage battery, and avoid danger during transportation.

Vehicle Wading

When handling a water-submerged vehicle, professional rescue personnel must wear appropriate personal protective equipment, first

pull the vehicle out of the water, and then normally cut off the high voltage.

caution

- It is recommended that the vehicle not remain in deep water for an extended period while driving through water; otherwise, damage to the vehicle's high-voltage components may easily occur.
- After the vehicle is salvaged, it must remain stationary for at least 30 minutes. During this period, the battery pack temperature must be monitored in real time to ensure that the battery has no thermal runaway condition before towing the vehicle away.

warning

The extent of damage to a water-immersed vehicle may not be obvious. When handling a water-immersed vehicle, rescue personnel must wear appropriate rescue protective equipment, otherwise electric shock may occur, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

Battery Leakage

warning

If a collision accident causes liquid leakage from the power battery, it should be handled by professional rescue personnel, and the corresponding personal protective equipment must be worn. Do not directly touch the liquid.

If the power battery leaks (with obvious liquid flowing out), handle it in the following way:

- If a small amount of electrolyte leaks, keep away from fire sources, absorb it with an absorbent pad and place it in a sealed container, or dispose of it by incineration.
- If a large leak occurs, collect it uniformly and handle it as hazardous chemicals; calcium gluconate solution may be added to treat toxic gases.

warning

- Before safe storage of the power battery, the temperature of the power battery must be monitored throughout the entire process. If abnormal temperature rise occurs, physical cooling is required to prevent fire and explosion.
- If the human body accidentally comes into contact with leaked liquid, immediately rinse with a large amount of water for 10–15 minutes. If there is no improvement or discomfort symptoms occur, seek medical attention immediately.

Occupant Emergency Evacuation

In the event of emergency accidents such as vehicle wading, collision, or fire, move away from the vehicle immediately and do not attempt to rescue the vehicle yourself.

Please attempt emergency evacuation in the following manner:

- Try to open the door in the normal way.
- If the door cannot be opened in the normal way, you may try to open the door using the emergency method:
  - Front-row occupants should open the front-row doors in an emergency.
  - Rear occupants should open the rear door in an emergency.
- If the vehicle door still cannot be opened, you may try to call rescue services and wait for rescue personnel.

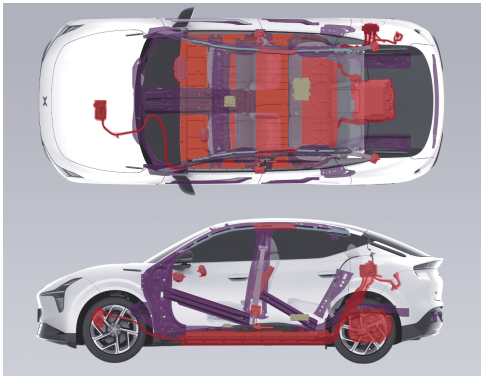
Cuttable Position

warning

- When cutting the vehicle body, be sure to use suitable tools such as hydraulic cutters, and wear appropriate personal protective equipment. Failure to follow these instructions will result in serious personal injury or death.
- Regardless of which high-voltage power cut-off procedure is used, always assume that all high-voltage components are

energized! Cutting, crushing, or touching high-voltage components may cause serious personal injury or death.

- If it is necessary to cut the vehicle body or use hydraulic cutting equipment to rescue occupants, first disconnect the high-voltage power and wait at least 3 minutes.



During emergency rescue, if it is necessary to cut, spread, or puncture body parts of the vehicle, care must be taken to avoid high-temperature and high-voltage areas such as the power battery, drive motor, high-voltage cables, high-voltage electrical equipment, and airbag-related components. As shown in the figure, the areas indicated in red are all prohibited cutting areas.

Under normal circumstances, avoid cutting components related to the airbag, but it may be done in the following situations:

- The driver/passenger airbags, front row side airbags, driver far-side airbag, and front and rear head side curtain airbags have deployed.
- After disconnecting the negative cable of the 12V battery and cutting off the high voltage electricity for more than 3 minutes.

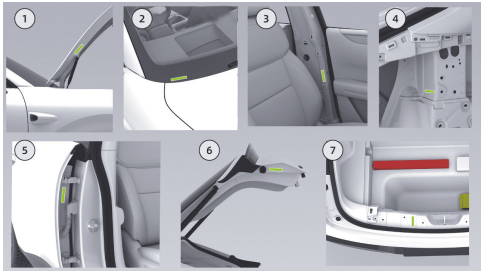
In addition, the purple area is a high-strength steel plate area, and these steel plates need to be cut using special tools.

Vehicle Identification Information

Vehicle Identification Number

The vehicle identification number is stamped beneath the right front seat.

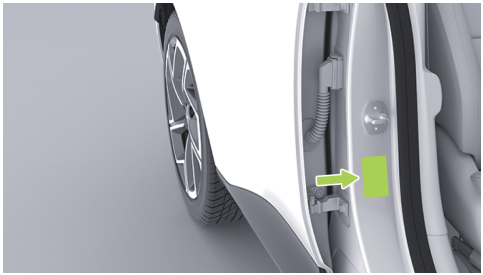
The identification number of other vehicles is located at the following positions on the vehicle:



1. Affixed to the inner side of the front hood.
2. Affixed to the lower right side of the front windshield.
3. Affixed to the left B-pillar.
4. Affixed at the left rear wheel housing.
5. Affixed to the inner panel of the right rear door.
6. Affixed to the left side of the tailgate.
7. Affix it to the cross member on the rear panel.

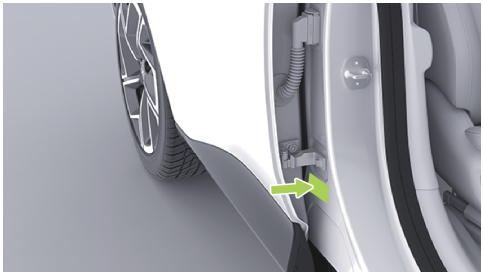
Vehicle Product Nameplate

Type 1



Located on the right B-pillar and visible after opening the right-side door.

Type 2

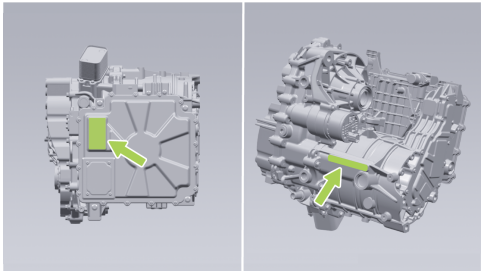


Located on the right B-pillar and can be viewed after opening the right-side door.

Type 3

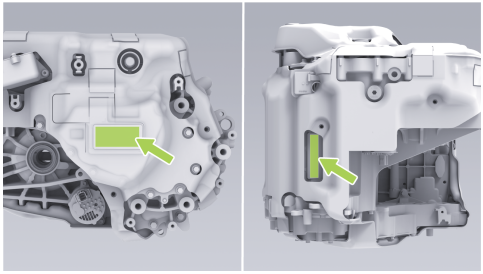
Located on the left B-pillar; visible after opening the left-side door.

Front Drive Motor Model and Number*



The drive motor model and serial number are shown on the drive motor housing and on the drive motor nameplate label.

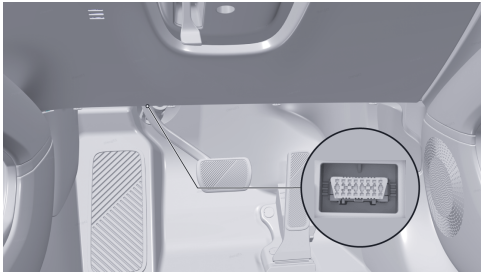
Rear Drive Motor Model and Number



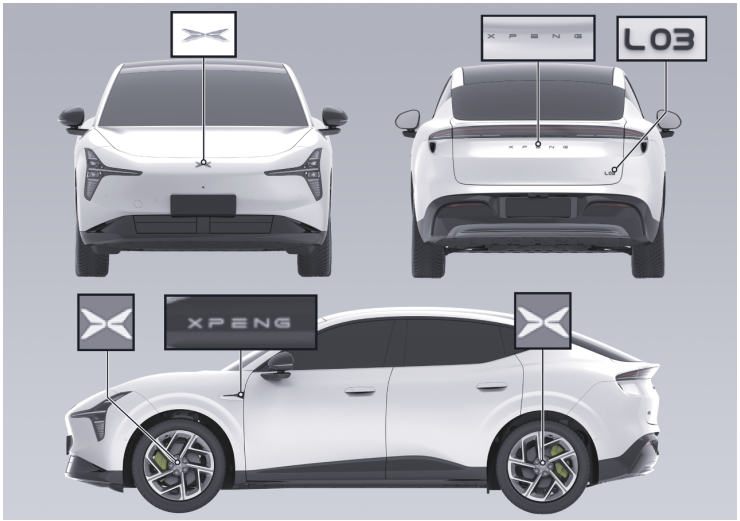
The drive motor model and serial number are shown on the drive motor housing and on the drive motor nameplate label.

OBD Diagnostic Port

The OBD interface for reading the electronic VIN is located at the lower right side of the instrument panel. The electronic VIN and data such as vehicle status information can be read using the original diagnostic tool or diagnostic equipment officially approved by the manufacturer.

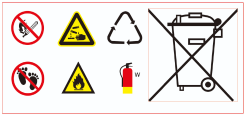


Appearance Identification Information



High-Voltage Safety Signs

Warning Sign Names	Warning Sign Symbols	Warning Label Description
High-Voltage Warning Sign		Do not touch high-voltage components. Danger!
High-Voltage Component Warning Sign 1		High-voltage components, danger. Do not touch high-voltage components without wearing protective equipment. Beware of electric shock!
High-Voltage Component Warning Sign 2		High-voltage components, danger, do not touch the high-voltage components without wearing protective equipment, beware of electric shock!

Power Battery Warning Label		Do not touch the power battery without wearing protective equipment, and beware of electric shock!
High-Voltage Wiring Harness Marking		The vehicle's high-voltage components are all connected by orange High-Voltage Wiring Harnesses. Do not touch the high-voltage components or the orange High-Voltage Wiring Harnesses without wearing protective equipment!

Microwave Window

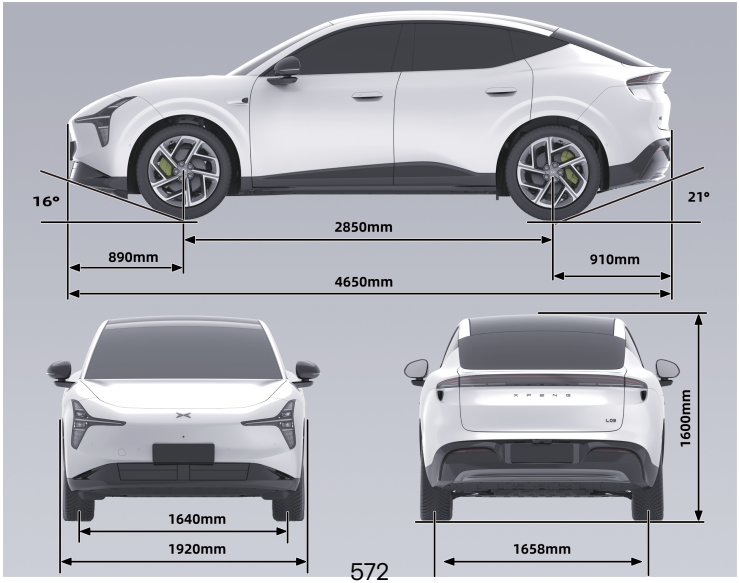
The microwave window is located on the windshield.

warning

- Do not block the microwave window position.
- When affixing markings required by traffic regulations, select a location around the microwave window.

Vehicle Technical Specifications

Dimensions Parameters



Overall Dimensions	Length (mm)	4650
	Width (mm)	1920
	Height (mm)	1600
Track width	Front Track (mm)	1640
	Rear track (mm)	1658
Wheelbase (mm)		2850
Front Suspension (mm)		890
Rear Suspension (mm)		910
Number of Occupants (persons)		5
Approach Angle (Fully Loaded) (°)		16
Departure Angle (Full Load) (°)		21

Tips

The exterior rearview mirrors (one on each side) are not included in the exterior width. The tolerance of the vehicle's dimensional parameters is ±1%.

Mass Parameters

Item Name		Standard Range Plus-2WD	Long Range Plus-2WD	Long Range Ultra-2WD	Long Range Plus-4WD	Long Range Ultra-4WD
Curb Weight (kg)		1870/1890(with tow hook)	1940/1960 (with tow hook)	1960/1980(with tow hook)	2040/2060 (with hook)	2060/2080 (with support hook)
Preparation	Front Axle (kg)	860/855(wit h hook)	880/875 (with support hook)	887/882(wit h support hook)	977/972 (with support hook)	987/982 (with support hook)
	Rear Axle (kg)	1010/1035 (with support hook)	1060/1085 (with support hook)	1073/1098 (with tow hook)	1063/1088 (with support hook)	1073/1098(with tow hook)
Maximum Gross Mass (kg)		2375	2465	2465	2565	2565

Maximum	Front Axle (kg)	976	1002	1002	1100	1100
	Rear Axle (kg)	1399	1463	1463	1465	1465

Tips

The curb mass tolerance range is ±3%. The maximum gross mass and the corresponding front and rear axle loads must not exceed the above specified values.

Power Battery Parameters

	Project Name	Unit	Standard Range Model	Long-Range Model
Cell Battery	Type	/	LFP	
	Nominal Voltage	V	3.21	
	Rated Capacity	Ah	170.6	

Power Battery	Rated Voltage	V	346.68	423.72
	Rated Capacity	Ah	168	
	Rated Energy	kWh	58.2	71.1
	Quality	kg	428	494

Rated parameters: calculated based on 1/3C discharge.

Electric Drive System Parameters

Drive Type	2WD (rear-mounted rear-wheel drive)	4WD	
Project Name	Rear Electric Drive System	Front Electric Drive System	Rear Electric Drive System

Drive Motor	Type	Permanent Magnet Synchronous	AC asynchronous	Permanent Magnet Synchronous
	Rated Power (kW)	70	52.9	70
	Rated Torque (N·m)	108	/	108
	Rated Speed (rpm)	6500	7000	6500
	Maximum Power (kW)	163	134	183
	Maximum Torque (N·m)	280	171	280
	Maximum Speed (rpm)	21000	20364	21000
Reducer	Model	1ETP23A	/	1ETP23A
	Gear Number	1	1	1

Performance Parameters

Vehicle Model	2WD	4WD
Minimum Turning Diameter (m)	10.8	10.6
Maximum Vehicle Speed (km/h)	180	
Maximum Gradeability (%)	30	

Wheels and Tires

Tire Model	Rim Model	Air Pressure	
		Half load	Full Load
Front wheel 225/60R18	Front Wheel 18×7J	260 kPa	290 kPa
Rear wheel 225/60R18	Rear Wheel 18×7J	260 kPa	290 kPa
Front wheel 245/45R20	Front Wheel 20×8J	260 kPa	310 kPa
Rear wheel 245/45R20	Rear Wheel 20×8J	260 kPa	310 kPa

Tire Dynamic Balance

Wheel Dynamic Balancing (After the Balance Weights Are Properly Attached)	Inner Side of Front Wheel	≤8 g
	Outer Side of Front Wheel	≤8 g
	Inner side of the rear wheel	≤8 g
	Outer Side of Rear Wheel	≤8 g

Braking and Suspension

Model	Foot-operated, X-type dual-circuit hydraulic braking, acting on all wheels
Power Assist Type	Electric Power Steering
Brake pedal free travel or idle travel (mm)	2
Front wheel brake friction lining wear limit (excluding friction lining backing plate) (mm)	2
Rear Wheel Brake Friction Lining Wear Limit (excluding friction lining backing plate) (mm)	2
Front Brake Disc Wear Limit (mm)	26
Rear Brake Disc Wear Limit (mm)	16
Front Suspension Type	MacPherson Independent Suspension
Rear Suspension Type	Five-link independent suspension

Four-Wheel Alignment Parameters

Single-Side Front Wheel Toe-in	0.13°±0.05°
Single-Side Front Wheel Camber Angle	-0.31°±0.75°
Single-Side Kingpin Caster Angle	5.2°±1°
Kingpin Inward Inclination Angle	12.68°±1°
Single-Side Rear Wheel Toe-In	0.1°±0.05°
Rear Wheel Camber Angle	-1.1°±0.5°
Front Wheel Camber Left-Right Difference	0±0.75°
Left-right difference in rear wheel camber angle	0±0.5°

Fluid Parameters

Project Name	Model	Fill Quantity
Front Electric Drive Lubricating Oil* (L)	FUCHS 福斯 4101	1.4
Rear Electric Drive Lubricant Oil (L)	Castrol ON BOT 685X	1.55
Coolant (L) (Two-Wheel Drive Models)	Ethylene glycol and water mixture	Approximately 16.7
Coolant (L) (Four-wheel-drive models)		Approximately 17.5

Air Conditioner Refrigerant (g)	HFC-1234yf*	810 (Low-Temperature Heat Pump Model)
		600 (Normal Temperature Heat Pump Model)
	HFC-134a*	900 (Low-Temperature Heat Pump Model)
		670 (heat pump model at normal temperature)
Brake Fluid (L)	DOT4	0.944
Windshield washer fluid (L)	/	1.5

Seat Adjustment Parameters

At the initial position, the seat adjustment parameters are as follows:

Seat Type	Item	Parameters
Driver Seat	Forward/Backward Adjustment	Total travel 240 mm, forward 200 mm, rearward 40 mm
	seatback adjustment	Total travel 64°, forward 21°, rearward 43°
	Up/Down Adjustment	Total travel 65 mm, upward 32 mm, downward 33 mm
Passenger Seat	Forward/Backward Adjustment	Total travel 240 mm, forward 200 mm, rearward 40 mm
	seatback adjustment	Total travel 64°, forward 21°, rearward 43°

User Information

Parts and Modifications

Only genuine original parts or approved parts of XPENG Vehicle may be used. XPENG Vehicle has subjected the parts to strict testing to ensure their suitability, safety, and reliability. These parts can only be purchased from XPENG Vehicle service centers, installed by XPENG Vehicle professionals, and the vehicle may be modified according to the recommendations of XPENG Vehicle experts.

Do not modify the vehicle using parts not approved by XPENG Motors, otherwise it may affect the vehicle's operability, safety, and durability, and may also violate local government regulations.

When modifying the vehicle body (such as installing color-change film, transparent paint protection film, anti-collision strips, etc.), avoid areas such as the ultrasonic radar, millimeter-wave radar, surround-view camera, high-perception camera, etc.; otherwise, the normal use of functions related to assisted driving may be affected.

The millimeter-wave radar is located inside the front and rear bumpers. Do not paint the front and rear bumpers or install additional surrounds without authorization, otherwise the normal use of functions such as assisted driving may be affected.

Do not replace, modify, or add radar or cameras without authorization. Otherwise, the normal use of functions such as driver assistance will be affected, and radio interference may also be caused. XPENG Vehicle shall not bear any responsibility for any direct or indirect losses resulting therefrom. If the radar or camera malfunctions, please go to an XPENG Vehicle Service Center for repair.

Do not modify the vehicle Suspension, braking, or other systems, as this may adversely affect vehicle handling and safety.

Do not modify the vehicle fuse box, otherwise it may adversely affect the vehicle electrical system.

Modifications to electronic components and software, as well as to wiring, may affect functions and the proper operation of related components, especially safety-related systems, thereby affecting vehicle operation and increasing the risk of accidents or injury.

Therefore, do not modify the wiring, electronic components, or their software.

In addition, vehicle damage and performance issues caused by replacement, installation, or modification using parts that are not original XPENG Vehicle parts or approved by XPENG Vehicle are not covered by the warranty, and XPENG Vehicle shall not bear any responsibility for any direct or indirect losses resulting therefrom.

Event Data Recorder EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR) system.

The EDR can automatically record vehicle operating and vehicle safety system status information for a period of time before and after a vehicle event occurs, for example:

- Vehicle speed.
- Brake pedal status.
- Vehicle VIN.
- Longitudinal acceleration.
- Driver seat belt status.
- Accelerator pedal position, percentage of the fully open position.
- Power-on cycle during the event.
- Read the power-on cycle.
- Event data recording complete status.
- The time interval between this event and the previous event.

- Record the ECU hardware number of the EDR data.
- Record the ECU serial number of the EDR data.
- Record the ECU software number of the EDR data.
- Lateral acceleration.
- Yaw rate.
- Steering angle.
- Time when the event occurred.
- Gear position.
- Brake pedal position.
- Parking system status.
- Airbag deployment time.
- Seat belt pretensioner deployment time.
- front row passenger seat belt status.
- Occupant protection system alarm status.
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System alarm status.
- Brake system warning status.
- Cruise system status.
- Anti-lock Braking System status.
- Autonomous Emergency Braking system status.
- Electronic Stability Control system status.
- Traction Control System status.
- Pre-event synchronization countdown time.

By collecting and analyzing the vehicle status data recorded by EDR, it may help to understand the relevant circumstances before and after the event.

Data recorded by the EDR must be extracted by connecting dedicated diagnostic equipment to the vehicle interface. If necessary, please contact a XPENG service center to obtain the equipment.

Data Usage Statement

XPENG Vehicle may use the data recorded by the EDR for fault diagnosis, product development, and quality improvement. Except in the following circumstances, XPENG Vehicle will not disclose the data recorded by the EDR to third parties:

- With the owner's consent.

- Comply with the requirements of administrative and judicial authorities.
- In accordance with laws and regulations.

Power Battery Recycling Requirements and Procedures

When the power battery needs to be replaced or scrapped, be sure to contact a XPENG service center for recycling and disposal. Discarding the power battery at will will cause environmental pollution or lead to safety accidents, and the vehicle owner shall bear the corresponding responsibility.

Information Protection

Based on the fulfillment of safety management obligations for new energy vehicles, XPENG Vehicle will collect and process vehicle data, including but not limited to vehicle status, vehicle speed, mileage, gear position, accelerator pedal, brake pedal, vehicle location, motor, battery, alarm data, etc., and take corresponding handling measures according to safety management requirements.

In certain functions or service scenarios of the in-vehicle system, based on the need to perform the service contract or after obtaining the user's consent, XPENG Motors or third parties cooperating with it will collect and process relevant data, including but not limited to: the intelligent voice assistant needs to process voice data; map navigation needs to process location data; assisted driving needs to process external vehicle data; membership services require account information; App remote vehicle management needs to synchronize vehicle data, etc.

(When downloading or using third-party applications or services through the in-vehicle system, the third party may collect and process relevant data, in which case the third party's service agreement or privacy policy shall apply.)

XPENG Vehicle strictly adopts reasonable security protection measures in accordance with the requirements of laws and regulations to

ensure data security. Except as provided by laws and regulations and as agreed with users, XPENG Vehicle will not disclose user data to any third party.

If you need to learn in detail how XPENG Vehicle collects, processes, and protects user data, or how users exercise related rights, you can consult the *Connected Vehicle Privacy Notice* on the in-vehicle central display.

Declaration of Conformity

Front_Millimeter_Wave_Radar

Product Name: Front_Millimeter_Wave_Radar

Model: FRD03S-002

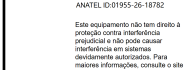
Specification: 12V ⎓ 0.3A

Brand: DESAY SV

Manufacture's Name:Huizhou Desay SV Automotive Co., Ltd.

Address:No.6, Huitai North Road, Huinan Technology Park, Huizhou City, Guangdong Province 516025, P.R. China

CE	EU	И035 26	Serbia
anrt MR00002321ANRT2026	Morocco	Complies with IMDA Standards DA107248	Singapore
Oman TRA	Oman	TDRA	United Arab Emirates
	Chile	CONATEL NR:2026-05-I-0339	Paraguay
	Korea	ICASA TA-2026/0529 APPROVED	South Africa

	Mexico		Israel
	Brazil		Thailand

Short Range Radar

Product Name: Short Range Radar

Model: STA79-2Pro-D

Brand: WHST

Manufacture's Name: Whst Co., Ltd.

CONATEL NR: 2026-05-I-0324	Paraguay

Door opening obstacle avoidance rader

Product Name: Door opening obstacle avoidance rader

Model: STA79-6-F

Brand: WHST

Manufacture's Name: Whst Co., Ltd.

CONATEL NR: 2026-05-I-0353	Paraguay

Abbreviations

Description

Terminology	Description	Terms	Description
TSR	Traffic Sign Recognition	SAS	Speed Assistance
AVM	360° Panoramic Image	DSM	Driver Status Monitoring
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number	EPB	Electronic Parking Brake
LCC	Lane Centering Control	ESC	Electronic Stability Program
ALC	Assisted Lane Change	ABS	Anti-lock Braking System
EBD	Electronic Brakeforce Distribution	TCS	Traction Control System

APA	Parking Assist	EBA	Brake Assist System
FCW	Forward Collision Warning	HHC	Hill Start Assist
AEB	Autonomous Emergency Braking	HDC	Hill Descent Control
BSD	Blind Spot Monitoring Warning	MCB	Secondary Collision Mitigation Automatic Braking System
LCA	Lane Change Warning	IHB	intelligent high beam
DOW	Door Opening Warning	AVAS	Low-Speed Simulated Sound
RCW	Rear Collision Warning	TPMS	Tire Pressure Monitoring System
RAEB	Reverse Collision Prevention	EDR	Event Data Recording System

RCTA	Rear Cross Traffic Alert	OTA	Remote Software Upgrade
LSS	Lane Departure Assist	OBD	Diagnostic Interface
LDW	Lane Departure Warning	OMS	Cabin Imaging
LKA	Lane Keeping Assist	V2L	Vehicle supplies power to other electrical appliances
ELK	Emergency Lane Keeping Assist	AES	Emergency Steering Evasion

Units Terminology

Description

Terms	Description	Terms	Description
mm	mm	L	L
m	m	V	Volt
km	km	A	ampere
km/h	km/h	kW	kW
℃	°C	kW·h	kWh
°	°	s	s
′	min	min	minute
%	Percentage	rpm	r/min

g	g	N·m	N·m
kg	kg	kPa	kPa
mL	mL	bar	bar